

**Updates No. 10 & 11 (October 2009/February 2010) - MARC 21 Format
for Authority Data**

The following page(s) is/ are included in Updates 10 & 11 (October 2009/February 2010) of the *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*.

[blank page]

MARC 21

Format for **Authority Data**

Updates No. 10 & 11
October 2009/February 2010

FILING INSTRUCTIONS

This update contains loose-leaf pages to be interfiled in the text of the 1999 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*. Some pages are new, representing newly-defined data elements in the format. However, most pages replace existing pages in the base text.

A listing of the substantive changes covered by this update is contained in Appendix F. Changes in the text are marked by a line (|) in the left margin. This mark is used to indicate places where deletions have occurred as well as additions and modifications to the text. This update title page should be filed behind the title page for the base text. Appendix F may be filed in any appropriate place of the text.

Prepared by
Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress

In cooperation with
Standards, Library and Archives Canada
Bibliographic Development, British Library

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
CATALOGING DISTRIBUTION SERVICE / WASHINGTON

LIBRARY AND ARCHIVES CANADA
OTTAWA

Available in the U.S.A. and other countries from:
Cataloging Distribution Service,
Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20541-4912 U.S.A.

Available in Canada from:
Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada
Ottawa, ON K1A 0S9 Canada

Copyright (c) 2010 by the Library of Congress except within the USA.
Copyright (c) Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (2005)
as represented by Library and Archives Canada.

This publication may be reproduced without permission provided the source is fully acknowledged.

Updates No. 10 and 11 (October 2009/February 2010) are interfiled with the base text of October 1999 as modified by:

Update No. 9 (October 2008)
Update No. 8 (October 2007)
Update No. 7 (October 2006)
Update No. 6 (October 2005)
Update No. 5 (October 2004)
Update No. 4 (October 2003)
Update No. 3 (October 2002)
Update No. 2 (October 2001)
Update No. 1 (October 2000).

MARC 21 Format for Authority Data

SUMMARY STATEMENT OF CONTENT DESIGNATORS

LEADER**DIRECTORY****VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS***00X Control Fields--General Information*

001	Control Number
003	Control Number Identifier
005	Date and Time of Latest Transaction
008	Fixed Length Data Elements

VARIABLE DATA FIELDS*01X-09X Number and Codes-General Information*

010	Library of Congress Control Number
014	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item
016	National Bibliographic Agency Control Number
020	International Standard Book Number
022	International Standard Serial Number
024	Other Standard Identifier
031	Musical Incipits Information
034	Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data
035	System Control Number
040	Cataloging Source
042	Authentication Code
043	Geographic Area Code
045	Time Period of Heading
046	Special Coded Dates
050	Library of Congress Call Number
052	Geographic Classification
053	LC Classification Number
055	Library and Archives Canada Call Number
060	National Library of Medicine Call Number
065	Other Classification Number
066	Character Sets Present
070	National Agricultural Library Call Number
072	Subject Category Code
073	Subdivision Usage
080	Universal Decimal Classification Number
082	Dewey Decimal Call Number
083	Dewey Decimal Classification Number
086	Government Document Call Number
087	Government Document Classification Number
09X	Local Call Numbers

Names and Terms--General Information Sections

X00	Personal Names--General Information
X10	Corporate Names--General Information
X11	Meeting Names--General Information
X30	Uniform Titles--General Information
X48	Chronological Terms--General Information
X50	Topical Terms--General Information
X51	Geographic Names--General Information
X55	Genre/Form Terms--General Information

Summary

- X80 General Subdivisions–General Information
- X81 Geographic Subdivision–General Information
- X82 Chronological Subdivision–General Information
- X85 Form Subdivision–General Information

1XX *Headings–General Information*

- 100 Heading–Personal Name
- 110 Heading–Corporate Name
- 111 Heading–Meeting Name
- 130 Heading–Uniform Title
- 148 Heading–Chronological Term
- 150 Heading–Topical Term
- 151 Heading–Geographic Name
- 155 Heading–Genre/Form Term
- 180 Heading–General Subdivision
- 181 Heading–Geographic Subdivision
- 182 Heading–Chronological Subdivision
- 185 Heading–Form Subdivision

Tracings and References–General Information

2XX-3XX *Complex Subject References*

- 260 Complex See Reference–Subject
- 336 Content Type
- 370 Associated Place
- 371 Address
- 372 Field of Activity
- 373 Affiliation
- 374 Occupation
- 375 Gender
- 376 Family Information
- 377 Associated Language
- 360 Complex See Also Reference–Subject
- 380 Form of Work
- 381 Other Distinguishing Characteristics of Work or Expression
- 382 Medium of Performance
- 383 Numeric Designation of Musical Work
- 384 Key

4XX *See From Tracings–General Information*

- 400 See From Tracing–Personal Name
- 410 See From Tracing–Corporate Name
- 411 See From Tracing–Meeting Name
- 430 See From Tracing–Uniform Title
- 448 See From Tracing–Chronological Term
- 450 See From Tracing–Topical Term
- 451 See From Tracing–Geographic Name
- 455 See From Tracing–Genre/Form Term
- 480 See From Tracing–General Subdivision
- 481 See From Tracing–Geographic Subdivision
- 482 See From Tracing–Chronological Subdivision
- 485 See From Tracing–Form Subdivision

5XX *See Also From Tracings–General Information*

- 500 See Also From Tracing–Personal Name
- 510 See Also From Tracing–Corporate Name

- 511 See Also From Tracing–Meeting Name
- 530 See Also From Tracing–Uniform Title
- 548 See Also From Tracing–Chronological Term
- 550 See Also From Tracing–Topical Term
- 551 See Also From Tracing–Geographic Name
- 555 See Also From Tracing–Genre/Form Term
- 580 See Also From Tracing–General Subdivision
- 581 See Also From Tracing–Geographic Subdivision
- 582 See Also From Tracing–Chronological Subdivision
- 585 See Also From Tracing–Form Subdivision

- 64X *Series Treatment–General Information*
 - 640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Sequential Designation
 - 641 Series Numbering Peculiarities
 - 642 Series Numbering Example
 - 643 Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body
 - 644 Series Analysis Practice
 - 645 Series Tracing Practice
 - 646 Series Classification Practice

- 663-666 *Complex Name References–General Information*
 - 663 Complex See Also Reference–Name
 - 664 Complex See Reference–Name
 - 665 History Reference
 - 666 General Explanatory Reference–Name

- 667-68X *Notes–General Information*
 - 667 Nonpublic General Note
 - 670 Source Data Found
 - 675 Source Data Not Found
 - 678 Biographical or Historical Data
 - 680 Public General Note
 - 681 Subject Example Tracing Note
 - 682 Deleted Heading Information
 - 688 Application History Note

- 7XX *Heading Linking Entries–General Information*
 - 700 Established Heading Linking Entry–Personal Name
 - 710 Established Heading Linking Entry–Corporate Name
 - 711 Established Heading Linking Entry–Meeting Name
 - 730 Established Heading Linking Entry–Uniform Title
 - 748 Established Heading Linking Entry–Chronological Term
 - 750 Established Heading Linking Entry–Topical Term
 - 751 Established Heading Linking Entry–Geographic Name
 - 755 Established Heading Linking Entry–Genre/Form Term
 - 780 Subdivision Linking Entry–General Subdivision
 - 781 Subdivision Linking Entry–Geographic Subdivision
 - 782 Subdivision Linking Entry–Chronological Subdivision
 - 785 Subdivision Linking Entry–Form Subdivision
 - 788 Complex Linking Entry Data

- 8XX *Location and Alternate Graphics*
 - 856 Electronic Location and Access
 - 880 Alternate Graphic Representation

Summary

[blank page]

01X-09X Numbers and Codes-General Information

- 010 Library of Congress Control Number (NR)
- 014 Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item (R)
- 016 National Bibliographic Agency Control Number (R)
- 020 International Standard Book Number (R)
- 022 International Standard Serial Number (R)
- 024 Other Standard Identifier (R)
- 031 Musical Incipits Information (R)
- 034 Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data (R)
- 035 System Control Number (R)
- 040 Cataloging Source (NR)
- 042 Authentication Code (NR)
- 043 Geographic Area Code (NR)
- 045 Time Period of Heading (NR)
- 046 Special Coded Dates (R)
- 050 Library of Congress Call Number (R)
- 052 Geographic Classification (R)
- 053 LC Classification Number (R)
- 055 Library and Archives Canada Call Number (R)
- 060 National Library of Medicine Call Number (R)
- 065 Other Classification Number (R)
- 066 Character Sets Present (NR)
- 070 National Agricultural Library Call Number (R)
- 072 Subject Category Code (R)
- 073 Subdivision Usage (NR)
- 080 Universal Decimal Classification Number (R)
- 082 Dewey Decimal Call Number (R)
- 083 Dewey Decimal Classification Number (R)
- 086 Government Document Call Number (R)
- 087 Government Document Classification Number (R)
- 09X Local Call Numbers

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Contains standard numbers, classification numbers, codes, and other data elements relating to the record.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

016 *National Library of Canada Record Control Number [REDEFINED, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]info.marc.ad/016/hist/016.NN*
Both indicator positions were undefined. The defined subfield codes were ‡a (NLC record control number) and ‡z (Canceled/invalid NLC control number).

024 *Other Standard Identifier [NEW, 2003]*

031 *Musical Incipits Information [NEW, 2004]*

034 *Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data [NEW, 2006]*

046 *Special Coded Dates [NEW, 2009]*

055 *Library and Archives Canada Call Number [RENAMED, 2004]*

01X-09X

Field 055, formerly National Library of Canada Call Number, was renamed to reflect change in the institution's name.

058 LC Classification Number Assigned in Canada [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

The first indicator was undefined. The second indicator was defined to indicate source of the number (0 = LC classification number assigned by NLC, 1 = LC classification number assigned by contributing library). The subfield codes were: \$a (LC classification number - single number or beginning number of a range), \$b (LC classification number - end number of a range), \$c (Explanatory term), \$5 (Library to which class number applies), and \$6 (Linkage). Data previously recorded in this field is now recorded in field 053 (LC Classification Number).

063 NLM Classification Number Assigned by NLM [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Both indicators were undefined. The subfield codes were: \$a (NLM classification number - single number or beginning number of a range), \$b (NLM classification number - end number of a range), \$c (Explanatory term).

065 Other Classification Number [NEW, 2002]

068 NLM Classification Number Assigned in Canada [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

The first indicator was undefined. The second indicator was defined to indicate source of the number (0 = NLM classification number assigned by NLC, 1 = NLM classification number assigned by the contributing library). The subfield codes were: \$a (NLM classification number - single number or beginning number of a range), \$b (NLM classification number - end number of a range), \$c (Explanatory term), \$5 (Library to which class number applies).

080 Universal Decimal Classification Number [NEW, 2009]

088 Document Shelving Number (CODOC) [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Both indicator positions were undefined. The subfield code was: \$a (Document shelving number (CODOC)).

034 Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data	(R)
---	------------

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Type of ring
Not applicable
0 Outer ring
1 Exclusion ring

Subfield Codes

<p>‡d Coordinates - westernmost longitude (NR) ‡e Coordinates - easternmost longitude (NR) ‡f Coordinates - northernmost latitude (NR) ‡g Coordinates - southernmost latitude (NR) ‡j Declination - northern limit (NR) ‡k Declination - southern limit (NR) ‡m Right ascension - eastern limit (NR) ‡n Right ascension - western limit (NR) ‡p Equinox (NR) ‡r Distance from earth (NR)</p>	<p>‡s G-ring latitude (R) ‡t G-ring longitude (R) ‡x Beginning date (NR) ‡y Ending date (NR) ‡z Name of extraterrestrial body (NR) ‡2 Source (NR) ‡3 Materials specified (NR) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)</p>
---	---

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Coded form of the cartographic mathematical data relevant to the entity described in the authority record. The data that is recorded usually derives from authoritative sources.

For digital items, the coordinates can represent a bounding rectangle, the outline of the area covered and/or the outline of an interior area not covered. For celestial charts, it may also contain zone, declination data, and/or right ascension data, and/or equinox.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Undefined**

Contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator - Type of ring

Type of ring for digital cartographic items.

- Not applicable

Type of ring is not applicable, such as when the cartographic item is not digitally encoded data.

0 - Outer ring

Coordinate information represents the closed non-intersecting boundary of the area covered.

1 - Exclusion ring

Coordinate information represents the closed non-intersecting boundary of an area within the G-polygon outer ring that is excluded.

034

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡d - Coordinates - westernmost longitude

‡e - Coordinates - easternmost longitude

‡f - Coordinates - northernmost latitude

‡g - Coordinates - southernmost latitude

Subfields ‡d, ‡e, ‡f, and ‡g always appear together. The abbreviations for the hemispheres are: *N* = *North*, *S* = *South*, *E* = *East*, *W* = *West*.

The coordinates may be recorded in the form *hddmmss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds), however, other forms are also allowed, such as decimal degrees

The subelements are each right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

|034 ##‡dW0381200‡eW0841500‡fN0381200‡gN0381200‡2cgotw

‡j - Declination - northern limit

‡k - Declination - southern limit

Subfields ‡j and ‡k are each eight characters in length and record the declination in the form *hddmmss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds). The degree, minute and second elements are each right justified and the unused positions contain zeros. (If declination of center is known, it is repeated in both subfields).

034 ##‡jN0545600‡kN0545600‡m134518‡n134518‡p2000.00‡r78‡2csa

‡m - Right ascension - eastern limit

‡n - Right ascension - western limit

Subfield ‡m and ‡n are each six characters in length and record the right ascension in the form *hhmmss* (hour-minute-seconds). The hour, minute and second elements are each right justified and the unused positions contain zeros. (If the right ascension of center is known, it is repeated in both subfields).

‡p - Equinox

Equinox or epoch for a celestial chart. Usually recorded in the form *yyyy* (year) according to the Gregorian calendar, but may include a decimal including the month in the form *yyyy.mm* (year-month).

‡r - Distance from earth

Distance of celestial bodies, such as planets or stars, from the Earth in light-years in star atlases.

‡s - G-ring latitude

Latitude of a point of the g-ring.

‡t - G-ring longitude

Longitude of a point of the g-ring.

‡x - Beginning date

Beginning of the date period of the entity in which the coordinates describe. The date is structured in the form of *YYYYMMDD*. When no date is recorded, it is assumed that the coordinate information is current.

‡y - Ending date

Ending of the date period of the entity in which the coordinates describe. The date is structured in the form of *YYYYMMDD*. When no date is recorded, it is assumed that the coordinate information is current.

034 ##‡dE0110000‡eE0320000‡fN0690000‡gN0550000‡x17210000‡y19171200

034 ##‡dE0110000‡eE0240000‡fN0690000‡gN0550000‡x19171200

‡z - Name of extraterrestrial body

Name of a planet or other extraterrestrial body specified when the coordinate data recorded in subfields ‡d, ‡e, ‡f and ‡g do not describe an entity on Earth.

034 ##‡dW2450000‡eE2570000‡fN0160000‡gN0190000‡zMars‡2gpn

‡2 - Source

MARC code that identifies the source of the data recorded in field 034. If different sources are recorded, separate fields should be used. Code from: *Cartographic Data Source Codes*.

‡3 - Materials specified

Information that specifies the part of the entity to which the field applies.

151 ##‡aColumbia River

034 ##‡3Mouth‡d-124.0579299‡e-124.0579299‡f46.2442673 ‡g46.2442673‡2gnis

151 ##‡aColumbia River

034 ##‡3Source‡dW1174106‡eW1174106‡fN485723‡gN485723‡2gnis

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Field 034 does not end with a mark of punctuation.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡3 - *Materials specified* [NEW, 2010]

[blank page]

040 Cataloging Source

(NR)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Original cataloging agency (NR)	|‡e Description conventions (R)
‡b Language of cataloging (NR)	‡f Subject heading/thesaurus conventions (NR)
‡c Transcribing agency (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡d Modifying agency (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

MARC code or the name of the organization(s) that created the original authority record, assigned MARC content designation and transcribed the record into machine-readable form, or modified an existing MARC record. These MARC codes and the code in 008/39 (Cataloging source) specify the parties responsible for content, content designation, and transcription of an the authority record. See Appendix G: *Organization Code Sources*.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Original cataloging agency**

MARC code or the name of the organization that created the original record.

008/39 #
[national bibliographic agency]

040 ##‡aDLC‡cDLC
[Cataloging produced and input by the Library of Congress.]

‡b - Language of cataloging

MARC code for the language of the catalog for which the record is intended. Code from: *MARC Code List for Languages*.

040

‡c - Transcribing agency

MARC code or the name of the organization that transcribed the record into machine-readable form.

008/39 c
 [cooperative cataloging program]

040 ##‡aSd‡cICU
 [The South Dakota State Library cataloging transcribed by the University of Chicago with no subsequent modifications.]

008/39 c
 [cooperative cataloging program]

040 ##‡aICU‡cICU
 [University of Chicago cataloging transcribed by the University of Chicago with no subsequent modifications.]

‡d - Modifying agency

MARC code or the name of the organization responsible for modifying a MARC record. A modification is defined as any correction to a record, including data or content designation. The MARC code or name of each organization that modifies a record is contained in a separate subfield ‡d. Subfield ‡d is not repeated when the same MARC code or name would occur in **adjacent** ‡d subfields. In an online system, the MARC code or name in the last subfield ‡d may be used to identify the source of potential modification to a record for which an update is in process (008/31, code b). If the same agency transcribing the record also modifies the cataloging record in the process of transcribing it, the agency's name or MARC code is also recorded in subfield ‡d.

040 ##‡aMH‡cMH‡dDLC
 [Harvard cataloging transcribed by Harvard and modified by the Library of Congress.]

040 ##‡aNc‡cDLC‡dDLC
 [The North Carolina State Library cataloging transcribed and modified by the Library of Congress. Two modifications by LC are indicated by a single subfield ‡d.]

‡e - Description conventions

Information specifying the description rules used in formulating the heading and reference structure when field 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) contains code z (Other). Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

May contain either the name of the rules or a MARC code designating the rules.

008/10 z
 [other sources]

040 ##‡aCSt-H‡cCSt-H‡eapm
 [Hoover Institution cataloging, transcribed by Hoover and illustrating the optional use of subfield ‡e citing cataloging based on Archives, Personal Papers, and Manuscripts .]

008/10 z
 [other sources]

040 ##‡aCaOOA‡cCaOOA‡rad
 [Library and Archives Canada cataloging and transcription using Rules for Archival Description.]

‡f - Subject heading/thesaurus conventions

MARC code for the subject heading/thesaurus conventions used when field 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus) contains code z (Other). Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

May contain either the name of the subject heading system/thesaurus or a MARC code designating it.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Codes - For Canadian organizations, the code is preceded by the letters "Ca".

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡e - *Description conventions [CHANGED, 2010]*
In 2010, subfield was made repeatable.

[blank page]

080 Universal Decimal Classification Number (R)
--

First Indicator

Type of edition

- # No information provided
- 0 Full
- 1 Abridged

Second Indicator

Undefined

- # Undefined

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ‡a Universal Decimal Classification number (NR) ‡b Item number (NR) ‡x Common auxiliary subdivision (R) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ‡2 Edition identifier (NR) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
|---|--|

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Classification number associated with a 1XX heading in an established heading record. Number is taken from the Universal Decimal Classification. scheme.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Type of edition**

Whether the class number is from the full or the abridged edition of the classification schedules. The actual edition number is contained in subfield ‡2.

- No information provided

0 - Full

Class number is from a full edition.

1 - Abridged

Class number is from an abridged edition.

Second Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Universal Decimal Classification number**

- 080 ##‡a001.81‡2[edition information]**
- 080 ##‡a971.1/.2**
- 080 ##‡a631.321:631.411.3‡2[edition information]**

‡b - Item number

Item number portion of the UDC number.

080

‡x - Common auxiliary subdivision

Number that qualifies the concept represented by the main UDC number.

Common auxiliary subdivisions, such as those for form (e.g., dictionaries), are attached to a main UDC number preceded or delimited by some kind of facet indicator. Examples of commonly used subdivision delimiters are parentheses, brackets, an apostrophe, or a hyphen.

080 ##‡a821.113.1‡x(494)‡2[edition information]

080 ##‡a94‡x(474)‡x"19"‡x(075)‡2[edition information]

150 ##‡aArte prerrománico‡zAsturias (Comunidad Autónoma)

080 0#‡a7.033.4‡x(460.12)‡22000

150 ##‡aDiagnóstico por imagen

080 0#‡a616‡x073.7‡22000

‡2 - Edition identifier

Edition number, date, or other textual designation of the edition of UDC used to compose the classification number.

080 ##‡a82:111.852‡21993

080 ##‡a821.113.4-14‡21998

150 ##‡aSistemas de telecomunicación

080 0#‡a621.39‡22000

150 ##‡aMadrid

080 0#‡a(460.27M.)‡22000

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

X00 Personal Names-General Information

- 100** Heading - Personal Name (NR)
400 See From Tracing - Personal Name (R)
500 See Also From Tracing - Personal Name (R)
700 Established Heading Linking Entry - Personal Name (R)

First Indicator

- Type of personal name entry element
- 0 Forename
 - 1 Surname
 - 2 Family name

Second indicator

- 100** Undefined
- # Undefined
- 400** Undefined
- # Undefined
- 500** Undefined
- # Undefined

Second Indicator

- 700** Thesaurus
- 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
- 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2 Medical Subject Headings
- 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4 Source not specified
- 5 Canadian Subject Headings
- 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
- 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p><i>Name portion</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ‡a Personal name (NR) ‡q Fuller form of name (NR) ‡b Numeration (NR) ‡c Titles and other words associated with a name (R) ‡d Dates associated with a name (NR) ‡e Relator term (R) ‡j Attribution qualifier (R) <p><i>Title portion</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ‡t Title of a work (NR) ‡f Date of a work (NR) ‡h Medium (NR) ‡k Form subheading (R) ‡l Language of a work (NR) ‡m Medium of performance for music (R) ‡n Number of part/section of a work (R) ‡o Arranged statement for music (NR) ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R) ‡r Key for music (NR) ‡s Version (NR) | <p><i>Name and title portions</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR) <p><i>Subject subdivision portion</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ‡v Form subdivision (R) ‡x General subdivision (R) ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) <p><i>Tracing and linking subfields</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> \|‡i Relationship information (R) [400/500] ‡w Control subfield (NR) [400/500/700] ‡0 Record control number (R) [500/700] ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [700] \|‡4 Relationship code [400/500] ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) [400/500/700] ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
|--|--|

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in a name or name/title heading that contains a personal name constructed according to generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR2)*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)*). Personal

X00

names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., John, the Baptist, Saint, in the Koran) are contained in the X50 fields.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for field 400 and 500) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 700).

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

Form of the entry element of the name portion of a heading. The values distinguish among forenames, surnames, and family names used as the entry element.

0 - Forename

Forename or a name consisting of words, phrases, initials, separate letters, or numerals that are formatted in direct order.

100 0#*1a*Radulfus,*1c*Niger,*1d*b. ca. 1140.*1t*Chronica

400 0#*1a*Author of The diary of a physician,*1d*1807-1877
[Name formatted in direct order.]

400 1#*1a*Diary of a physician, Author of The,*1d*1807-1877

100 0#*1a*C. E. L. J.

400 1#*1a*J., C. E. L.
[Name formatted in inverted order in field 400; first indicator value is 1.]

400 0#*1a*X,*1c*Dr.

400 0#*1a*Dr. X

1 - Surname

Surname formatted in inverted order (*surname, forename*) or a name without forename(s) which is known to be a surname. If there is uncertainty that a name without forename(s) is a surname, the first indicator position contains value 0. Phrases, when formulated with inversion and an entry element similar to a surname are treated as a surname.

100 1#*1a*Olearius, Adam,*1d*1603-1671

400 1#*1a*Olearius,*1c*Herr*1q*(Adam),*1d*1603-1671
[Name without forename known to be a surname.]

400 1#*1a*O., A.*1q*(Adam Olearius),*1d*1603-1671

100 1#*1a*De Angelini, Anna

400 1#*1a*Angelini, Anna de

100 1#*1a*Allsworth-Jones, P.

400 1#*1a*Jones, P. Allsworth-

100 1#*1a*Alderwerelt van Rosenburgh, C. R. W. K. van*1q*(Cornelis Rugier Willem Karel),*1d*1863-1936

400 1#*1a*Van Alderwerelt van Rosenburgh, C. R. W. K.*1q*(Cornelis Rugier Willem Karel),*1d*1863-1936

- 100 1#‡aMcCoy, Hal
- 100 1#‡aO'Brien, Gerard
- 400 1#‡aS., Anton D.
- 100 1#‡aAleixandre Ferrandis, V.
- 100 1#‡aHinojosa-S., Rolando R.
- 100 1#‡aDigby of Geashill, Frances Noel Digby,‡cBaroness,‡d1660 or 61-1684
- 100 1#‡aMateu y Llopis, Felipe,‡d1901-
- 100 1#‡aSan Román, Teresa
- 100 1#‡aEl Saffar, Ruth S.,‡d1941-

3 - Family name

Name of a family, clan, dynasty, house, or other such group. The name may be constructed in direct or inverted order.

- 100 3#‡aArey family
- 500 3#‡alhrig family

- 100 3#‡aGuelf, House of
- 400 3#‡aHouse of Guelf

- 100 3#‡aAttalid dynasty,‡d282-133 B.C.
- 100 3#‡aVon der Au family

Second Indicator

In fields 100, 400, and 500, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 700, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Personal name

Name may be a surname and/or forename; letters, initials, abbreviations, phrases, or numbers used in place of a name; or a family name. A parenthetical qualifying term associated with the name is contained in subfield ‡c, and a fuller form of name added as a qualifier is contained in subfield ‡q.

- 100 0#‡aThomas‡c(Anglo-Norman poet)
- 100 1#‡aStoodt, Dieter
- 100 1#‡aGranet Velez, Gail
- 100 3#‡aPlantagenet, House of
- 100 3#‡aPremyslid dynasty

- 100 1#‡aKarkhanis, Sharad-
- 400 0#‡aSharad Karkhanis

- 100 0#‡aW. P.,‡cEsq.
- 400 1#‡aP., W.,‡cEsq.
- 400 0#‡aWP,‡cEsq.

‡b - Numeration

Roman numeral or a roman numeral and a subsequent part of a forename. It is used only when the entry element is a forename (first indicator, value 0).

- 100 0#‡aGustaf‡bV,‡cKing of Sweden,‡d1858-1950
- 400 0#‡aOscar Gustaf‡bV Adolf,‡cKing of Sweden,‡d1858-1950

X00

- 100 1#**1a**Appleton, Victor,**1c**ll
[Roman numeral used with a surname heading (first indicator, value 1) is contained in subfield **1c**.]

1c - Titles and other words associated with a name

Includes qualifying information such as

- titles designating rank, office, or nobility, e.g., Sir
- terms of address, e.g., Mrs.
- initials of an academic degree or denoting membership in an organization, e.g., F.L.A.
- a roman numeral used with a surname
- other words or phrases associated with the name, e.g., clockmaker, Saint.

If the entry element is a surname followed directly by a prefix without intervening forenames or forename initials, the prefix is contained in subfield **1c** to prevent its being treated as a forename in searching and sorting processes.

- 400 1#**1a**Sanctis,**1c**De

Multiple adjacent titles or words associated with a name are contained in a single subfield **1c**. Subfield **1c** is repeated only when words associated with a name are separated by subelements contained in other subfields.

- 100 1#**1a**Salisbury, James Cecil,**1c**Earl of,**1d**d. 1683
100 0#**1a**Norodom Sihanouk Varman,**1c**King of Cambodia,**1d**1922-
100 0#**1a**Cuthbert,**1c**Father, O.S.F.C.,**1d**1866-1939
100 0#**1a**Thomas,**1c**Aquinas, Saint,**1d**1225?-1274
100 0#**1a**Thomas**1c**(Anglo-Norman poet).**1t**Roman de Tristan.**1l**English
100 1#**1a**Saur, Karl-Otto,**1c**Jr.
100 1#**1a**Appleton, Victor,**1c**ll
100 0#**1a**Margaret,**1c**Queen, consort of James IV, King of Scotland,**1d**1489-1541
100 0#**1a**Augustine,**1c**Saint, Bishop of Hippo
100 0#**1a**Black Foot,**1c**Chief,**1d**d. 1877**1c**(Spirit)
[Subfield **1c** is repeated due to intervening subelements.]
400 0#**1a**Hausbuch,**1c**Meister des,**1d**15th cent.
400 0#**1a**Amsterdam Cabinet,**1c**Master of the,**1d**15th cent.
400 1#**1a**Weiss, Judah Areyh,**1c**cha-Levi
400 1#**1a**L'Epée,**1c**abbé de**1q**(Charles-Michel),**1d**1712-1789
400 3#**1a**Konbaung dynasty,**1c**Burma,**1d**1752-1885
100 1#**1a**Massena, André,**1c**prince d'Essling,**1d**1758-1817
400 1#**1a**E.,**1c**P. d',**1d**1758-1817

1d - Dates associated with a name

Dates of birth, death, or flourishing or any other date used with a name. A qualifier used with the date (e.g., b., d., ca., fl., ?, cent.) is also contained in subfield **1d**.

- 100 1#**1a**Lobb, Theophilus,**1d**1678-1763
100 1#**1a**Luckombe, Philip,**1d**d. 1803
100 1#**1a**Salant, Yosef Tsevi,**1d**1884 or 5-1981
100 1#**1a**Sirillo, Solomon ben Joseph,**1d**d. ca. 1558
100 1#**1a**Malalas, John,**1d**ca. 491-ca. 578
100 1#**1a**Marcellus, Marcus Claudius,**1d**d. 45 B.C.
100 1#**1a**Levi, James,**1d**fl. 1706-1739
100 0#**1a**Joannes Aegidius,**1c**Zamorensis,**1d**1240 or 41-ca. 1316
400 1#**1a**Compton, Winny,**1d**b. 1787

‡e - Relator term

Designation of function that describes the relationship between a name and a work.

- 100 1#‡aBlum, Leon,‡d1872-1950,‡edefendant‡tLeon Blum devant la Cour supreme,
Riom.‡lHebrew

‡f - Date of a work

Date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#‡aDorst, Tankred.‡tWorks.‡f1985
- 100 1#‡aSperoni, Sperone,‡d1500-1588.‡tSelections.‡f1982
- 400 1#‡aSperoni, Sperone,‡d1500-1588.‡tCanace, e scritti in sua difesa.‡f1982

Date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded.

‡g - Miscellaneous information

Data that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield. This subfield code is defined for consistency among the name fields. *Subfield ‡g is unlikely to be used in an X00 field.*

‡h - Medium

Media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#‡aWagner, Richard,‡d1813-1883.‡tOuverture.‡hSound recording

‡i - Relationship information [400/500]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 400 or 500 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in fields 400 and 500. Guidelines for using subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡j - Attribution qualifier

Attribution information for names when the responsibility is unknown, uncertain, fictitious, or pseudonymous. Qualifiers should be used that follow the name of a known artist for the work.

- 100 0#‡aE.S.,‡cMeister,‡d15th cent.,‡jFollower of
- 100 1#‡aReynolds, Joshua,‡cSir,‡d1723-1792,‡jPupil of

‡k - Form subheading

Occurs in the title portion of an X00 field. Form subheadings used with personal names include *Selections*.

- 100 1#‡aHusák, Gustáv.‡tSpeeches.‡kSelections
- 100 1#‡aAkhmatova, Anna Andreevna,‡d1889-1966.‡tSelections.‡lEnglish & Russian.‡f1985
[The word Selections is used as a uniform title and is contained in subfield ‡t.]
- 100 0#‡aDemetrius,‡c of Phaleron,‡db. 350 B.C.‡tDe elocutione.‡lRussian
- 400 0#‡wnnaa‡aDemetrius,‡c of Phaleron.‡kSpurious and doubtful works.‡tDe
elocutione.‡lRussian

‡l - Language of a work

Name of a language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#‡aCéline, Louis-Ferdinand,‡d1894-1961.‡tEntretiens avec le professeur Y.‡lEnglish &
French

X00

- 100 1#**†a**Jacobs, Una.**†t**Sonnen-Uhr.**†l**English
- 100 1#**†a**Brezina, Otokar.**†d**1868-1929.**†t**Poems.**†l**Polyglot

‡m - Medium of performance for music

Term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#**†a**Beethoven, Ludwig van.**†d**1770-1827.**†t**Sonatas.**†m**piano.**†k**Selections
- 400 1#**†a**Speer, Daniel.**†d**1636-1707.**†t**Sonatas.**†m**cornetts (2), trombones (3),**†r**C major

Subfield **‡m** is **not** used for medium of performance information in a title page title used in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#**†a**Beethoven, Ludwig van, **†d**1770-1827.**†t**Piano music.**†k**Selections
- 400 1#**†a**Beethoven, Ludwig van,**†d**1770-1827.**†t**Bagatelles, rondos and other shorter works for piano
[Title page title]

Multiple adjacent elements in a single medium of performance statement are contained in a single subfield **‡m**. Subfield **‡m** is repeated only when medium of performance statements are separated by subelements contained in other subfields.

- 100 1#**†a**Arne, Thomas Augustine,**†d**1710-1778.**†t**Concertos,**†m**keyboard instrument, orchestra.**†n**No. 3.**†p**Con spirito,**†m**keyboard instrument
[Subfield ‡m is repeated due to intervening subelements.]

If the uniform title includes as part of the medium the abbreviation “acc.” or “unacc.,” the abbreviation is recorded in subfield **‡m**. The abbreviation, “unacc.” is recorded in subfield **†t** when it is not an addition to a statement of medium. When a phrase such as “pianos (2),” “4 hands,” etc., follows a collective uniform title for a specific medium of performance, it is included in subfield **†t**.

Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields ‡o and ‡r.

‡n - Number of part/section of a work

Number designation for a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading. *Numbering* is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form (e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two). In music titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number is contained in subfield **‡n**.

- 100 1#**†a**Crisp, Thomas,**†d**17th cent.**†t**Babel's-builders unmask't.**†n**Part 1
- 100 0#**†a**Ovid,**†d**43 B.C.-17 or 18 A.D.**†t**Ars amatoria.**†n**Liber 1.**†l**English
- 400 1#**†a**Tolkien, J. R. R.**†q**(John Roland Reuel),**†d**1892-1973.**†t**Two Towers
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]
- 400 1#**†wnnaa****†a**Hindemith, Paul,**†d**1895-1963.**†t**Sonata,**†m**piano, 4 hands**†n**(1938)
[Parenthetical date in music titles is a part/section of a work.]
- 400 1#**†a**Hindemith, Paul,**†d**1895-1963.**†t**Vierhaendige Sonata fuer zwei Klaviere, 1938
[Date is not a part/section number.]

Multiple alternative numberings for a part/section (usually separated by commas) are contained in a single subfield **‡n**.

- 400 1#**†a**Mendelssohn-Bartholdy, Felix,**†d**1809-1847.**†t**Quartets,**†m**strings,**†n**no. 7, op. 81

Numbering that indicates a subpart to the first noted part/section (usually separated by a period) is contained in a separate subfield **‡n**.

- 400 1#**†a**Hindemith, Paul,**†d**1895-1963.**†t**Pieces,**†m**string orchestra,**†n**op. 44.**†n**No. 4

‡o - Arranged statement for music

Abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#‡aTelemann, Georg Philipp,‡d1681-1767.‡tSonatas,‡mflutes (2),‡nop. 5;‡oarr.
 100 1#‡aSchubert, Franz,‡d1797-1828.‡tSongs.‡kSelections;‡oarr.

Subfield ‡o is **not** used for an arranged statement in a title page title used in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#‡aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,‡d1756-1791.‡tZauberflöte.‡kSelections;‡oarr.
 400 1#‡aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,‡d1756-1791.‡tDuetts, for 2 violins or flutes, arr. from the celebrated opera Zauberflöte

‡p - Name of part/section of a work

Name designation of a part or section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#‡aHindemith, Paul,‡d1895-1963.‡tNobilissima visione.‡pMeditation
 100 1#‡aPraetorius, Hieronymus,‡d1560-1629.‡tOpus musicum.‡pCantiones sacrae.‡pO vos omnes
 100 1#‡aDebussy, Claude,‡d1862-1918.‡tPreludes,‡mpiano,‡nbook 1,‡pCollines d'Anacapri
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

‡q - Fuller form of name

More complete form of the name that is in subfield ‡a.

- 100 1#‡aKalashnikov, S. D.‡q(Sergei Dmitrievich)
 100 1#‡aCurien, P.-L.‡q(Pierre-Louis)
 100 0#‡aClaudius‡q(Claudius Ceccon)

‡r - Key for music

Statement of key used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#‡aBeethoven, Ludwig van,‡d1770-1827.‡tSonatas,‡mpiano,‡nno. 13, op. 27, no. 1,‡rE major

Not used for a music key in a title page title used in a name/title heading.

- 100 10‡aSchubert, Franz,‡d1797-1828.‡tSymphonies,‡nD. 589‡rC major
 400 10‡aSchubert, Franz,‡d1797-1828.‡tPetite symphonie en ut majeur
[Title page title]

‡s - Version

Version, edition, etc., information used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#‡aKelly, Michael,‡d1762-1826.‡tPizarro.‡sVocal score
 100 0#‡aRaimon,‡d1940-‡tSongs.‡sTexts.‡iSpanish & Catalan.‡kSelections

‡t - Title of a work

Title by which an item or a series is identified in a name/title heading.

- 100 1#‡aLaw, Felicia.‡tWays we move
 400 1#‡aLaw, Felicia.‡tGetting around!
 100 1#‡alhara, Saikaku,‡d1642-1693.‡tSelections.‡f1978
 100 0#‡aSatprem,‡d1923-‡tGenèse du surhomme.‡iEnglish
 100 0#‡aLeonardo,‡cda Vinci,‡d1452-1519.‡tLast Supper
 100 1#‡aLewis, C. S.‡q(Clive Staples),‡d1898-1963.‡tChronicles of Narnia (Collier)

X00

- 100 1#1aHoff, B. J.1q(Brenda Jane).1tDalton saga
- 100 1#1aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,1d1756-1791.1tPiano music, pianos (2)
- 100 1#1aDonizetti, Gaetano,1d1797-1848.1tPiano music, 4 hands

Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields 1e, 1f, 1k, 1l, 1m, 1n, 1o, 1p, and 1r.

1v - Form subdivision

Designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield 1v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a personal name heading to form an extended subject heading. Subfield 1v is used for form terms when they function as indicated above; the terms are coded in subfield 1x if they function as general subdivisions.

- 100 0#1aGautama Buddha1vEarly works to 1800
- 100 3#1aClark family1vFiction

1w - Control subfield [400/500/700]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield 1w is appropriate only in field 400, 500, and 700. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield 1w in field 400 and 500 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 700 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

1x - General subdivision

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield 1v (Form subdivision), subfield 1y (Chronological subdivision), or subfield 1z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield 1x is appropriate in the X00 fields only when a topical subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 100 1#1aBrunhoff, Jean de,1d1899-19371xCharacters1xBabar
- 100 1#1aTatlin, Vladimir Evgrafovich,1d1885-1953.1tMonument to the Third International1xCopying
- 100 0#1aNapoleon1bl,1cEmperor of the French,1d1769-18211xAssassination attempt, 1800 (December 24)
- 400 1#1aWashington, George,1d1732-17991xExpedition, 1753-1754

1y - Chronological subdivision

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield 1y is appropriate in the X00 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 100 1#1aShakespeare, William,1d1564-16161xCriticism and interpretation1xHistory1y18th century

1z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in the X00 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 100 0#1aFrederick1bl,1cHoly Roman Emperor,1d1194-12501xHomes and haunts1zItaly

10 - Record control number [500/700]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

- 700 1#1wa1aDostoyevsky, Fyodor,1d1821-1881.1tCrime and punishment10(DLC)sj##96005302

‡2 - Source of heading or term [700]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 700. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡4 - Relationship code [400/500]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 400 or 500 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [400/500/700]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix D: *Ambiguous Headings*.

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X00 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initial/letter, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 100 1#‡aTomlinson, Bridget
- 100 1#‡aMarmontel, Jean François,‡d1723-1799
- 100 1#‡aZweig, Martin.‡tWinning on Wall Street
- 100 1#‡aCarter, Elliott,‡d1908-‡tSuites,‡msaxophones (4)
- 100 1#‡aPond, Samuel W.‡q(Samuel William)
- 100 1#‡aDance, Daryl Cumber.‡tShuckin' and jivin'
- 400 1#‡aDorst, Tankred.‡tWerkausgabe.‡f1985
- 100 1#‡aSloane, Eugene A.
- 100 1#‡aTrotignon, Yves.‡tXXe siecle en U.R.S.S.
- 100 1#‡aSienkiewicz, Henryk,‡d1846-1916.‡tQuo vadis?
- 100 1#‡aKelterborn, Rudolf,‡d1931-
- 400 1#‡aAshkenazi, Shemu el Yafeh,‡d16th cent.

Name portion of a name/title field ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

- 100 1#‡aRavel, Maurice,‡d1875-1937.‡tSelections;‡oarr.
- 100 0#‡aThomas‡c(Anglo-Norman poet).‡tRoman de Tristan.‡lEnglish
- 100 0#‡aChristo,‡d1935-‡tSurrounded islands
- 100 0#‡aDemetrius,‡c‡of Phaleron,‡db. 350 B.C.‡tDe elocutione.‡lRussian

X00

Name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initial/letter, or open date.

- 100 1#‡aSavoskin, Anatolij Nikolajev‡xBibliography
- 100 1#‡aTatlin, Vladimir Evgrafovich,‡d1885-1953.‡tMonument to the Third International‡xCopying
- 100 1#‡aCapote, Truman,‡d1924-‡xCriticism and interpretation
- 100 0#‡aAlexander,‡cthe Great,‡d356-323 B.C.‡xArt

Spacing - Adjacent personal name initials/letters or an abbreviation for a name and an adjacent name or initial/letter are separated by one space.

- 100 1#‡aHyatt, J. B.
- 100 1#‡aFlam, F. A.‡q(Floyd A.)
- 100 1#‡aEnschedé, Ch. J.
- 100 1#‡aGorbanev, R. V.‡q(Rostislav Vasil'evich)

No spaces are used in initials/letters that do not represent personal names.

- 100 0#‡aCuthbert,‡cFather, O.S.F.C.,‡d1866-1939
- 100 1#‡aSharma, S. K.,‡cM.P.H.

Abbreviations consisting of more than a single letter are separated from preceding and succeeding words or initials/letters by one space.

- 100 1#‡aBrown, G. B.,‡cPh. D.

Display Constant

- *[dash associated with the content of subfield ‡x, ‡y, or ‡z]*

Dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the machine-readable record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfields ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 1 - Type of personal name entry element

- 1 - Single surname [REDEFINED, 1996]
- 2 - Multiple surname [OBSOLETE, 1996]

Indicator 2 - Nonfiling characters [100/400/500] [OBSOLETE, 1993]

The values were: 0-9 (Number of nonfiling characters present).

|‡i - Reference instruction phrase [400/500] [REDEFINED, 2009]

|‡j - Attribution qualifier [NEW, 2000]

|‡v - Record control number [700] [REDEFINED, 1995] [USMARC only]

|‡0 - Record control number [500/700] [NEW, 1997]

|‡3 - Authority record control number [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

|‡4 - Relationship code [400/500] [NEW, 2009]

X10 Corporate Names-General Information

- 110 Main Entry - Corporate (NR)**
410 See From Tracing - Corporate Name (R)
510 See Also From Tracing - Corporate Name (R)
710 Established Heading Linking Entry - Corporate Name (R)

First Indicator

Type of corporate name entry element

- 0 Inverted name
- 1 Jurisdiction name
- 2 Name in direct order

Second indicator

- 110** Undefined
- # Undefined
- 410** Undefined
- # Undefined
- 510** Undefined
- # Undefined

Second Indicator

- 710** Thesaurus
- 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
- 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2 Medical Subject Headings
- 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4 Source not specified
- 5 Canadian Subject Headings
- 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
- 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

Name portion

- ‡a Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
- ‡b Subordinate unit (R)
- ‡c Location of meeting (NR)
- ‡e Relator term (R)

Title portion

- ‡t Title of a work (NR)
- ‡f Date of a work (NR)
- ‡h Medium (NR)
- ‡k Form subheading (R)
- ‡l Language of a work (R)
- ‡m Medium of performance for music (R)
- ‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)
- ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
- ‡r Key for music (NR)
- ‡s Version (NR)

Name and title portions

- ‡d Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)
- ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
- ‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

Subject subdivision portion

- ‡v Form subdivision (R)
- ‡x General subdivision (R)
- ‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
- ‡z Geographic subdivision (R)

Tracing and linking subfields

- | ‡i Relationship information (R) [410/510]
- ‡w Control subfield (NR) [410/510/710]
- ‡0 Record control number (R) [510/710]
- ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [710]
- | ‡4 Relationship code (R) [410/510]
- ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) [410/510/710]
- ‡6 Linkage (NR)
- ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in a name or name/title heading that contains a corporate name constructed according to generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g, *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR2)*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)*). A corporate name, a form subheading, a title of an item or a series, and/or a city section name entered *under the name*

X10

of a jurisdiction are X10 corporate names. A name of a jurisdiction that represents an ecclesiastical entity is an X10 corporate name. For subject purposes, other names of jurisdictions used alone or followed by subject subdivisions are geographic names and are contained in the X51 fields. For non-subject purposes, other names used alone are contained in the X10 fields. A named meeting that is entered directly under a corporate name is contained in the X11 fields. Corporate names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Catholic Church in art) are contained in the X50 fields.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References -General Information* section (for field 410 and 510) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 710).

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of corporate name entry element

Form of the entry element of the name portion of a heading. The values distinguish among an inverted name, a jurisdiction name, and a corporate name in direct order used as the entry element.

0 - Inverted name

Corporate name begins with a personal name that is formatted in inverted order (*surname, forename*).

410 0#†aNewman (Jean and Dorothy) Industrial Relations Library

410 0#†aLister (D.B.) & Associates

Corporate names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

110 2#†aField & Young (Jersey City, N.J.)

110 2#†aNigel Brooks Chorale

1 - Jurisdiction name

Name of a jurisdiction that is also an ecclesiastical entity or is a jurisdiction name under which a corporate name, a city section, or a title of an item or a series is entered.

110 1#†aPennsylvania.†bState Board of Examiners of Nursing Home Administrators

110 1#†aJalisco (Mexico)†tLey que aprueba el plan regional urbano de Guadalajara, 1979-1983

410 1#†aMarseille (France : Diocese : Catholic Church)

410 1#†aCambridge (Mass.)†bEast Cambridge

Corporate names containing a name of a jurisdiction as an integral part of the name or qualified by such a name are identified by value 2.

110 2#†aUniversity of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign.†bExperimental Music Studios

110 2#†aArizona Family Planning Council

110 2#†aEast Randolph Literary Society (Vt.)

2 - Name in direct order

Corporate name is formatted in direct order. The heading may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

110 2#†aHarvard University

110 2#†aNational Gardening Association (U.S.)

110 2#†aPRONAPADE (Firm)

110 2#†aJ. Paul Getty Museum

Second Indicator

In fields 110, 410, and 510, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 710, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element**

Name of a corporate body or the first entity when subordinate units are present; a jurisdiction name under which a corporate body, city section, or a title of a work is entered; or a jurisdictional name that is also an ecclesiastical entity. A parenthetical qualifying term, jurisdiction name, or date (other than the date of a meeting) is not separately subfield coded.

- 110 2#‡aWinrock International Institute for Agricultural Development
- 110 2#‡aDiscovery (Ship)
- 110 2#‡aEmpire State Building (New York, N.Y.)
- 110 2#‡aUtkal University.‡bPopulation Research Centre
- 110 1#‡aBritish Columbia.‡bFish and Wildlife Branch
- 110 1#‡aSwitzerland.‡tObligationenrecht (1911)
- 410 1#‡aNew York (N.Y.).‡bGreenwich Village

‡b - Subordinate unit

Name of a subordinate corporate unit, a name of a city section, or a name of meeting entered under a corporate or jurisdiction name.

- 110 1#‡aTexas.‡bDept. of Human Services
- 110 2#‡aUniversity of Ife.‡bDept. of Demography and Social Statistics
- 110 2#‡aLabour Party (Great Britain).‡bConference‡n(71st :‡cBlackpool)

‡c - Location of meeting

Place name or a name of an institution where a meeting was held. Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield \$c.

- 110 2#‡aCatholic Church.‡bConcilium Plenarium Americae Latinae‡d(1899 :‡cRome, Italy)
- 110 2#‡aDemocratic Party (Tex.).‡bState Convention‡d(1857 :‡cWaco)
- 110 1#‡aBotswana.‡bDelegation to the Commonwealth Parliamentary Conference, 28th, 1982, Nassau, Bahamas
[*"Delegation to ..."* does not refer to a named meeting; number, date, and place are not separately subfield coded.]

‡d - Date of meeting or treaty signing

Date a meeting was held.

- 110 1#‡aNew Hampshire.‡bConstitutional Convention‡d(1781)

In a name/title X10 field, subfield \$d also contains the date a treaty was signed.

- 110 1#‡aAlgeria.‡tTreaties, etc.‡gEngland and Wales,‡d1682 Apr. 20

‡e - Relator term

Relationship between a name and a work.

‡f - Date of a work

Date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

- 110 2#‡aRaleigh Publishing Company.‡tWorks.‡f1979

X10

Date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded.

110 1#**†a**France.**†t**Constitution (1946)

†g - Miscellaneous information

Data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield. In a heading for a meeting entered under a corporate body, subfield \$g also contains a subelement that is not more appropriately contained in subfields \$c, \$d, or \$n.

110 1#**†a**Minnesota.**†b**Constitutional Convention**†d**(1857 :**†g**Republican)

In a name/title X10 field, subfield \$g contains the name of the *other party* to treaties, intergovernmental agreements, etc.

110 1#**†a**Great Britain.**†t**Treaties, etc.**†g**Poland,**†d**1948 Mar. 2.**†k**Protocols, etc.**†d**1951 Mar. 6

†h - Medium

Media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

110 2#**†a**Pearls Before Swine (Musical group).**†t**One nation underground.**†h**Sound recording

†i - Relationship information [410/510]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 410 or 510 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield †w (Control subfield). Subfield †i is appropriate only in fields 410 and 510. Guidelines for using subfield †i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

†k - Form subheading

Occurs in the title portion of an X10 field. Form subheadings used with corporate names include *Manuscript* and *Selections*.

110 2#**†a**British Library.**†k**Manuscript.**†n**Arundel 384

110 1#**†a**France.**†t**Treaties, etc.**†g**Poland,**†d**1948 Mar. 2.**†k**Protocols, etc.**†d**1951 Mar. 6

110 2#**†a**Library of Congress.**†b**Congressional Research Service.**†b**Senior Specialist Division.**†t**Soviet diplomacy and negotiating behavior.**†l**Japanese.**†k**Selections

†l - Language of a work

Name of a language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

110 2#**†a**Banco Central de Venezuela.**†t**Procedimiento para la obtención ...**†l**English & Spanish

†m - Medium of performance for music

Term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading. *Subfield \$m is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.*

†n - Number of part/section/meeting

Number of a meeting that is entered under a corporate name.

110 1#**†a**United States.**†b**Congress**†n**(97th, 2nd session :**†d**1982).**†b**House

Number designation for a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading. *Numbering* is defined as sequencing in any form (e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two). For music, the serial, opus, or thematic index number, or date used as a number, is contained in subfield \$n.

110 1#**†a**Italy.**†t**Regio decreto-legge 20 luglio 1934,**†nn**. 1404.**†l**German

110 2#**†a**Corpus Christi College (University of Cambridge).**†b**Library.**†k**Manuscript.**†n**57

110 1#**†a**Philippines.**†t**Labor Code of the Philippines.**†n**Book 5,**†p**Labor Relations
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

Multiple numberings for a part/section separated by a comma (usually alternative numberings) are contained in a single subfield \$n.

110 2#**†a**Montevergine (Abbey).**†b**Biblioteca.**†k**Manuscript.**†n**Scaffale XXIII, 171

Multiple numbering for parts/sections separated by periods (which usually indicates a subpart to the first part/section noted) are contained in separate \$n subfields.

†o - Arranged statement for music

Abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading. *Subfield \$o is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.*

†p - Name of part/section of a work

Name designation of a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading.

110 1#**†a**United States.**†t**Constitution.**†p**Preamble

110 2#**†a**United States Strategic Bombing Survey.**†t**Reports.**†p**Pacific war

110 1#**†a**Ecuador.**†t**Plan Nacional de Desarrollo, 1980-1984.**†n**Parte 1,**†p**Grandes objetivos nacionales.**†l**English
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

Subfield \$p also contains a name designation following the form subdivision *Manuscript*.

110 2#**†a**New York Public Library.**†k**Manuscript.**†p**Aulendorf Codex

†r - Key for music

Statement of key in which the music is written used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading. *Subfield \$r is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.*

†s - Version

Version, edition, etc., information used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

110 2#**†a**American Library Association.**†b**Bookdealer-Library Relations Committee.**†t**Acquisitions guidelines**†s**(2nd ed.)

†t - Title of a work

Title by which an item or a series is identified in a name/title heading.

110 1#**†a**Venezuela.**†t**Control de cambio no. 3.**†l**English & Spanish

110 1#**†a**United States.**†t**Treaties, etc.

Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields \$f, \$k, \$l, \$n and \$p.

†v - Form subdivision

Designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield \$v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a corporate name heading to form an extended subject heading. Subfield \$v is used for form terms when they function as indicated above; the terms are coded in subfield \$x if they function as general subdivisions.

110 2#**†a**United Nations**†x**Economic assistance**†v**Periodicals

†w - Control subfield [410/510/710]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield \$w is appropriate only in field 410, 510, and 710. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield \$w in field 410 and 510 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 710 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

X10

‡x - General subdivision

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield \$v (Form subdivision), subfield \$y (Chronological subdivision) or subfield \$z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield \$x is appropriate in the X10 fields only when a topical subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

110 2#‡aLutheran Church‡xClergy

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield \$y is appropriate in the X10 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

110 1#‡aUnited States.‡bArmy‡xRecruiting, enlistment, etc.‡yCivil War, 1861-1865, [World War, 1914-1918, etc.]

410 2#‡wnne‡aHarvard University‡xHistory‡yRevolution, 1775-1783
[Tracing from an earlier form of an LCSH heading.]

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in the X10 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

110 2#‡aCatholic Church‡zGermany‡xHistory‡y1933-1945

‡0 - Record control number [510/710]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [710]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield \$2 is appropriate only in field 710. Guidelines for applying subfield \$2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡4 - Relationship code [410/510]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 410 or 510 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [410/510/710]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix D: *Ambiguous Headings*.

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X10 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 110 2#‡aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency
- 110 2#‡aMartin Marietta Corporation.‡bEnvironmental Center
- 110 1#‡aBihar (India).‡tBihar Panchayat Raj Act, 1947
- 110 2#‡aVerlag Netto-Marktpreiskatalog "Austria."
- 110 2#‡aWestern Map and Publishing Co.
- 110 1#‡aUnited States.‡bCongress‡n(87th :‡d1961-1962)
- 410 2#‡aC.I.M.A.

Name portion of a name or name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

- 110 1#‡aBoston (Mass.).‡tLaws, etc.
- 410 2#‡aCatholic Church.‡bPope (1978- : John Paul II).‡tOpen the doors to the Redeemer
- 410 2#‡aCasa de la Cultura Ecuatoriana "Benjamin Carrión."‡bSección de Ciencias Biológicas.‡tColección Estudios científicos ecuatorianos

Name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initialism, or open date.

- 110 2#‡aSociety of Friends‡zPennsylvania‡xHistory

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials.

- 110 2#‡aBrotherhood of Railway Trainmen (U.S.).‡bMinnesota State Legislative Board
- 110 2#‡aMetallurgical Society of AIME.‡bNew Jersey Chapter
- 110 2#‡aGuru Ram Dass P.G. School of Planning
- 110 2#‡aConföderation Iranischer Studenten (N.U.)
- 410 2#‡aD.B. Lister and Associates

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

- 110 2#‡aMonongalia Historical Society, Morgantown, W. Va.
- 110 2#‡aScientific Society of San Antonio (1904-)

Display Constant -

- *[dash associated with the content of subfield \$v, \$x, \$y, and \$z]*

Dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield \$v, \$x, \$y, and \$z.

Content designated field:

- 110 2#‡aLutheran Church‡xDoctrines‡vEarly works to 1800

Display example:

Lutheran Church - Doctrines - Early works to 1800

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Nonfiling characters [OBSOLETE, 1993]

The values were: 0-9 (Number of nonfiling characters present).

|‡i - Reference instruction phrase [410/510] [REDEFINED, 2009]

‡v - Record control number [710] [REDEFINED, 1995] [USMARC only]

‡0 - Record control number [510/710] [NEW, 1997]

‡3 - Authority record control number [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

|‡4 - Relationship code [410/510] [NEW, 2009]

X10

[blank page]

X11 Meeting Names-General Information

- 111** Heading - Meeting Name (NR)
411 See From Tracing - Meeting Name (R)
511 See Also From Tracing - Meeting Name (R)
711 Established Heading Linking Entry - Meeting Name (R)

First Indicator

Type of meeting name entry element

- 0 Inverted name
 1 Jurisdiction name
 2 Name in direct order

Second indicator

- 111** Undefined
 # Undefined
411 Undefined
 # Undefined
511 Undefined
 # Undefined

Second Indicator

- 711** Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

- Name portion*
 ‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
 ‡c Location of meeting (NR)
 ‡d Date of meeting (NR)
 ‡e Subordinate unit (R)
 ‡j Relator term (R)
 ‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)

- Title portion*
 ‡f Date of a work (NR)
 ‡h Medium (NR)
 ‡k Form subheading (R)
 ‡l Language of a work (NR)
 ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
 ‡s Version (NR)
 ‡t Title of a work (NR)

- Name and title portions*
 ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
 ‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

- Tracing and linking subfields*
 ‡i Relationship information (R) [411/511]
 ‡w Control subfield (NR) [411/511/711]
 ‡0 Record control number (R) [511/711]
 ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [711]
 ‡4 Relationship code (R) [411/511]
 ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) [411/511/711/]
 ‡6 Linkage (NR)
 ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

- Subject subdivision portion*
 ‡v Form subdivision (R)
 ‡x General subdivision (R)
 ‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
 ‡z Geographic subdivision (R)

X11

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in meeting name headings constructed according to generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g, *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)). A named meeting that is entered under a corporate name is contained in the X10 fields. Corporate names that include such words as *conference* or *congress* are also contained in the X10 fields. For example, the Congress of Neurological Surgeons, a professional group, is a corporate name.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for field 411 and 511) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 711).

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of meeting name entry element

Identifies the form of the entry element of the name portion of a heading. The values distinguish among an inverted personal name, a jurisdiction name, and a meeting name in direct order used as the entry element.

0 - Inverted name

Personal name that is formatted in inverted order (*surname, forename*).

411 0#Smith (David Nichol) Memorial Seminar

Meeting names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

111 2#Symposium Internacional "Manuel Pedroso" In Memoriam(1976 :cGuanajuato, Mexico)

111 2#Wittenberg University Luther Symposium(1983)

411 2#Symposium on Luther and Learning(1983 :cWittenburg University)

1 - Jurisdiction name

Jurisdiction name under which the name is entered.

411 1#Venice (Italy).qInternational Biennial Exhibition of Art

Meeting names containing a jurisdiction name as an integral part of the name or qualified by a place name are identified by value 2.

111 2#Nation-wide Conference of the Women of Afghanistan(1980 :cKabul, Afghanistan)

411 2#Brussels Hemoglobin Symposium

2 - Name in direct order

Heading may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

111 2#ASTED International Symposium

111 2#Symposium (International) on Combustion

111 2#Governor's Conference on Aging (N.Y.)(1982 :cAlbany)

111 2#Esto '84 Raamatunäituse Komitee

111 2#International Congress of Romance Linguistics and Philology(17th :d1983 :cAix-en-Provence, France).tActes du XVIIème Congrès international de linguistique et philologie romanes

111 2#Congresso Brasileiro de Publicações

Second Indicator

In fields 111, 411, and 511, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 711, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element**

Name of a meeting or a jurisdiction name under which a meeting is entered. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded.

- 111 2#‡aInternational Conference on Numerical Methods in Geomechanics
- 411 2#‡aGeomechanics, International Conference on Numerical Methods in
- 411 1#‡aVenice (Italy).‡qInternational Biennial Exhibition of Art

‡c - Location of meeting

Place name or a name of an institution where a meeting was held. Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield ‡c.

- 111 2#‡aWorkshop on Primary Health Care‡d(1983 :‡cKavieng, Papua New Guinea)
- 111 2#‡aConference on Philosophy and Its History‡d(1983 :‡cUniversity of Lancaster)
- 111 2#‡aWorld Peace Conference‡n(1st :‡d1949 :‡cParis, France and Prague, Czechoslovakia)

Place name added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

‡d - Date of meeting

- 111 2#‡aColloquio franco-italiano di Aosta‡d(1982)
- 111 2#‡aSymposium on Finite Element Methods in Geotechnical Engineering‡d(1972 :‡cVicksburg, Miss.)
- 111 2#‡aSpecial Conference on the Chinese Customs Tariff‡d(1925-1926 :‡cPeking, China)

Date added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

- 111 2#‡aInternational Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)

‡e - Subordinate unit

Name of a subordinate unit entered under a meeting name.

- 111 2#‡aIllinois White House Conference on Children‡d(1980 :‡cSpringfield, Ill.).‡eChicago Regional Committee
- 111 2#‡aStour Music Festival.‡eOrchestra
- 111 2#‡aWhite House Conference on Library and Information Services‡d(1979 :‡cWashington, D.C.).‡eOhio Conference Delegation

‡f - Date of a work

Date of publication used with a collective uniform title in a name/title heading.

- 111 2#‡aHybrid Corn Industry Research Conference.‡tWorks.‡f1980

Date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded.

- 111 2#‡aInternational Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)

X11

‡g - Miscellaneous information

Data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield.

- 111 2#‡aSymposium on Nonsteady Fluid Dynamics,‡cSan Francisco,‡d1978‡g(Projected, not held)

‡h - Medium

Media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

‡i - Relationship information [411/511]

Reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in field 411 and 511. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡j - Relator term

Describes the relationship between a name and a work.

- 711 22‡aForum on Bilateral Conversations‡n(5th :‡d1930 :‡cBudapest, Hungary),‡jsponsor.‡tReport.‡f1991.

‡k - Form subheading

Form subheading used with a title of a work in a name/title heading. The term *Selections* is a form subheading used with meeting names.

- 111 2#‡aInternational Conference on Safety of Life at Sea‡d(1960 :‡cLondon, England).‡tFinal act of conference with annexes including the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, signed in London, 17 June, 1960.‡iChinese & English.‡kSelections

‡l - Language of a work

Name of the language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work in a name/title heading.

- 111 2#‡aBiennale di Venezia‡d(1980).‡eSettore arti visive.‡tCatalogo generale 1980.‡iEnglish

‡n - Number of part/section/meeting

Number designation for a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title field. *Numbering* is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form (e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two).

In music uniform titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number, or a date used to distinguish one work from another, is contained in subfield ‡n.

Multiple alternative numberings (often separated by a comma) are contained in a single subfield ‡n. Multiple numberings that are hierarchical (often separated by a period) are contained in separate occurrences of subfield ‡n.

- 111 2#‡aAsian Games‡n(9th :‡d1982 :‡cDelhi, India).‡eSpecial Organising Committee
- 411 2#‡aVatican Council‡n(2nd :‡d1962-1965).‡tConstitutio pastoralis de ecclesia in mundo huius temporis.‡n46-52,‡pDe dignitate matrimonii et familiae fovenda
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

‡p - Name of part/section of a work

Name designation of a part/section of a work in a name/title heading.

- 111 2#‡aInternational Conference on Gnosticism‡d(1978 :‡cNew Haven, Conn.)‡tRediscovery of Gnosticism.‡pModern writers

- 111 2#**†a**Conference on the Limitation of Armament**†d**(1921-1922 :**†c**Washington, D.C.).**†t**Washington Kaigi keika.**†n**1.**†p**Gunbi seigen ni kansuru mondai
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

†q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element

Meeting name that is entered under a jurisdiction name contained in subfield **†a**. This construction is not used in AACR 2 formulated 111 Heading or 511 See Also From Tracing fields. It may occur in 411 See From Tracing fields.

- 411 1#**†a**Venice (Italy).**†q**International Biennial Exhibition of Art

†s - Version

Version, edition, etc., information added to a title of a work in a name/title heading. *Subfield †s is unlikely to be used in an X11 field.*

†t - Title of a work

Title by which an item or a series is identified in a name/title heading.

- 111 2#**†a**Vatican Council**†n**(2nd :**†d**1962-1965).**†t**Decretum de presbyterorum ministerio et vita
 111 2#**†a**Kolloquim Kunst und Philosophie**†d**(1980:**†c**Paderborn, Germany).**†t**Kolloquim Kunst

Additional examples are in the descriptions of subfields †f, †k, †l, †n, and †p.

†v - Form subdivision

Form subdivision that designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield **†v** is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a meeting name heading to form an extended subject heading. Subfield **†v** is used for form terms when they function as indicated above; the terms are coded in subfield **†x** if they function as general subdivisions.

- 111 2#**†a**Olympics**†x**History**†v**Juvenile literature
 111 2#**†a**Purdue Pest Control Conference**†v**Periodicals

†w - Control subfield [411/511/711/]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield **†w** is appropriate only in field 411, 511, and 711. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield **†w** in field 411 and 511 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 711 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

†x - General subdivision

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield **†v** (Form subdivision), subfield **†y** (Chronological subdivision) or subfield **†z** (Geographic subdivision). Subfield **†x** is appropriate in the X11 fields only when a topical subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 111 2#**†a**New Mexico State Fair**†x**Finance
 111 2#**†a**New York World's Fair**†d**(1939-1940)**†x**Buildings
 111 2#**†a**Olympic Games**†n**(11th :**†d**1936 :**†c**Berlin, Germany)**†x**Anniversaries, etc.

†y - Chronological subdivision

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield **†y** is appropriate in the X11 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

†z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in the X11 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

X11

‡0 - Record control number [511/711]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [711]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 711. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡4 - Relationship code [411/511]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 411 or 511 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [411/511/711]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix D.

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X11 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

111 2#‡aConvegno Santa Caterina in Finalborgo‡d(1980 :‡cCivico museo del Finale)

Name portion of a name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation.

111 2#‡aInternational Congress of the History of Art‡n(24th :‡d1979 :‡cBologna, Italy).‡tAtti del XXIV Congresso internazionale di storia dell'arte

Mark of punctuation occurring with a closing quotation mark is placed inside the quotation mark.

111 2#‡aSimposio "Antropólogos y Misioneros: Posiciones Incompatibles?"‡d(1985 :‡cBogota, Colombia)

Name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initial/date, or open date.

111 2#‡aVatican Council‡n(2nd :‡d1962-1965).‡tActa synodalia Sacrosancti Concilii Oecumenici Vaticani II‡vIndexes

111 2#‡aCouncil of Constantinople‡n(1st :‡d381)‡vPoetry

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials/letters.

111 2#‡aJ.J. Sylvester Symposium on Algebraic Geometry‡d(1976 :‡cJohns Hopkins University)

111 2#‡aWoman's Rights Convention‡n(1st :‡d1848 :‡cSeneca Falls, N.Y.)

111 2#‡aOlympic Games‡n(22nd :‡d1980 :‡cMoscow, R.S.F.S.R.)

111 2#‡aInternational SEG Meeting

411 2#‡aS.E.G. Meeting

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

111 2#**‡a**Ph. D. in Music Symposium**‡d**(1985 :**‡c**Boulder, Colo.)

111 2#**‡a**International Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)**‡n**(6th :**‡d**1987 :**‡c**Osaka, Japan)

Display Constant

- [dash associated with the content of subfield **‡v**, **‡x**, **‡y**, and **‡z**]

Dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield **‡v**, **‡x**, **‡y**, and **‡z**.

Content designated field:

111 2#**‡a**Purdue Pest Control Conference**‡v**Periodicals

Display example:

Purdue Pest Control Conference-Periodicals

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Nonfiling characters [111/411/511] [OBSOLETE, 1993]

Values were: 0-9 (Number of nonfiling characters present).

‡b - Number [OBSOLETE, 1980]

In 1980, the definition of subfield **‡n** was expanded to include meeting numbers and subfield **‡b** was made obsolete. Records created before this change may contain the number of the meeting in subfield **‡b**.

‡j - Relator term [NEW, 2006]

‡i - Reference instruction phrase [411/511] [REDEFINED, 2009]

‡v - Record control number [711] [REDEFINED, 1995] [USMARC only]

‡0 - Record control number [511/711] [NEW, 1997]

‡3 - Authority record control number [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

‡4 - Relationship code [411/511] [NEW, 2009]

[blank page]

X30 Uniform Titles-General Information

- 130 Main Entry - Uniform Title (NR)**
430 See From Reference - Uniform Title (R)
530 See Also From Reference - Uniform Title (R)
730 Established Heading Linking Entry - Uniform Title (R)

First Indicator

- Undefined
 # Undefined

Second indicator

- 130** Nonfiling characters
 0-9 Number of Nonfiling characters
430 Nonfiling characters
 0-9 Number of Nonfiling characters
530 Nonfiling characters
 0-9 Number of Nonfiling characters

Second Indicator

- 730** Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

<i>Title portion</i>	<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>
‡a Uniform title (NR)	‡v Form subdivision (R)
‡d Date of treaty signing (R)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡f Date of a work (NR)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)	‡z Geographical subdivision (R)
‡h Medium (NR)	
‡k Form subheading (R)	
‡l Language of a work (NR)	‡i Relationship information (R) [430/530]
‡m Medium of performance for music (R)	‡w Control subfield (NR) [430/530/730]
‡n Number of part/section of a work (R)	‡0 Record control number (R) [530/730]
‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)	‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [730]
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)	‡4 Relationship code (R) [430/530]
‡r Key for music (NR)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡s Version (NR)	[430/530/730]
‡t Title of a work (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in a title that identifies an item or a series that is not entered under a name in a name/title heading. The title is constructed according to generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR 2)*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)*). Uniform titles used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Bible and atheism) are contained in the X50 fields. A title entered under a name is contained in subfield ‡t (Title of a work) in the field appropriate for the author's name (X00, X10, X11).

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for field 430 and 530) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 730).

X30

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator Nonfiling characters

In field 130, 430, and 530, the second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., Le, An) at the beginning of a uniform title heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

0 - No nonfiling characters

No initial article character positions are disregarded. Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a uniform title heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

130 #0‡a"Hsüan lai hsi kan" hsi lieh

130 #0‡aElektroshlakovyi pereplav

Initial definite or indefinite articles may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the uniform title heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

130 #0‡aBastard

[Full title is Der Bastard.]

1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters

Title begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. Any diacritical mark, space or mark of punctuation associated with the article and any space or mark of punctuation preceding the first filing character after the article is included in the count of nonfiling characters. Any diacritic, however, associated with the first filing character is not included in the count of nonfiling characters.

Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in field 130, 430, and 530.

Second Indicator

In field 730, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Uniform title

Parenthetical information added to make a title distinctive is not separately subfield coded except in the case of the date of signing added to a uniform title of a treaty (see description of subfield ‡d).

130 #0‡aHabakkuk commentary

130 #0‡aBeowulf

130 #0‡aCodex Brucianus

130 #0‡aResources information series

130 #0‡almago (Series)

130 #0‡aRecherches (Sand (Firm))

130 #0‡aSocialist thought and practice (Belgrade, Serbia)

130 #0‡aEconomia (Franco Angeli editore : 1985)

- 130 #0‡aNotícias de Macau
 130 #0‡aInter-American Treaty of Reciprocal Assistance‡d(1947)
[Parenthetical date of treaty signing is contained in subfield ‡d.]

‡d - Date of treaty signing

Date of signing used in a uniform title heading for a treaty or other intergovernmental agreement.

- 130 #0‡aBonn Convention‡d(1952)
 430 #0‡aBonner Vertrag‡d(1952)

‡f - Date of a work

Date of publication used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 #0‡aBible.‡lLatin.‡sVulgate.‡f1454?
 130 #0‡aTosefta.‡lEnglish.‡f1977

Date added parenthetically to distinguish between identical uniform titles is not separately subfield coded.

- 130 #0‡aNew-York statesman (1823)

‡g - Miscellaneous information

Data element used in a uniform title heading that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield.

- 430 #0‡wnnaa‡aBible.‡gManuscripts, Latin.‡pN.T.‡pGospels (Lindisfarne gospels)

‡h - Medium

Media qualifier used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 #0‡aGone with the wind (Motion picture).‡hSound recording

‡i - Relationship information [430/530]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 430 or 530 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in fields 430 and 530. Guidelines for using subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡k - Form subheading

Form subheadings used with uniform titles include *Manuscript, Protocols, etc.*, and *Selections*.

- 130 #0‡aBible.‡pO.T.‡pFive Scrolls.‡lHebrew.‡sBiblioteca apostolica
 Vaticana.‡kManuscript.‡nUrbaniti Hebraicus 1
 130 #0‡aConvention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental
 Freedoms‡d(1950).‡kProtocols, etc.
 130 #0‡aPortrait and biographical album of Isabella County, Mich.‡kSelections
 130 #0‡aVedas.‡pRgveda.‡lItalian & Sanskrit.‡kSelections

‡l - Language of a work

Name of the language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 #0‡aKhimifià i tekhnologiià vody.‡lEnglish
 130 #0‡aLord's prayer.‡lPolyglot
 130 #0‡aTreaty on the Non-proliferation of Nuclear Weapons‡d(1968).‡lSpanish
 130 #0‡aAvesta.‡pVendidad.‡lPahlavi & Avestan.‡kSelections

X30

‡m - Medium of performance for music

Term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title heading. If the uniform title includes as part of the medium the abbreviation “acc.” or “unacc.,” the abbreviation is recorded in subfield ‡m. The abbreviation, “unacc.” is recorded in subfield ‡a when it is not an addition to a statement of medium. When a phrase such as “pianos (2),” “4 hands,” etc., follows a collective uniform title for a specific medium of performance, it is included in subfield ‡a.

130 #0‡aDuets,‡mviolin, viola,‡nop. 10. D major‡nNo. 3
[Uniform title heading used for a work of unknown authorship.]

130 #0‡aSongs, unacc.

‡n - Numbering

Number designation for a part/section of a work used in a uniform title heading. *Numbering* is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form (e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two). In addition, in music uniform titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number, or a date used to distinguish one work from another, is contained in subfield ‡n.

130 #0‡aEnglish lute-songs.‡nSeries 1

130 #0‡aBulletin.‡nSeries B (Association of Washington Cities)

130 #0‡aAnnale Universiteit van Stellenbosch.‡nSerie A2,‡pSoölogie
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

130 #0‡aOperas français du XIXème siècle.‡nSerie A

130 #0‡aDuets,‡mviolin, viola,‡nop. 10

Multiple numberings separated by a comma (usually alternative numberings) are contained in a single subfield ‡n. Multiple numberings separated by a period (which usually indicates a subpart to the first part/section noted) are contained in separate ‡n subfields.

‡o - Arranged statement for music

Abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title heading.

130 #0‡aGod save the king;‡oarr.

‡p - Name of part/section of a work

Name designation of a part/section used in a uniform title heading.

130 #0‡aQuestões internacionais.‡pSérie Estudos

130 #0‡aRecherches morales.‡pDocuments

130 #0‡aTalmud Yerushalmi.‡pNezikin.‡lGerman.‡kSelections

130 #0‡aStatistical bulletin (Bamako, Mali).‡pSupplement

130 #0‡aAmerican Convention on Human Rights‡d(1969).‡nPart 2,‡pMeans of Protection.‡lSpanish
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

Named part that indicates a subpart to the first noted part/section is contained in a separate subfield ‡p.

130 #0‡aBiblioteca Francisco Javier Clavijero.‡pSerie menor.‡pColección Fuentes para el estudio de la historia del movimiento obrero mexicano

130 #0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡pPhilippians.‡lEnglish.‡sRevised Standard.‡f1980

430 #0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡pMatthew VI, 9-13

‡r - Key for music

Statement of key in which music is written used in a uniform title heading.

130 #0‡aConcerto,‡mviolin, string orchestra,‡rD major

‡s - Version

Version, edition, etc., information used in a uniform title heading.

130 #0‡aBible.‡IEnglish.‡sAuthorized

130 #0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡pLuke.‡IGreek.‡sCodex Sinaiticus

‡t - Title of a work

Title page title of a work. *Subfield ‡t is unlikely to be used in an X30 field.*

‡v - Form subdivision

Form subdivision that designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading. Subfield ‡v is used for form terms when they function as indicated above; the terms are coded in subfield ‡x if they function as general subdivisions.

130 #0‡aGawain and the Grene Knight‡vBibliography

130 #0‡aNew York times (New York, N.Y. : 1857)‡vIndexes

130 #0‡aBeowulf‡xLanguage‡vGlossaries, etc.

130 #0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡vInterlinear translations

‡w - Control subfield [430/530/730]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in field 430, 530, and 730. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w in field 430 and 530 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 730 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

‡x - General subdivision

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision), or subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X30 fields only when a topical subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading.

130 #0‡aTalmud‡xTheology

130 #0‡aHildebrandslied‡xAuthorship

130 #0‡aBible.‡xInfluence‡xWestern civilization

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in the X30 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading.

130 #0‡aKoran‡xCriticism, interpretation, etc.‡xHistory‡y19th century

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in the X30 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading.

130 #0‡aBible‡zGermany

130 #0‡aKoran‡xAppreciation‡zEurope

‡0 - Record control number [530/730]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

X30

‡2 - Source of heading or term [730]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 730. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡4 - Relationship code [430/530]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 430 or 530 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [430/530/730]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix D: *Ambiguous Headings* .

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X30 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 130 #0‡aTen commandments
- 130 #0‡aGod save the king;‡oarr.
- 130 #0‡aTalmud‡vOutlines, syllabi, etc.
- 130 #0‡aPublicación miscelánea (Inter-American Institute for Cooperation on Agriculture)
- 130 #0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡lEnglish.‡sRevised Standard.‡f1961?
- 430 #0‡aPax et bonum, Ed.

A mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

- 130 #0‡wb‡aPublicaciones del Archivo Histórico de la Provincia de Buenos Aires "Ricardo Levene."‡nIII,‡pDocumentos del archivo

Uniform title heading followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the title ends with an abbreviation or an initialism.

- 130 #0‡aUnited Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods‡d(1980)‡vCongresses
- 130 #0‡aBook of Mormon‡xAntiquities
- 130 #0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡xRelation to the Old Testament

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms.

- 130 #0‡aCORPS (computing, organizations, policy, and society) series
- 130 #0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡pMatthew

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

130 #0‡aMineral resources series (Morgantown, W. Va.)

Display Constant

- *[dash associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z]*

Dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

Content designated field:

130 #0‡aBeowulf‡xLanguage‡vGlossaries, etc.

Display example:

Beowulf - Language - Glossaries, etc.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡i - Reference instruction phrase [430/530] [REDEFINED, 2009]

‡v - Record control number [730] [REDEFINED, 1995] [USMARC only]

‡0 - Record control number [530/730] [NEW, 1997]

‡3 - Authority record control number [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

‡4 - Relationship code [430/530] [NEW, 2009]

X30

[blank page]

X48 Chronological Terms-General Information

- 148 Heading - Chronological Term (NR)
 448 See From Tracing - Chronological Term (R)
 558 See Also From Tracing - Chronological Term (R)
 711 Established Heading Linking Entry - Meeting Name (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Second indicator

148 Undefined
 # Undefined
 448 Undefined
 # Undefined
 548 Undefined
 # Undefined

Second Indicator

748 Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

Main term portion
 ‡a Chronological term (NR)

Subject subdivision portion
 ‡v Form subdivision (R)
 ‡x General subdivision (R)
 ‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
 ‡z Geographic subdivision (R)

Tracing and linking subfields
 ‡i Relationship information (R) [448/548]
 ‡w Control subfield (NR) [448/548/748]
 ‡0 Record control number (R) [548/748]
 ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [748]
 ‡4 Relationship code (R) [448/548]
 ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
 [448/548/748]
 ‡6 Linkage (NR)
 ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in chronological term headings constructed according to generally accepted thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Faceted Application of Subject Terminology* (FAST)). Chronological terms include dates that are used as the lead element of subject or added entry access fields in bibliographic records. A chronological term that is authorized for use **only** as a subject subdivision part of an extended subject heading is contained in a 182 (Chronological Subdivision) field.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for fields 448 and 548) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 748).

X48

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator

In fields 148, 448, and 548, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 748, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Chronological term

Chronological term used as an entry element.

748 #7‡a1710-1714‡2fast

748 #7‡a1500-1700‡2fast

148 ##‡a1863

‡i - Relationship information [448/548]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 448 or 548 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in fields 448 and 548. Guidelines for using subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡v - Form subdivision

Designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate in the X48 fields only when a form subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended heading.

‡w - Control subfield [448/548/748]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in fields 448, 548, and 748. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w in fields 448 and 548 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 748 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

748 #7‡a1710-1714‡2fast‡wna

‡x - General subdivision

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision), and subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X48 fields only when a general topical subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended heading.

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in the X48 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to the main term to form an extended heading.

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in the X48 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended heading.

‡0 - Record control number [548/748]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [748]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 748. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

748 #7‡a1900-1999‡2fast

748 #7‡a1800-1899‡2fast

‡4 - Relationship code [448/548]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 448 or 548 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [448/548/748]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X48 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms, acronyms, or abbreviations. One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter. A data element that contains an open-ended date ends with one space when it is followed by a subject subdivision.

Display Constant -

- [dash associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z]

Dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡i - Reference instruction phrase [448/548] [REDEFINED, 2009]

‡4 - Relationship code [448/548] [NEW, 2009]

[blank page]

X50 Topical Terms-General Information

- 150** Heading - Topical Term (NR)
450 See From Tracing - Topical Term (R)
550 See Also From Tracing - Topical Term (R)
750 Established Heading Linking Entry - Topical Term (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Second indicator

150 Undefined
 # Undefined
450 Undefined
 # Undefined
550 Undefined
 # Undefined

Second Indicator

750 Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

	<i>Main term portion</i>		<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>
‡a	Topical term or geographic name entry element (NR)	‡i	Relationship information (R) [450/550]
‡b	Topical term following geographic name entry element (NR)	‡w	Control subfield (NR) [450/550/750]
	<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>	‡0	Record control number (R) [550/750]
‡v	Form subdivision (R)	‡2	Source of heading or term (NR) [750]
‡x	General subdivision (R)	‡4	Relationship code (R) [450/550]
‡y	Chronological subdivision (R)	‡5	Institution to which field applies (R) [450/550/750]
‡z	Geographic subdivision (R)	‡6	Linkage (NR)
		‡8	Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in topical term and node label headings constructed according to generally accepted thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Library of Congress Subject Headings*). Topical terms include occupation and function terms that are used as the lead element of subject or added entry access fields in bibliographic records. A topical term that is authorized for use **only** as a subject subdivision part of an extended subject heading is contained in a 180 (General Subdivision) or 182 (Chronological Subdivision) field.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for fields 450 and 550) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 750).

X50

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator

In fields 150, 450, and 550, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 750, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Topical term or geographic name entry element

Topical subject, a geographic name used as an entry element for a topical term, or a node label term. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded.

150 ##‡aBlood

150 ##‡aCatalogs by source

150 ##‡aCharacters and characteristics in literature

150 ##‡aBull Run, 2nd Battle of, Va., 1862

450 ##‡aCaracas.‡bBolívar Statue

[Example of a non-LCSH topical see from tracing.]

‡b - Topical term following geographic name entry element

Topical term that is entered under a geographic name contained in subfield ‡a. This construction is not commonly used in 150 or 550 heading fields; it may occur in 450 See From Tracing fields.

450 ##‡aWashington (D.C.)‡bLincoln Memorial

‡i - Relationship information [450/550]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 450 or 550 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in fields 450 and 550. Guidelines for using subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡v - Form subdivision

Designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate in the X50 fields only when a form subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended heading.

150 ##‡aScuba diving‡vPeriodicals

‡w - Control subfield [450/550/750]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in field 450, 550, and 750. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w in field 450 and 550 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 750 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

‡x - General subdivision

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision), and subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X50 fields only when a general topical subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended heading.

- 150 ##**‡a**Conflict of laws**‡x**Support (Domestic relations)
- 150 ##**‡a**Executives**‡x**Salaries, etc.
- 150 ##**‡a**Amusements**‡x**Religious aspects**‡x**Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield **‡y** is appropriate in the X50 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to the main term to form an extended heading.

- 150 ##**‡a**Architecture, Modern**‡y**19th century
- 150 ##**‡a**God**‡x**History of doctrines**‡y**Middle Ages, 600-1500
- 150 ##**‡a**Music**‡y**500-1400
- 150 ##**‡a**Painting, Chinese**‡y**Sung-Yüan dynasties, 960-1368**‡x**Societies, etc.

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in the X50 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended heading.

- 150 ##**‡a**Chapels**‡z**Germany (West)
- 150 ##**‡a**Water resources development**‡z**Kenya
- 150 ##**‡a**Music festivals**‡z**Illinois

‡0 - Record control number [550/750]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [750]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield **‡2** is appropriate only in field 750. Guidelines for applying subfield **‡2** are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡4 - Relationship code [450/550]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 450 or 550 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield **‡4** are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [450/550/750]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix D: *Ambiguous Headings*.

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X50 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 150 ##**‡a**Magazine illustration
- 150 ##**‡a**Seasonal variations (Economics)

X50

- 150 ##‡aEducation‡zWashington (D.C.)
- 150 ##‡aMuseums‡zRussia (Federation)
- 150 ##‡aArt, Chinese‡yTo 221 B.C.
- 150 ##‡aResearch libraries‡zMexico‡xSocieties, etc.

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms, acronyms, or abbreviations.

- 150 ##‡aC.O.D. shipments
- 450 ##‡aB.A. degree

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

- 450 ##‡aPh. D. degree

Display Constant

- *[dash associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z]*

Dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

Content designated field:

- 150 ##‡aChapels‡zGermany

Display example:

Chapels - Germany

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

*Indicator 2 - Nonfiling characters [150/450/550] [OBSOLETE, 1993]
Values were: 0-9 (Number of nonfiling characters present).*

‡i - Reference instruction phrase [450/550] [REDEFINED, 2009]

‡v - Record control number [750] [REDEFINED, 1995] [USMARC only]

‡0 - Record control number [550/750] [NEW, 1997]

‡3 - Authority record control number [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

‡4 - Relationship code [450/550] [NEW, 2009]

X51 Geographic Names-General Information

- 151 Heading - Geographic Name (NR)
 451 See From Tracing - Geographic Name (R)
 551 See Also From Tracing - Geographic Name (R)
 751 Established Heading Linking Entry - Geographic Name (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Second indicator

151 Undefined
 # Undefined
 451 Undefined
 # Undefined
 551 Undefined
 # Undefined

Second Indicator

751 Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

<i>Name portion</i>	<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>
‡a Geographic name (NR)	‡i Relationship information (R) [451/551]
	‡w Control subfield (NR) [451/551/751]
	‡0 Record control number (R) [551/751]
	‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [751]
	‡4 Relationship code (R) [451/551]
	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) [451/551/751]
	‡6 Linkage (NR)
	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>	
‡v Form subdivision (R)	
‡x General subdivision (R)	
‡y Chronological subdivision (R)	
‡z Geographic subdivision (R)	

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in geographic name headings constructed according to generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings*). Jurisdiction names (including those that are ecclesiastical entities) alone or followed by subject subdivisions are X51 geographic names. A corporate name, a form subheading, a title of a work, and/or a city section name entered under the name of a jurisdiction are contained in the X10 fields. Geographic names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Iran in the Koran) are contained in the X50 fields. A geographic name that is authorized for use **only** as a subject subdivision part of an extended subject heading is contained in a 181 (Geographic Subdivision) field.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for field 451 and 551) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 751).

X51

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator

In fields 151, 451, and 551, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 751, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Geographic name

Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded.

- 151 ##‡aAmazon River
- 151 ##‡aCommunist countries
- 151 ##‡aHalley's comet
- 151 ##‡aInterstate 70
- 151 ##‡aMason and Dixon's Line
- 151 ##‡aHimalaya Mountains
- 151 ##‡alrrawaddy Division (Burma)
- 151 ##‡aLeesville (S.C.)
- 151 ##‡aPalenque Site (Mexico)
- 151 ##‡aPompeii (Extinct city)
- 151 ##‡aAltamira Cave (Spain)
- 151 ##‡aAntietam National Battlefield (Md.)
- 151 ##‡aGreenwich Village (New York, N.Y.)
- 151 ##‡aKing Ranch (Tex.)
- 151 ##‡aWarm Springs Indian Reservation (Or.)
- 151 ##‡aDelaware Memorial Bridge (Del. and N.J.)

‡i - Relationship information [451/551]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 451 or 551 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in fields 451 and 551. Guidelines for using subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡v - Form subdivision

Designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate in the X51 fields only when a form subject subdivision is added to a geographic name to form an extended subject heading.

- 151 ##‡aParis (France)‡vGuidebooks
- 151 ##‡aRussia‡xTerritorial expansion‡vMaps, Pictorial

‡w - Control subfield [451/551/751]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in field 451, 551, and 751. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w in field 451 and 551 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 751 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

‡x - General subdivision

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision) or subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X51 fields only when a topical or form subject subdivision is added to a geographic name to form an extended subject heading.

- 151 ##‡aTexas‡xOfficials and employees‡xPayroll deductions
- 151 ##‡aAix-en-Provence (France)‡xSocial life and customs
- 151 ##‡aUnited States‡xCommerce

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in the X51 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a geographic name to form an extended subject heading.

- 151 ##‡aGreece‡xHistory‡yGeometric period, ca. 900-700 B.C.
- 151 ##‡aUruguay‡xHistory‡yGreat War, 1843-1852
- 151 ##‡aUnited States‡xHistory‡yCivil War, 1861-1865‡xConscientious objectors

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in the X51 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a geographic name to form an extended subject heading.

- 151 ##‡aUnited States‡xBoundaries‡zCanada

‡0 - Record control number [551/751]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [751]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 751. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* sections.

‡4 - Relationship code [451/551]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 451 or 551 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [451/551/751]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix D: *Ambiguous Headings*.

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices.

X51

An X51 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 151 ##‡aCambridge (Mass.)‡xPopulation
- 151 ##‡aEgypt‡xHistory‡yTo 332 B.C.
- 151 ##‡aUnited States‡xEconomic policy‡y1981-1993
- 451 ##‡wnnaa‡aChino Valley, Ariz.
- 151 ##‡aChina‡xHistory‡yHan dynasty, 202 B.C.-220 A.D.‡vBibliography

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms.

- 151 ##‡aWashington (D.C.)
- 151 ##‡aChina‡xHistory‡yHan dynasty, 202 B.C.-220 A.D.

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

- 151 ##‡aVienna (W. Va.)
- 151 ##‡aAdelaide Geosyncline(S. Aust.)
- 151 ##‡aUnited States‡xForeign relations‡y1993-‡vPeriodicals

Display Constant

- *[dash associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z]*

Dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

Content designated field:

- 151 ##‡aUnited States‡xBoundaries‡zCanada

Display example:

United States - Boundaries - Canada

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Nonfiling characters [151/451/551] [OBSOLETE, 1993]

Values were: 0-9 (Number of nonfiling characters present).

‡b - Name following place as entry element [151/451/751] [OBSOLETE, 1987]

City section name entered under the name of a jurisdiction is contained in an X10 field. Records created before this change may contain an X51 field with a subfield ‡b for this type of name.

‡i - Reference instruction phrase [451/551] [REDEFINED, 2009]

‡v - Record control number [751] [REDEFINED, 1995] [USMARC only]

‡0 - Record control number [551/751] [NEW, 1997]

‡3 - Authority record control number [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

‡4 - Relationship code [451/551] [NEW, 2009]

X55 Genre/Form Terms-General Information

- 155 Heading - Genre/Form Term (NR)
 455 See From Tracing - Genre/Form Term (R)
 555 See Also From Tracing - Genre/Form Term (R)
 755 Established Heading Linking Entry - Genre/Form Terms (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Second indicator

155 Undefined
 # Undefined
 455 Undefined
 # Undefined
 555 Undefined
 # Undefined

Second Indicator

755 Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

	<i>Main term position</i>		<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>
‡a	Genre/form term (NR)	‡i	Relationship information (R) [455/555]
	<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>	‡w	Control subfield (NR) [455/555/755]
‡v	Form subdivision (R)	‡0	Record control number (R) [555/755]
‡x	General subdivision (R)	‡2	Source of heading or term (NR) [755]
‡y	Chronological subdivision (R)	‡4	Relationship code (R) [455/555]
‡z	Geographic subdivision (R)	‡5	Institution to which field applies (R) [455/555/755]
		‡6	Linkage (NR)
		‡8	Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in genre/form term headings constructed according to generally accepted thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Art & Architecture Thesaurus*). Genre terms for textual materials designate specific kinds of materials distinguished by the style or technique of their intellectual contents; for example, biographies, catechisms, essays, hymns, or reviews. Form terms designate historically and functionally specific kinds of materials as distinguished by an examination of their physical character, characteristics of their intellectual content, or the order of information within them; for example, daybooks, diaries, directories, journals, memoranda, questionnaires, syllabi, or time sheets. In the context of graphic materials, genre headings denote categories of material distinguished by vantage point, intended purpose, characteristics of the creator, publication status, or method of representation.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for field 455 and 555) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 755).

X55

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator

In fields 155, 455, and 555, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 755, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Genre/form term

May consist of more than one word.

155 ##‡aBird's-eye views‡y1874
155 ##‡aCartoons‡y1952

‡i - Relationship information [455/555]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 455 or 555 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in fields 455 and 555. Guidelines for using subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡v - Form subdivision

Designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a genre/form term to form an extended heading.

155 ##‡aCartoons‡vPeriodicals

‡w - Control subfield [455/555/755]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in field 455, 555, and 755. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w in field 455 and 555 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 755 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

‡x - General subdivision

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision), or subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X55 fields only when a general topical subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended heading.

155 ##‡aDictionaries‡xFrench‡y18th century

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in the X55 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to the main term to form an extended heading.

155 ##‡aCompetition drawings‡y1984

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in the X55 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended heading.

155 ##‡aHymnals‡zMassachusetts‡y18th century

‡0 - Record control number [555/755]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [755]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 755. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡4 - Relationship code [455/555]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 455 or 555 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [455/555/755]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Term followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the preceding term ends with an abbreviation, initial/letter, open date, or other data that ends with in a mark of punctuation.

155 ##‡aPrayer books‡zRhode Island‡y18th century

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms, acronyms, or abbreviations.

Display Constant

- [dash associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z]

Dash (-) that precedes a subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfields ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

Content designated field:

155 ##‡aAgenda‡xWeekly‡y1980-1985

Display example:

Agenda-Weekly-1980-1985

X55

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Prior to the definition of the X55 fields, X50 (Topical Terms) fields were used for genre/form headings.

|#i - Reference instruction phrase [455/555] [REDEFINED, 2009]

|#v - Record control number [755] [REDEFINED, 1995] [USMARC only]

|#0 - Record control number [555/755] [NEW, 1997]

|#4 - Relationship code [455/555] [NEW, 2009]

X80 General Subdivisions-General Information

- X80** Heading - General Subdivision (NR)
480 See From Tracing - General Subdivision (R)
580 See Also From Tracing - General Subdivision (R)
780 Established Heading Linking Entry - General Subdivision (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Second indicator

180 Undefined
 # Undefined
480 Undefined
 # Undefined
580 Undefined
 # Undefined

Second Indicator

780 Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

Subject subdivision portion
 ‡v Form subdivision (R)
 ‡x General subdivision (R)
 ‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
 ‡z Geographic subdivision (R)

Tracing and linking subfields
 |‡i Relationship information (R) [480/580]
 ‡w Control subfield (NR) [480/580/780]
 ‡0 Record control number (R) [580/780]
 ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [780]
 |‡4 Relationship code (R) [480/580]
 ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
 [480/580/780]
 ‡6 Linkage (NR)
 ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in general subdivision headings constructed according to generally accepted thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Library of Congress Subject Headings*, *Medical Subject Headings*). A general subdivision may be a topical or language term that is used as a subdivision portion of an extended subject or index term access field in bibliographic records. A topical or language term that is used as the lead element of an established heading record is contained in a 150 (Heading-Topical Term) field.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for field 480 and 580) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 780).

X80

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator

In fields 180, 480, and 580, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 780, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡i - Relationship information [480/580]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 480 or 580 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in fields 480 and 580. Guidelines for using subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡v - Form subdivision

Designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate in an X80 field only when a form subject subdivision is added to a general subdivision to form an extended heading.

180 ##‡xRussian‡vDictionaries

‡w - Control subfield [480/580/780]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in field 480, 580, and 780. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w in field 480 and 580 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 780 are in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

‡x - General subdivision

Topical or language subdivision term.

180 ##‡xPolitical aspects

180 ##‡xRhetoric‡xAbility testing

180 ##‡xArabic

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subdivision term that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in an X80 field only when a chronological subdivision is added to a general subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

180 ##‡xCivilization‡y16th century

180 ##‡xHistory‡y18th century‡xExhibitions

180 ##‡xHistory of doctrines‡yEarly Church, ca. 30-600

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in an X80 field only when a geographic subdivision is added to a general subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

180 ##‡xBoundaries‡zCanada

180 ##‡xNuclear reactor safety‡y1975-1985‡zUnited States

180 ##‡xCampaigns‡zTunisia

‡0 - Record control number [580/780]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [780]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 780. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡4 - Relationship code [480/580]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 480 or 580 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [480/580/780]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X80 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

180 ##‡xSalaries, etc.

180 ##‡xEconomic conditions‡y1960-

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms.

180 ##‡xHistory‡y332-30 B.C.

One space is used between the final period of an abbreviated term and a word or numeral that follows.

180 ##‡xHistory‡yEarly church, ca. 30-600

Display Constant

- [dash associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z]

Dash (-) that precedes a subdivision in an extended heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

Content designated field:

180 ##‡xEconomic conditions‡y1960-

Display example:

Economic conditions-1960-

X80

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

|#i - Reference instruction phrase [480/580] [REDEFINED, 2009]

|#4 - Relationship code [480/580] [NEW, 2009]

X81 Geographic Subdivisions-General Information

- 181** Heading - Geographic Subdivision (NR)
481 See From Tracing - Geographic Subdivision (R)
581 See Also From Tracing - Geographic Subdivision (R)
781 Established Heading Linking Entry - Geographic Subdivision (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Second indicator

181 Undefined
 # Undefined
481 Undefined
 # Undefined
581 Undefined
 # Undefined

Second Indicator

781 Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

Subject subdivision portion
 ‡v Form subdivision (R)
 ‡x General subdivision (R)
 ‡y Geographic subdivision (R)
 ‡z Geographic subdivision (R)

Tracing and linking subfields
 ‡i Relationship information (R) [481/581]
 ‡w Control subfield (NR) [481/581/781]
 ‡0 Record control number (R) [581/781]
 ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [781]
 ‡4 Relationship code (R) [481/581]
 ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
 [481/581/781]
 ‡6 Linkage (NR)
 ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in geographic subdivision headings constructed according to generally accepted thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Library of Congress Subject Headings*, *Medical Subject Headings*). A geographic subdivision is used as a subdivision portion of an extended subject or index term access field in bibliographic records. A geographic name that is used as the lead element of an established heading record is contained in a 151 (Heading-Geographic Name) field.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for field 481 and 581) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 781).

X81

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator

In fields 181, 481, and 581, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 781, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡i - Relationship information [481/581]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 481 or 581 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in fields 481 and 581. Guidelines for using subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡v - Form subdivision

Designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate in an X81 field only when a form subject subdivision is added to a geographic subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

181 ##‡zParis (France)‡vPhotographs

‡w - Control subfield [481/581/781]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in field 481, 581, and 781. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w in field 481 and 581 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 781 are in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

‡x - General subdivision

Topical or language subdivision term. Subfield ‡x is appropriate in an X81 field only when a general subdivision is added to a geographic subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

181 ##‡zMississippi‡xTippah County‡xHistory

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subdivision term that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in an X81 field only when a chronological subdivision is added to a geographic subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

181 ##‡zWashington (D.C.)‡y1890-1910

181 ##‡zFrance‡y18th century

‡z - Geographic subdivision

181 ##‡zHudson River Valley (N.Y. and N.J.)

181 ##‡zUnited States

181 ##‡zNew York (State)‡zBuffalo

181 ##‡zItaly, Southern

‡0 - Record control number [581/781]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [781]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 781. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡4 - Relationship code [481/581]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 481 or 581 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [481/581/781]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X81 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

181 ##‡zMexico‡xSocieties, etc.

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms.

181 ##‡zWashington (D.C.)
181 ##‡zHudson River Valley (N.Y. and N.J.)

Display Constant

- [dash associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z]

Dash (-) that precedes a subdivision in an extended heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

Content designated field:

181 ##‡zWashington (D.C.)‡y1890-1910

Display example:

Washington (D.C.)-1890-1910

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡i - Reference instruction phrase [481/581] [REDEFINED, 2009]

‡4 - Relationship code [481/581] [NEW, 2009]

X81

[blank page]

X82 Chronological Subdivisions-General Information

- 182** Heading - Chronological Subdivision (NR)
482 See From Tracing - Chronological Subdivision (R)
582 See Also From Tracing - Chronological Subdivision (R)
782 Established Heading Linking Entry - Chronological Subdivision (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Second indicator

182 Undefined
 # Undefined
482 Undefined
 # Undefined
582 Undefined
 # Undefined

Second Indicator

782 Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

Subject subdivision portion
 ‡v Form subdivision (R)
 ‡x General subdivision (R)
 ‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
 ‡z Geographic subdivision (R)

Tracing and linking subfields
 ‡i Relationship information (R) [482/582]
 ‡w Control subfield (NR) [482/582/782]
 ‡0 Record control number (R) [582/782]
 ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [782]
 ‡4 Relationship code (R) [482/582]
 ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
 [482/582/782]
 ‡6 Linkage (NR)
 ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in chronological subdivision headings constructed according to generally accepted thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Library of Congress Subject Headings*, *Medical Subject Headings*). A chronological subdivision is used as a subdivision portion of an extended subject or index term access field in bibliographic records. A chronological term that is used as the lead element of an established heading record is contained in a 150 (Heading-Topical Term) field.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for field 482 and 582) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 782).

X82

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator

In fields 182, 482, and 582, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 782, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡i - Relationship information [482/582]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 482 or 582 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in fields 482 and 582. Guidelines for using subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡v - Form subdivision

Designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate in an X82 field only when a form subject subdivision is added to a chronological subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

182 ##‡y1981-‡vPeriodicals

‡w - Control subfield [482/582/782]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in field 482, 582, and 782. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w in field 482 and 582 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 782 are in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

‡x - General subdivision

Topical or language subdivision term. Subfield ‡x is appropriate in an X82 field only when a general subdivision is added to a chronological subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

182 ##‡y1981-‡xFrench

182 ##‡yEarly modern, 1500-1700‡xHistory and criticism

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subdivision term that represents a period of time.

182 ##‡yTo 1500

182 ##‡y18th century

182 ##‡yEarly church, ca. 30-600

182 ##‡yGreat War, 1843-1852

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in an X82 field only when a geographic subdivision is added to a chronological subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

‡0 - Record control number [582/782]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [782]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 782. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡4 - Relationship code [482/582]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 482 or 582 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [482/582/782]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X82 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

182 ##‡yTo 221 B.C.

182 ##‡y1981-

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms.

182 ##‡y332-30 B.C.

One space is used between the final period of an abbreviated term and a word or numeral that follows.

182 ##‡yEarly church, ca. 30-600

Display Constant

- *[dash associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z]*

Dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

Content designated field:

182 ##‡y18th century

Display example:

18th century

X82

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

|#i - Reference instruction phrase [482/582] [REDEFINED, 2009]

|#4 - Relationship code [482/582] [NEW, 2009]

X85 Form Subdivisions-General Information

- 185 Heading - Form Subdivision (NR)**
485 See From Tracing - Form Subdivision (R)
585 See Also From Tracing - Form Subdivision (R)
785 Established Heading Linking Entry - Form Subdivision (R)

First Indicator

Type of personal name entry element

- 0 Forename
- 1 Surname
- 2 Family name

Second indicator

- 185** Undefined
- # Undefined
- 485** Undefined
- # Undefined
- 585** Undefined
- # Undefined

Second Indicator

- 785** Thesaurus
- 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
- 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2 Medical Subject Headings/NLM name authority file
- 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4 Source not specified
- 5 Canadian Subject Headings
- 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
- 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

- Subject subdivision portion*
- ‡v Form subdivision (R)
 - ‡x General subdivision (R)
 - ‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
 - ‡z Geographic subdivision (R)

- Tracing and linking subfields*
- |‡i Relationship information (R) [485/585]
 - ‡w Control subfield (NR) [485/585/785]
 - ‡0 Record control number (R) [585/785]
 - ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [785]
 - |‡4 Relationship code (R) [485/585]
 - ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
[485/585/785]
 - ‡6 Linkage (NR)
 - ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in form subdivision headings constructed according to generally accepted thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Medical Subject Headings*). A form subdivision is used as a subdivision portion of an extended subject or index term access field in bibliographic records. A form term that is used as the lead element of an established heading record is contained in a 155 (Heading-Genre/Form Term) field.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for field 485 and 585) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 785).

X85

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator

In fields 185, 485, and 585, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 785, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡i - Relationship information [485/585]

Designation of a relationship of the entity in a 485 or 585 field to the 1XX entity in the record or a textual reference instruction phrase than those that may be system-generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in fields 485 and 585. Guidelines for using subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡v - Form subdivision

Designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used.

- 185 ##‡vFiction
- 185 ##‡vAbbreviations
- 185 ##‡vIndexes‡vPeriodicals

- 040 ##‡aDNLM‡cDNLM
- 185 ##‡vcase studies‡vsoftware

‡w - Control subfield [485/585/785]

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in field 485, 585, and 785. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w in field 485 and 585 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 785 are in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

‡x - General subdivision

Topical or language subdivision term. Subfield ‡x is appropriate in an X85 field only when a general subdivision is added to a form subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

- 185 ##‡vDictionaries‡xSpanish

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subdivision term that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in an X83 field only when a chronological subdivision is added to a form subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

- 185 ##‡vPoetry‡yTo 1500

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in an X85 field only when a geographic subdivision is added to a form subdivision to form an extended subdivision heading.

- 185 ##‡vCatalogs and collections‡zUnited States

‡0 - Record control number [585/785]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [785]

Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 785. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡4 - Relationship code [485/585]

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 485 or 585 field to the 1XX entity in the record. Guidelines for using subfield ‡4 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [485/585/785]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X85 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms.

185 ##‡vPeriodicals‡zNew York (N.Y.)

One space is used between the final period of an abbreviated term and a word or numeral that follows.

Display Constant

- [dash associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z]

Dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

Use of subfields ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z in LCSH - For terms from *Library of Congress Subject Headings*, subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡x (General subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision), and subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision) are unlikely to be used in conjunction with a primary term in an X85 field, since a form subdivision would generally not be followed by another subdivision when it is functioning as a form.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡1 - Reference instruction phrase [485/585] [REDEFINED, 2009]

‡4 - Relationship code [485/585] [NEW, 2009]

X85

[blank page]

Headings - General Information

- 100 Heading - Personal Name (NR)
- 110 Heading - Corporate Name (NR)
- 111 Heading - Meeting Name (NR)
- 130 Heading - Uniform Title (NR)
- 148 Heading - Chronological Term (NR)
- 150 Heading - Topical Term (NR)
- 151 Heading - Geographic Name (NR)
- 155 Heading - Genre/Form Term (NR)
- 180 Heading - General Subdivision (NR)
- 181 Heading - Geographic Subdivision (NR)
- 182 Heading - Chronological Subdivision (NR)
- 185 Heading - Form Subdivision (NR)

- 046 Special Coded Dates (R)
- 336 Content Type (R)
- 370 Associated Place (R)
- 371 Address (R)
- 372 Field of Activity (R)
- 373 Affiliation (R)
- 374 Occupation (R)
- 375 Gender (R)
- 376 Family Information (R)
- 377 Associated Language (R)
- 380 Form of Work (R)
- 381 Other Distinguishing Characteristics of Work or Expression (R)
- 382 Medium of Performance (R)
- 383 Numeric Designation of Musical Work (R)
- 384 Key (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

1XX fields contain names, uniform titles, and terms used in headings or subdivisions to headings. They are usually constructed according to generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules.

Each individual 1XX field section contains a list of valid data elements, field description and scope, and examples. Descriptions of the indicators and subfield codes, as well as guidelines for applying the content designators and input conventions for fields 100, 110, 111, 130, 148, 150, 151, 155, 180, 181, 182, and 185 are given in the following *General Information* sections: *X00*, *X10*, *X11*, *X30*, *X48*, *X50*, *X51*, *X55*, *X80*, *X81*, *X82*, and *X85*.

The 046 and 3XX fields contain additional information about characteristics of the heading entities in fields 100-185.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

140 Uniform Title [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

First indicator was undefined. Second indicator was defined to indicate the number of characters ignored in filing (0-9 Number of characters ignored in filing). The subfield codes were: ‡a (Uniform title), ‡d (Date of treaty), ‡f (Date of a work), ‡g (Miscellaneous information), ‡h (General material designation), ‡k (Form sub-heading), ‡l (Language), ‡m (Medium of performance for music), ‡n (Number of part or section/serial, thematic, or opus number), ‡o (Arranged or arr. for music), ‡p (Part or section), ‡r (Key for music), ‡x (General subject subdivision), ‡y (Period subject subdivision), ‡z (Place subject subdivision).

Headings-General Information

143 *Collective Title* [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

First indicator was defined to indicate the type of work: (0 = Works, 1 = Selected works [complete works published together], 2 = Selections [Extracts], 3 = Other collective titles). Second indicator was defined to indicate the number of characters ignored in filing subfield codes (0 to 9 Number of characters ignored in filing subfield codes). The subfield codes were: ‡a (Collective title), ‡d (Date of treaty), ‡f (Date of a work), ‡g (Miscellaneous information), ‡h (General material designation), ‡k (Form subheading), ‡l (Language), ‡m (Medium of performance [for music]), ‡n (Number of part or section/serial, thematic, or opus number), ‡o (Arranged or arr. for music), ‡p (Part or section), ‡r (Key for music) ‡s (Version).

148 *Heading-Chronological term* [NEW, 2002]

336 *Content Type* [NEW, 2009]

370 *Associated Place* [NEW, 2009]

371 *Address* [NEW, 2009]

372 *Field of Activity* [NEW, 2009]

373 *Affiliation* [NEW, 2009]

374 *Occupation* [NEW, 2009]

375 *Gender* [NEW, 2009]

376 *Family Information* [NEW, 2009]

377 *Associated Language* [NEW, 2009]

380 *Form of Work* [NEW, 2010]

381 *Other Distinguishing Characteristics of Work or Expression* [NEW, 2010]

382 *Medium of Performance* [NEW, 2010]

383 *Numeric Designation of Musical Work* [NEW, 2010]

384 *Key* [NEW, 2010]

046 Special Coded Dates

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡f Birth date (NR)	‡u Uniform Resource Identifier (R)
‡g Death date (NR)	‡v Source of information (R)
‡k Beginning or single date created (NR)	‡2 Source of date scheme (NR)
‡l Ending date created (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡s Start period (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡t End period (NR)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Dates that are associated with the entity described in the record. These include:

For a person: a person's date of birth, date of death, and the date or date range of the person's period of activity.

For a corporate body: a date or range of dates on which a conference, etc., is held, or a date with which the corporate body is otherwise associated (e.g., date of establishment, date of termination).

For a family: a significant date associated with the family.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡f - Birth date**

The year a person was born. Date of birth may also include the month and day of the person's birth. The date and time are recorded according to *Representations of Dates and Times* (ISO 8601) in the pattern yyyy, yyyy-mm, or yyyy-mm-dd (4 for the year, 2 for the month, and 2 for the day) unless subfield ‡2 (Source of date) specifies another date scheme.

046 ##‡f1931
100 1#‡aMunro, Alice,‡d1931-

046 ##‡f19360505
100 1#‡aSmith, John,‡d1936 May 5-

046

‡g - Death date

The year a person died. Date of death may also include the month and day of the person's death. The date is recorded as specified in ‡f (Birth date).

046 ##‡f1899‡g1961
100 1#‡aHemingway, Ernest,‡d1899-1961

‡k - Beginning or single date created

For a work, earliest date (normally the year) associated with a work; that date may be the date the work was created or first published or released. For an expression, the earliest date (normally the year) associated with an expression; that date may be the date of the earliest known manifestation of that expression. In both cases the date in subfield ‡k may be the starting date of a range or a single date.

‡l - Ending date created

Ending date of the date range for which the beginning date is recorded in ‡k.

‡s - Start period

Start date for a significant period associated with the entity.

The date is recorded as specified in ‡f (Birth date).

046 ##‡s1977
110 2#‡aDouble Image (Musical group : 1977-)

‡t - End period

End date for a significant period associated with the entity.

The date is recorded as specified in ‡f (Birth date).

046 ##‡s1925‡t1979
100 3#‡aPahlavi (Dynasty : 1925-1979)

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols.

In field 046, subfield ‡u is used for the source of information about dates accessible electronically.

‡v - Source of information

Source where the information recorded in field 046 was found if not through a URI.

‡2 - Source of date scheme

Source of the date scheme used in the field if not in the form *yyymmdd* as specified in subfield ‡f (Birth date). Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

046 ##‡f1831?‡2edtf
100 1#‡aSmith, James,‡dborn 1831?
[probable year of birth]

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

|#k - Beginning or single date created [NEW, 2010]

|#l - Ending date created [NEW, 2010]

[blank page]

336 Content Type

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Content type term (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡b Content type code (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡2 Source (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The form of communication through which a work is expressed. Field 336 information enables expression of content types from various lists when the authority is for a title or name/title.

Multiple content types from the same source vocabulary or code list may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Content type term) and subfield ‡b (Content type code). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Content type term**

Content type of the work being described.

336 ##‡aperformed music‡2marccontent

336 ##‡atwo-dimensional moving image‡btdi‡2marccontent

‡b - Content type code

Code representing the content type of the work being described.

336 ##‡bprm‡2marccontent

336 ##‡btxt‡2marccontent‡3liner notes

‡2 - Source

MARC code that identifies the source of the term or code used to record the content type information.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

336 ##‡btdm‡2marccontent

336

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

336 ##‡1text‡2marccontent‡3liner notes

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

370 Associated Place

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a	Place of birth (NR)	‡t	End period (NR)
‡b	Place of death (NR)	‡u	Uniform Resource Identifier (R)
‡c	Associated country (R)	‡v	Source of Information (R)
‡e	Place of residence/headquarters (R)	‡0	Record control number (R)
‡f	Other associated place (R)	‡2	Source of term (NR)
‡g	Place of origin of work (R)	‡6	Linkage (NR)
‡s	Start period (NR)	‡8	Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A town, city, province, state, and/or country associated with persons, corporate bodies, families, works, and expressions.

For a person: the town, city, province, state, and/or country associated with a person's place of birth, death, residence, and/or identity.

For a corporate body: a significant location associated with a corporate body (e.g., location of a conference, etc., location of the headquarters of an organization).

For a family: a place where the family resides or has resided or has some connection.

For a work or expression: the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work or expression originated.

Field 370 should be repeated when start and end periods in subfields ‡s and ‡t pertain to a different associated place. If place data is from a controlled vocabulary, the vocabulary is indicated in subfield ‡2 (Source of term).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Place of birth**

The town, city, province, state, and/or country in which a person was born. Birth date of the person may be recorded in field 046 (Special coded dates).

100 **1#‡a**Singer, Isaac Bashevis,**‡d**1904-1991.

370 **##‡a**Radzimyn, Poland**‡b**Surfside, Fla., USA
[born in Radzimyn, Poland; died in Surfside, Fla., USA]

370

‡b - Place of death

The town, city, province, state, and/or country in which a person died. Death date of the person may be recorded in field 046 (Special coded dates).

- 100 1#‡aSinger, Isaac Bashevis,‡d1904-1991.
370 ##‡aRadzimyn, Poland‡bSurfside, Fla., USA
[born in Radzimyn, Poland; died in Surfside, Fla., USA]

‡c - Associated country

A country with which the person, corporate body, family, or work is identified. Dates that pertain to the country are recorded in subfields ‡s (Start period) and ‡t (End period).

‡e - Place of residence/headquarters

The town, city, province, state, locale, and/or country in which a person resides or has resided, or an organization has its headquarters or carries out its activities. Dates associated with a place of residence/location of headquarters are recorded in subfields ‡s (Start period) and ‡t (End period).

- 100 1#‡aHemingway, Ernest,‡d1899-1961.
370 ##‡aOak Park, Ill.‡bKetchum, Idaho‡eOak Park, Ill.‡eToronto, Ont.‡eChicago, Ill.‡eParis, France‡eKey West, Fla.‡eCuba‡eKetchum, Idaho
[born in Oak Park, Ill., died in Ketchum, Idaho; lived in Oak Park, Ill.; Toronto, Ont.; Chicago, Ill.; Paris, France; Key West, Fla.; Cuba; Ketchum, Idaho]
- 100 3#‡aYan (Family)
370 ##‡ePagsanjan, Philippines
[family lived in Pagsanjan, Philippines]
- 110 2#‡aRepublican Party (Calif.)
370 ##‡eCalif.

‡f - Other associated place

Other or additional town, city, province, state, and/or country associated with persons, corporate bodies, families, works, and expressions. Dates associated with other place are recorded in subfields ‡s (Start period) and ‡t (End period).

‡g - Place of origin of work

The country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. Dates associated with place of origin of work are recorded in subfields ‡s (Start period) and ‡t (End period).

- 130 #0‡aAdvocate (Boise, Idaho)
370 ##‡gBoise, Idaho
[place of origin of the monthly Advocate]
- 130 #0‡aAdvocate (Nairobi, Kenya)
370 ##‡gNairobi, Kenya
[place of origin of the monthly Advocate]

‡s - Start period

The starting date of association with a particular place by a person, corporate body, family, work, or expression.

- 100 1#‡aOndaatje, Michael,‡d1943-
370 ##‡aColombo, Sri Lanka
370 ##‡eEngland‡s1954‡t1962
370 ##‡cCanada‡eCanada‡s1962
[born in Colombo, Sri Lanka; lived in England from 1954-1962; moved to Canada in 1962]

‡t - End period

The end date of association with a particular place by a person, corporate body, family, work, or expression.

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols.

In field 370, subfield ‡u is used to record the location of the source of information about a place recorded in the field that is accessible electronically.

‡v - Source of Information

Source where the information recorded in field 370 was found if not through a URI.

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

Specifies the source of the controlled vocabulary term for the place in subfields ‡a, ‡b, ‡c, ‡e, ‡f, and/or ‡g. Subfield ‡2 follows the subfields to which it applies. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

[blank page]

371 Address

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Address (R)	‡t End period (NR)
‡b City (NR)	‡u Uniform Resource Identifier (R)
‡c Intermediate jurisdiction (NR)	‡v Source of information (R)
‡d Country (NR)	‡z Public note (R)
‡e Postal code (NR)	‡4 Relator code (R)
‡m Electronic mail address (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡s Start period (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

An address (as well as electronic access information such as email, telephone, fax, TTY, etc. numbers) associated with the entity described in the record. Multiple addresses, such as mailing addresses and addresses corresponding to the physical location of an item or facilities, are recorded in separate occurrences of field 371.

For a person: the address of a person's place of residence, business, or employer and/or an e-mail or Internet address.

For a corporate body: the address of the corporate body's headquarters or offices, or an e-mail or Internet address for the body.

Distinction between field 371 (Address) and field 370 (Associated place): Field 370 (Associated place) includes information about places associated with a person or a corporate body at the level of the country, the town, etc. Field 371 (Address) contains information relating to the location of a person or a corporate body, at which they can be found or reached (e.g., printed mail address, e-mail address, etc.).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Address**

All address information preceding the name of the city or town. The subfield can also contain information indicating that no address information is available. Subfield \$a is repeated to indicate separations of address information.

100 1#‡aSmith, Arthur
371 ##‡aBox 1216‡bBarrière‡dCanada‡eV0E 1E0

371

‡b - City

Name of city or town in address of a person or corporate body.

110 2#‡aCommunity Legal Education Ontario.

371 ##‡aSuite 600‡a119 Spadina Avenue‡bToronto‡cON‡dCanada‡eM5V 2L1

‡c - Intermediate jurisdiction

Name of intermediate jurisdiction, such as state or province, in address of a person or corporate body.

‡d - Country

Name of country in address of a person or corporate body.

‡e - Postal code

Alphanumeric code assigned to the postal delivery area by a national postal agency.

‡m - Electronic mail address

Electronic mail address associated with the person or corporate body. If more than one electronic mail address applies, subfield ‡m is repeated.

‡s - Start period

The starting date associated with the address of a person or corporate body.

‡t - End period

The end date associated with the address of a person or corporate body.

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols.

In field 371, subfield ‡u is used for the source of information accessible electronically. The homepage for the entity in the 1XX of the record would be recorded in field 856.

‡v - Source of information

Source where the information recorded in field 371 was found if not through a URI.

‡z - Public note

Note relating to the address information contained in field 371. The note is written in a form that is adequate for public display.

‡4 - Relator code

MARC code that specifies the relationship between the address and the entity described in the record. More than one relator code may be used if there is more than one relationship.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

372 Field of Activity	(R)
------------------------------	-----

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Field of activity (R) ‡s Start period (NR) ‡t End period (NR) ‡u Uniform Resource Identifier (R) ‡v Source of information (R)	‡0 Record control number (R) ‡2 Source of term (NR) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
--	--

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

For a person: a field of endeavor, area of expertise, etc., in which the person is engaged or was engaged

For a corporate body: a field of business in which the corporate body is engaged, its area of competence, responsibility, jurisdiction, etc.

The field is repeated if the entity has multiple fields of activity for different time periods.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Field of activity**

A field of endeavor or area of expertise in which the person or corporate body is or was engaged.

100 1#‡aHudson, David‡c‡didjeridu player

372 ##‡adidjeridu player

110 2#‡aNorth Atlantic Treaty Organization

372 ##‡aThe North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) is a political and military alliance of 26 countries from North America and Europe committed to fulfilling the goals of the North Atlantic Treaty signed on 4 April 1949.

‡s - Start period

The starting date of engagement in a field of endeavor or field of business for a person or corporate body.

‡t - End period

The end date of engagement in a field of endeavor or field of business for a person or corporate body.

372

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols.

In field 372, subfield ‡u is used to record the location of the source of the information about field of activity accessible electronically.

‡v - Source of information

Source where the information recorded in field 372 was found if not through a URI.

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

Specifies a code that identifies the source of a controlled vocabulary term for activity terms in subfield ‡a.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

373 Affiliation

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Affiliation (R)	‡0 Record control number (R)
‡s Start period (NR)	‡2 Source of term (NR)
‡t End period (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡u Uniform Resource Identifier (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡v Source of information (R)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information about a group with which a person is or has been affiliated, including dates of affiliation.

The field is repeated if the person has multiple affiliations for different time periods.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Affiliation**

A group with which the person is affiliated or has been affiliated through employment, membership, cultural identity, etc.

100 1#‡aAshton, John
373 ##‡aFaculty of Biological Science, Leeds University**‡s**2000**‡t**2005
373 ##‡aFaculty of Life Science, Manchester University**‡s**2005

‡s - Start period

The starting date of the affiliation.

‡t - End period

The end date of the affiliation.

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols.

In field 373, subfield ‡u is used to record the location of the source of information about affiliations available electronically.

‡v - Source of information

Source where the information recorded in field 373 was found if not through a URI.

373

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

Specifies a code that identifies the source of a controlled vocabulary for affiliation terms in ‡a.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

374 Occupation

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Occupation (R)	‡0 Record control number (R)
‡s Start period (NR)	‡2 Source of term (NR)
‡t End period (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡u Uniform Resource Identifier (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡v Source of information (R)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information about profession or occupation in which a person works or has worked, including dates applicable.

The field is repeated if the person has multiple occupations for different time periods.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Occupation**

A profession or occupation in which the person works or has worked.

374 ##‡acomposer‡2[code for controlled vocabulary]

‡s - Start period

The starting date of work in a profession or occupation.

‡t - End period

The end date of work in a profession or occupation.

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols.

In field 374, subfield ‡u is used to record the location of the source of information about occupation accessible electronically.

‡v - Source of information

Source where the information recorded in field 374 was found if not through a URI.

374

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

Specifies a code that identifies the source of a controlled vocabulary for occupation terms in ‡a.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

375 Gender

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Gender (R)	‡v Source of information (R)
‡s Start period (NR)	‡2 Source of term (NR)
‡t End period (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡u Uniform Resource Identifier (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information about gender of a person, including dates applicable.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Gender**

The gender with which a person identifies.

100 1#‡aNabokov, Vladimir,‡d1869-1922
375 ##‡amale

‡s - Start period

Starting date of a person's identification with a specified gender.

100 1#‡aMorris, Jan,‡d1926-
400 1#‡wnne‡aMorris, James,‡d1926-
670 ##‡aAuthor's Conundrum, 1974
375 ##‡amale‡s1926‡2iso5218
375 ##‡afemale‡s1972?‡2iso5218

‡t - End period

End date of a person's identification with a specified gender.

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols.

In field 375, subfield ‡u is used to record the source of information about gender accessible electronically.

‡v - Source of information

Source where the information recorded in field 375 was found if not through a URI.

375

‡2 - Source of term

Specifies a code that identifies the source of a controlled vocabulary for gender terms in ‡a.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

376 Family Information

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a	Type of family (R)	‡v	Source of information (R)
‡b	Name of prominent member (R)	‡0	Record control number (R)
‡c	Hereditary title (R)	‡2	Source of term (NR)
‡s	Start period (NR)	‡6	Linkage (NR)
‡t	End period (NR)	‡8	Field link and sequence number (R)
‡u	Uniform Resource Identifier (R)		

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Additional information about families, including type of family, prominent member of the family, and hereditary title.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Type of family**

A categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family, e.g Family, Clan, Dynasty, Royal House.

046 ##‡s1925‡t1979
 100 3#‡aPahlavi (Dynasty : ‡d1925-1979)
 376 ##‡aDynasty

046 ##‡s1529‡t1739
 100 3#‡aNayak (Dynasty : ‡cMadurai, India)
 370 ##‡fMadurai, India
 376 ##‡aDynasty

100 3#‡aYan (Family : China)
 370 ##‡cChina
 376 ##‡aFamily

‡b - Name of prominent member

A well-known individual who is a member of the family.

100 3#‡aMedici (Royal house : ‡gMedici, Lorenzo de', 1449-1492)
 376 ##‡aRoyal house‡bMedici, Lorenzo de', 1449-1492

376

100 3#**‡a**Denney (Family : **‡g**Denny, Anthony, 1501-1549)

376 ##**‡a**Family**‡b**Denny, Anthony, 1501-1549

100 3#**‡a**Denney (Family : **‡g**Denny, Arthur Armstrong, 1822-1899)

[two families with the same name differentiated by addition of prominent member of the family]

376 ##**‡a**Family**‡b**Denny, Arthur Armstrong, 1822-1899

‡c - Hereditary title

A title of nobility, etc., associated with a family.

‡s - Start period

Starting date associated with a family, such as date of origin.

100 3#**‡a**Cholmley (Family)

400 3#**‡a**Cholmeley (Family)

400 3#**‡a**Cholmondeley (Family)

376 ##**‡a**Family**‡c**Marquesses of Cholmondeley

376 ##**‡a**Family**‡c**Dukes of Cholmondeley**‡s**1852

‡t - End period

End date associated with a family, such as date of termination.

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols.

In field 376, subfield **‡u** is used to record the location of the source of information about the family accessible electronically.

‡v - Source of information

Source where the information recorded in field 376 was found if not through a URI.

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

Specifies a code that identifies the source of a controlled form of the name in subfield **‡b**.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

377 Associated Language (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Source of code
MARC language code
7 Source specified in ‡2

Subfield Codes

‡a Language code (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡2 Source of code (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Language of the person: the language a person uses when writing for publication, broadcasting, etc.

Language of the corporate body: a language a corporate body uses in its communications.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator - Source of code

- MARC language code

Code from: *MARC Code List for Languages*.

7 - Source specified in ‡2

Source of language code is indicated by a code in ‡2.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Language code

A language code identifying the language that a person or organization uses for publication, communication, etc.

100 1#‡aNabokov, Vladimir,‡d1869-1922

377 ##‡arus‡aeng

‡2 - Source of code

Specifies a code that identifies the source of the language code in subfield ‡a.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

110 2#‡aCanadian Standards Association

377 ##‡aeng‡afre

377 #7‡aen‡afr‡2iso639-1

377

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

380 Form of Work

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Form of work (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡0 Record control number (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡2 Source of term (NR)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A class or genre to which a work belongs. May be used to differentiate a work from another work with the same title.

Multiple forms of work from the same source vocabulary may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Form of work). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Form of work**

A term expressing the class or genre of the work.

100 1#‡aWilder, Thornton, ‡d1897-1975. ‡tOur town.

380 ##‡aPlay

130 #0‡aCinderella (Choreographic work)

380 ##‡aChoreographic work

130 #0‡aWar of the worlds (Television program)

380 ##‡aTelevision program

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

MARC code that identifies the source of the term in subfield ‡a when it is from a controlled list.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

380

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

381 Other Distinguishing Characteristics of Work or Expression (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

<p>‡a Other distinguishing characteristic (R) ‡u Uniform Resource Identifier (R) ‡v Source of information (R) ‡0 Record control number (R)</p>	<p>‡2 Source of term (NR) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)</p>
--	---

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Any characteristic that is not accommodated in a special field that serves to characterize a work or expression. Examples are an issuing body, arranged statement of music, version, or a geographic term. May be used to differentiate a work from another work with the same title.

Multiple characteristics from the same source vocabulary may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Other distinguishing characteristic). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Other distinguishing characteristic

A term that specifies a characteristic that differentiates a work or expression from another one.

130 #0‡aResearch paper (South African Law Commission)

381 ##‡aSouth African Law Commission
[Attributes of a work]

130 #0‡aHarlow (Motion picture : 1965 : Douglas)

381 ##‡aDouglas

380 ##‡aMotion picture

046 ##‡k1965
[Attributes of a work]

130 #0‡a1 + 1 = 3 (Choreographic work : D'Amboise)

381 ##‡aD'Amboise

380 ##‡aChoreographic work
[Attributes of an expression]

381

- 130 #0‡aBible.‡IEnglish.‡sAuthorized.‡f2004
381 ##‡aAuthorized
046 ##‡k2004
[Attributes of an expression]
- 100 1#‡aDebussy, Claude,‡d1862-1918.‡tChansons de Bilitis (Songs).‡pChevelure;‡oarranged
380 ##‡aSongs
381 ##‡aArranged
[Attributes of an expression]
- 100 1#‡aGibbon, Edward,‡d1737-1794.‡tHistory of the decline and fall of the Roman Empire.‡kSelections
381 ##‡aSelections
[Attributes of an expression]

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols.

In field 381, subfield ‡u is used to record the location of electronically accessible source information.

‡v - Source of information

Source where the information recorded in field 381 was found if not through a URI.

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

MARC code that identifies the source of the term in subfield ‡a when it is from a controlled list.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

382 Medium of Performance

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Medium of performance (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡0 Record control number (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡2 Source of term (NR)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The instrumental, vocal, and/or other medium of performance for which a musical work was originally conceived or for which a musical expression is written or performed. May be used to differentiate a musical work or expression from another with the same title.

Multiple mediums from the same source vocabulary may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Medium of performance). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Medium of performance**

A term that indicates the instrumental, vocal, and/or other medium of performance.

100 1#‡aMahler, Gustav,‡d1860-1911.‡tSymphonies,‡nno. 2,‡rC minor

382 ##‡asoprano‡aalto‡amixed voices‡aorchestra

384 ##‡aC minor

383 ##‡ano. 2

100 1#‡aFaith, Richard,‡d1926-‡tMiniatures

382 ##‡aoboe‡apiano

382 ##‡aclarinet‡apiano

[In this example there are different parts for performance purposes.]

100 1#‡aBeethoven, Ludwig van,‡d1770-1827.‡tSonatas,‡mpiano,‡nno. 14, op. 27, no. 2,‡rC# minor

382 ##‡apiano

383 ##‡ano. 14,‡rbop. 27, no. 2

384 ##‡aC# minor

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

382

‡2 - Source of term

MARC code that identifies the source of the term in subfield ‡a when it is from a controlled list.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

383 Numeric Designation of Musical Work	(R)
--	------------

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Serial number (R) ‡b Opus number (R) ‡c Thematic index number (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
--	--

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A serial number, opus number, or thematic index number assigned to a musical work by the composer, publisher, or a musicologist. May be used to differentiate a musical work from another with the same title.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Serial number**

A number used if works with the same title and the same medium of performance are consecutively numbered in music reference sources.

‡b - Opus number

An identifying number of a musical composition sometimes followed by a number within the opus.

100 1#‡aHovhaness, Alan,‡d1911-2000.‡tIsland of Mysterious Bells.
383 ##‡bop. 244

‡c - Thematic index number

A number assigned to a work in a recognized thematic index in the case of certain composers.

100 1#‡aVivaldi, Antonio,‡d1678-1741.‡tCimento dell'armonia e dell'inventione.‡nN. 1-4
383 ##‡bop. 8, no. 1-4
383 ##‡cRV 269‡cRV 315‡cRV 293‡cRV 297
383 ##‡cF. I, 22-25

[In this example there are many identifying numbers associated with the work.]

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

[blank page]

384 Key

(NR)

First Indicator

Key type
 # Relationship to original unknown
 0 Original key
 1 Transposed key

Second Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Key (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
 ‡6 Linkage (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The set of pitch relationships that establishes a single pitch class as a tonal centre for a musical work or expression. May be used to differentiate a musical work or expression from another with the same title.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Key type****# - Relationship to original unknown**

The relationship of the specified key to the original key in which the musical composition was written.

0 - Original key**1 - Transposed key**

A different key from that of the original work.

Second Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Key**

The pitch name and the mode (e.g., major or minor).

100 1#‡aMahler, Gustav,‡d1860-1911.‡tLieder nach Rückert.‡pIch atmet' einen linden Duft
384 0#‡aD major

384

100 1#1aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,1d1756-1791.1tConcertos,1moboe, orchestra,1nK. 314,1rC
major;1oarranged
382 ##1aflute1aorchestra
383 ##1ano. 2
383 ##1cK. 2851cK. 314
384 1#1aD major

16 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

18 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

Tracings and References-General Information

2XX-3XX Complex subject references

- 260 Complex See Reference - Subject (R)**
- 360 Complex See Also Reference - Subject (R)**

4XX See From tracings

- 400 See From Tracing - Personal Name (R)**
- 410 See From Tracing - Corporate Name (R)**
- 411 See From Tracing - Meeting Name (R)**
- 430 See From Tracing - Uniform Title (R)**
- 448 See From Tracing - Chronological Term (R)**
- 450 See From Tracing - Topical Term (R)**
- 451 See From Tracing - Geographic Name (R)**
- 455 See From Tracing - Genre/Form Term (R)**
- 480 See From Tracing - General Subdivision (R)**
- 481 See From Tracing - Geographic Subdivision (R)**
- 482 See From Tracing - Chronological Subdivision (R)**
- 485 See From Tracing - Form Subdivision (R)**

5XX See Also From tracings

- 500 See Also From Tracing - Personal Name (R)**
- 510 See Also From Tracing - Corporate Name (R)**
- 511 See Also From Tracing - Meeting Name (R)**
- 530 See Also From Tracing - Uniform Title (R)**
- 548 See Also From Tracing - Chronological Term (R)**
- 550 See Also From Tracing - Topical Term (R)**
- 551 See Also From Tracing - Geographic Name (R)**
- 555 See Also From Tracing - Genre/Form Term (R)**
- 580 See Also From Tracing - General Subdivision (R)**
- 581 See Also From Tracing - Geographic Subdivision (R)**
- 582 See Also From Tracing - Chronological Subdivision (R)**
- 585 See Also From Tracing - Form Subdivision (R)**

Special subfields used with 4XX and 5XX fields

- ‡i Relationship information (R)**
- ‡w Control Subfield (NR)**
 - /0 Special relationship
 - /1 Tracing use restriction
 - /2 Earlier form of heading
 - /3 Reference display
- ‡4 Relationship code (R)**

663-666 Complex name references

- 663 Complex See Also Reference - Name (NR)**
- 664 Complex See Reference - Name (NR)**
- 665 History Reference (NR)**
- 666 General Explanatory Reference - Name (NR)**

Tracings and References

DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Cross references lead from an unauthorized heading to an authorized heading (see reference) or from one authorized heading to another (see also reference). Actual cross references are generally not carried explicitly in authority records. Instead, variant form and related headings are carried in authority records in either *tracing* or *reference note* fields. Cross reference displays may be generated by combining the contents of a tracing or a reference note field and the 1XX heading field of a record.

■ TRACING FIELDS

Tracing fields lead directly from one heading to a single other heading. A 4XX (See From Tracing) field leads from an unauthorized heading to an authorized heading. A 5XX see also from tracing field leads from one authorized heading to another authorized heading. The 4XX and 5XX fields are used only in established heading records and subdivision records.

Cross reference displays generated from the tracing fields are called *simple cross references*. In a simple cross reference display, the content of the 4XX or 5XX field is the *heading referred from*, and, following a reference instruction phrase, the content of the 1XX field is the *heading referred to*. In the tracing fields, the reference instruction phrase may be implicitly associated with either the field tag or a code in subfield †w/0 (Special relationship).

In some cases, the reference instruction phrase may be carried explicitly in subfield †i (Relationship information) or associated with a relationship designation expressed in subfield †i or, in coded form in subfield †4.

008/09 a [*established heading record*]
100 1#†aDe Angelini, Anna
400 1#†aAngelini, Anna de
[Reference instruction phrase is associated with field tag 400.]

Cross reference display example:
Angelini, Anna de
search under: De Angelini, Anna

008/09 d [*subdivision record*]
[subdivision record]
180 ##†xAcronyms
580 ##†xAbbreviations
[Reference instruction phrase is associated with field tag 580.]

Cross reference display example:
Abbreviations
search also under: Acronyms

■ REFERENCE NOTE FIELDS

Reference note fields lead from one heading to one or more other headings. A reference note field is used when more complex reference instruction is needed than can be conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 4XX and/or 5XX fields. Cross reference displays generated from the reference note fields are *complex cross references*. In a complex cross reference display, the content of the 1XX field of a record is the *heading referred from*, and, following a reference instruction phrase, the reference note field contains the *heading(s) referred to*. In field 260 and 360, the complete reference instruction may be a combination of a phrase implicitly associated with the field tag and explicit text in subfield †i (Explanatory text). In field 663, 664, 665, and 666, the reference instruction text is contained in subfield †a (Explanatory text).

Tracings and References

008/09 f [established heading and subdivision record]

150 ##‡aManagement

360 ##‡isubject subdivision‡aManagement‡iunder types of industries
[Reference instruction phrase is associated with field tag 360 and is also explicit in 360 ‡i.]

Cross reference display example:

Management

search also under: subject subdivision Management under types of industries

008/09 a [established heading record]

100 1#‡aArlen, Harold,‡d1905-1986.‡tBloomer girl

664 ##‡aFor collections beginning with this title search under‡bArlen, Harold,
1905-1986‡tMusical comedies. Selections
[Reference instruction phrase is explicit in field 664 ‡a.]

Cross reference display example:

Arlen, Harold, 1905-1986 Bloomer girl

For collections beginning with this title search under: Arlen, Harold, 1905-1986 Musical comedies. Selections

There are two types of reference note fields: 1) those used in records for established headings; and 2) those used in reference records. The fields used for *see also* reference notes (field 360, 663, and 665) are used to lead from an established heading to other established headings. The fields used for *see* reference notes (field 260, 664, and 666) are used in reference records to lead from an unestablished heading to established headings.

Current cataloging practice does not encourage the use of a reference note field if cross references generated from tracings in one or more 4XX and/or 5XX fields will provide satisfactory user guidance. For example, instead of carrying a 665 history reference field in each of the established heading records involved in corporate body name changes, each name is traced in a 4XX or 5XX field. The earlier or later name relationship between each 4XX or 5XX field and the 1XX field is indicated by a code in subfield ‡w/0 (Special relationship).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying subfield ‡i (Reference instruction phrase) and subfield ‡w (Control subfield) in the 4XX and 5XX fields, as well as examples of simple cross reference displays are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the other content designators defined for the 4XX and 5XX fields are provided in the *General Information* sections for each type of heading (X00 Personal Names; X10 Corporate Names; X11 Meeting Names; X30 Uniform Titles; X48 Chronological Terms; X50 Topical Terms; X51 Geographic Names; X55 Genre/Form Terms; X80 General Subdivisions; X81 Geographic Subdivisions; X82 Chronological Subdivisions; X85 Form Subdivisions).

Examples of complex cross reference displays that may be generated from field 260, 360, 663, 664, 665, and 666 are also provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the content designators for these fields are not provided here but can be found in the separate sections for each field.

■ TRACING FIELDS-SIMPLE CROSS REFERENCES

Simple cross references are generated for display from tracing fields. The following description related to the tracing fields is arranged by the source of the reference instruction phrase used in the cross reference: tag related, subfield ‡i, and subfield ‡w. The character positions defined for subfield ‡w are also described here.

Tracings and References

Tag Related Reference Instruction Phrase

Reference instruction phrase such as *see:* or *search under:* may be implicitly associated with a 4XX field tag and may be used to generate a display of a cross reference. Reference instruction phrase such as *see also:* or *search also under:* may be implicitly associated with a 5XX field and may be used to generate a display of a cross reference.

008/09 a [established heading record]

100 1#‡aArief, Barda Nawawi,‡d1943-

400 0#‡aBarda Nawawi Arief,‡d1943-

Cross reference display example:

Barda Nawawi Arief, 1943-

search under: Arief, Barda Nawawi, 1943-

008/09 d [subdivision record]

180 ##‡xMicroform catalogs

580 ##‡xBibliography‡xMicroform catalogs

Cross reference display example:

Bibliography-Microform catalogs

search also under: Microform catalogs

‡i - Relationship information

Subfield may contain either a *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 4XX or 5XX field to the 1XX entity in the record or it may contain a textual *reference instruction phrase* that is to be used for a user display indicating the relationship of the 1XX entity in the record to the entity in a 4XX or 5XX field. If the subfield contains a Relationship designation, the appropriate reference instruction phrase may be derived from it. The relationship may be name to name (if only names of persons, families, or corporate bodies are involved) or resource to resource (if name/titles or titles are involved).

Relationship designation: When a tracing field contains a relationship designation in subfield ‡i, control subfield ‡w/0 contains code r (Relationship designation in subfield ‡i or ‡4). Code r indicates that the generation of a tag related reference instruction phrase in a cross reference display should be suppressed. The content of subfield ‡i or ‡4 should be used to generate the reference instruction phrase that is used in a cross reference display.

100 1#‡aClemens, Samuel,‡d1835-1910

500 ##‡wr‡ialternate identity‡aTwain, Mark,‡d1835-1910

User display example:

Twain, Mark, ‡d 1835-1910

See also his real identity Clemens, Samuel, 1835-1910

Reciprocal of previous example:

100 1#‡aTwain, Mark,‡d1835-1910

500 ##‡wr‡ireal identity‡aClemens, Samuel,‡d1835-1910

User display example:

Clemens, Samuel, ‡d 1835-1910

See also his alternate identity Twain, Mark, 1835-1910

Reference instruction phrase: When a tracing field contains a reference instruction phrase in subfield ‡i, control subfield ‡w/0 contains code i (Reference instruction phrase in subfield ‡i). Code i indicates that the generation of a tag-related reference instruction phrase in a cross reference display should be suppressed. The content of subfield ‡i is the reference instruction phrase that is used in a cross reference display.

Tracings and References

- 100 1#**‡a**Clemens, Samuel,**‡d**1835-1910
500 1#**‡wi‡i**See also his real identity**‡a**Twain, Mark,**‡d**1835-1910

User display example:

Twain, Mark, ‡d 1835-1910

See also his real identity Clemens, Samuel, 1835-1910

Reciprocal of previous example:

- 100 1#**‡a**Twain, Mark,**‡d**1835-1910
500 1#**‡wi‡i**See also his alternate identity**‡a**Clemens, Samuel,**‡d**1835-1910

User display example:

Clemens, Samuel, ‡d 1835-1910

See also his alternate identity Twain, Mark, 1835-1910

008/09 a [established heading record]

- 151 ##**‡a**Sri Lanka
451 ##**‡wib‡a**Ceylon**‡i**For subject entries search under
551 ##**‡waa‡a**Ceylon

[Two cross references are required because of varying subject and name reference structures.]

Cross reference from field 451 display example:

Ceylon

For subject entries search under:

Sri Lanka

Cross reference from field 551 display example:

Ceylon

search also under later heading:

Sri Lanka

‡4 - Relationship code

Contains in coded form the *designation of a relationship* of the entity in a 4XX or 5XX field to the 1XX entity in the record. See subfield **‡i** for further information on relationship designators.

‡w - Control subfield

Up to four character positions (designated as **‡w/0**, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading in the 4XX or 5XX field and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield **‡w** need not be used if none of the characteristics is applicable. Because the definitions of the codes in subfield **‡w** are dependent on the character position in which they occur, the coding of any character position mandates that each preceding character position contains a code or a fill character (|); succeeding character positions need not be used. For example, if **‡w/0** and **‡w/1** are not applicable but **‡w/2** is applicable, then **‡w/0** and **‡w/1** each contain code n (Not applicable) or a fill character (|).

/0 - Special relationship

One-character alphabetic code that describes a relationship between the heading in a 1XX field and a heading in a 4XX or 5XX field that is more specific than the relationship implicit in the tag. The codes may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase in a cross reference display.

Tracings and References

a - Earlier heading

b - Later heading

d - Acronym

f - Musical composition

g - Broader term

t - Immediate parent body

h - Narrower term

i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield \ddagger i

n - Not applicable

r - Relationship designation in \ddagger i or \ddagger 4

a - Earlier heading

Established heading in the tracing field is an earlier name for the heading in the 1XX field. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the later heading*: in a cross reference display.

110 **1# \ddagger a**Missouri. **\ddagger b**State Highway Patrol. **\ddagger b**Criminal Records Division

510 **1# \ddagger wa \ddagger a**Missouri. **\ddagger b**State Highway Patrol. **\ddagger b**Criminal Records Section

Cross reference display example:

Missouri. State Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Division

search also under the later heading:

Missouri. State Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Division

b - Later heading

Heading in the tracing field is a later name for the heading in the 1XX field. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the earlier heading*: in a cross reference display.

110 **1# \ddagger a**Missouri. **\ddagger b**State Highway Patrol. **\ddagger b**Criminal Records Section

510 **1# \ddagger wb \ddagger a**Missouri. **\ddagger b**State Highway Patrol. **\ddagger b**Criminal Records Division

Cross reference display example:

Missouri. State Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Division

search also under the earlier heading:

Missouri. State Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Section

d - Acronym

Heading in the tracing field is an acronym for the heading in the 1XX field. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search under the full form of the heading*: in a cross reference display.

110 **2# \ddagger a**Associação Brasileira para o Desenvolvimento das Industrias de Base

410 **2# \ddagger wd \ddagger a**Abdib

Cross reference display example:

Abdib

search under the full form of the heading:

Associação Brasileira para o Desenvolvimento das Industrias de Base

f - Musical composition

Heading in the 4XX or 5XX field is for a literary work upon which the musical composition in the heading in the 1XX field is based. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *for a musical composition based on this work, search also under*: in a cross reference display.

100 **1# \ddagger a**Debussy, Claude, **\ddagger d**1862-1918. **\ddagger t**Chute de la maison Usher

500 **1# \ddagger wf \ddagger a**Poe, Edgar Allan, **\ddagger d**1809-1849. **\ddagger t**Fall of the house of Usher

Tracings and References

Cross reference display example:

Poe, Edgar Allan, 1809-1849. Fall of the house of Usher for a musical composition based on this work, search also under:

Debussy, Claude, 1862-1918. Chute de la maison Usher

g - Broader term

Heading in the 4XX or 5XX field is a broader term than the heading in the 1XX field. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the narrower term:* in a cross reference display.

150 ##~~†~~aToes

550 ##~~†~~wg~~†~~aFoot

Cross reference display example:

Foot

search also under the narrower term: Toes

h - Narrower term

Heading in the 4XX or 5XX field is a narrower term than the heading in the 1XX field. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the broader term:* in a cross reference display.

150 ##~~†~~aFoot

550 ##~~†~~wh~~†~~aToes

Cross reference display example:

Toes

search also under the broader term: Foot

i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield †i

Used in conjunction with subfield †i (Relationship information). Guidelines for applying code i are given under the description of subfield †i.

n - Not applicable

Relationship between the heading in the 4XX or 5XX field and the heading in the 1XX field is not one of the special relationships for which other codes are defined in subfield †w/0. A tag related reference instruction phrase such as *search under:* or *search also under:* may be used in a cross reference display from the related heading. If code n is applicable, subfield †w/0 need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

180 ##~~†~~xAesthetics

480 ##~~†~~xViews on aesthetics

Cross reference display example:

Views on aesthetics

search under: Aesthetics

r - Relationship designation in subfield †i or †4

Used in conjunction with subfield †i (Relationship information) or subfield †4 (Relationship code). Guidelines for applying code i are given under the description of subfield †i.

110 2#~~†~~aI. M. Pei & Partners

500 1#~~†~~wr~~†~~ifounder~~†~~aPei, I. M.~~†~~d1917-

510 1#~~†~~wb~~†~~aPei Cobb Freed & Partners

Tracings and References

Cross reference display example:

I.M. Pei, 1917-

See also founded organization: I.M. Pei & Partners

Pei Cobb Freed & Partners

See also earlier name: I.M. Pei & Partners

100 1#~~1~~aPei, I. M.~~1~~d1917-

510 2#~~1~~w~~1~~r~~1~~ifounder of~~1~~a I.M. Pei & Partners.

Cross reference display example:

I.M. Pei & Partners

See also founder I. M. Pei, 1917-

100 1#~~1~~aStoppard, Tom.~~1~~tRosencrantz and Guildenstern are dead

500 1#~~1~~w~~1~~r~~1~~ibased on (work)~~1~~aShakespeare, William,~~1~~d1564-1616~~1~~tHamlet

Cross reference display example:

Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616. Hamlet

Derivative work: Stoppard, Tom. Rosencrantz and Guildenstern are dead

t - Immediate parent body

Heading in the 5XX field is the name of a parent body of the entity in the 1XX field. Code t is applicable only to corporate bodies. It may be used for archival material where there is a need to identify fully the hierarchical structure of a corporate entity.

110 2#~~1~~aLoblaw Companies Limited

510 2#~~1~~w~~1~~t~~1~~aGeorge Weston Limited

Cross reference display example:

Loblaw Companies Limited

search also under the immediate parent body:

George Weston Limited

/1 - Tracing use restriction

One-character alphabetic code that specifies the authority reference structure in which the use of a 4XX or 5XX field to generate a cross reference is appropriate. When the tracing reference structure use differs from the use of the heading in the 1XX field, a tracing use restriction code in subfield ~~1~~w/1 enables suppression or generation of the cross reference as required for the type of reference structure.

a - Name reference structure only

b - Subject reference structure only

c - Series reference structure only

d - Name and subject reference structures

e - Name and series reference structures

f - Subject and series reference structures

g - Name, subject, and series reference structures

h - No reference structures

n - Not applicable

Code h (No reference structures) indicates that the reference is not valid in any reference structure. Code n (Not applicable) indicates that the authority structure use is the same as the bibliographic record use coded in 008/14-16 for the heading in the 1XX field. If code n is applicable, subfield ~~1~~w/1 need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

/2 - Earlier form of heading

One-character alphabetic code that indicates whether the heading in the 4XX field is an earlier form in which the name or subject was established either in the relevant national authority file or in an authority file other than the national authority file.

- a - Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)**
- e - Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)**
- o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)**
- n - Not applicable**

Precedence of codes

When more than one code applies to the heading in a 4XX field, the following table is used to determine the precedence status of each code. Preference is given to codes higher on the lists. The *Names* column covers records for names formulated according to descriptive cataloging rules. The *Subjects* column covers records for subjects formulated according to subject heading system/thesaurus conventions.

Names

- n - Not applicable**
- a - Pre-AACR2 form of heading (national name authority file)**
- e - Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)**
- o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)**

Subjects

- n - Not applicable**
- e - Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)**
- o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)**

a - Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)

Heading in the 4XX field is a pre-AACR2 form (of the heading in the 1XX field) that was the authorized heading in the national name authority file at the time of the changeover to the AACR2 rules.

- 100** 1#~~1~~aCallaghan, Bede,~~1~~cSir,~~1~~d1912-
- 400** 1#~~1~~wnna~~1~~aCallaghan, Bede Bertrand,~~1~~cSir,~~1~~d1912-

Cross reference display example:

Callaghan, Bede Bertrand, Sir, 1912-
 search under the later form of the heading:
 Callaghan, Bede, Sir, 1912-

e - Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)

Heading in the 4XX field is a form of the heading in the 1XX field that was formerly established in the relevant national authority file under a situation other than that specified by code a. For example, code e is used when the heading in the 4XX field is a previously-authorized heading from the national authority file now superseded by a later form of heading in the 1XX field. It is also used when the tracing is a pre-AACR2 form of a name, name-title, or uniform title heading that had been established earlier in the national authority file but was not the established heading at the time of the changeover to the AACR2 rules.

- 150** ##~~1~~aMargarine
- 450** ##~~1~~wnne~~1~~aOleomargarine
- 151** ##~~1~~aBoston (England)
- 451** ##~~1~~wnne~~1~~aBoston (Lincolnshire)

Tracings and References

o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)

Heading in the tracing field is an earlier form of the 1XX heading that was formerly established in an authority file other than the relevant national authority file.

n - Not applicable

Tracing does not contain a formerly established form of the 1XX heading. If code n is applicable, subfield ‡w/2 need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

/3 - Reference display

One-character alphabetic code that enables the generation or suppression of a cross reference from a 4XX or 5XX field.

a - Reference not displayed

b - Reference not displayed, field 664 used

c - Reference not displayed, field 663 used

d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

n - Not applicable

a - Reference not displayed

Generation of a cross reference display from a tracing field should be suppressed. Code a is used when the reason for suppression is not covered by code b, c, or d.

110 2#‡aEntomological Society of Karachi

510 2#‡wanna‡aKarachi Entomological Society

[Cross reference is suppressed because heading has not been used.]

b - Reference not displayed, field 664 used

Generation of a cross reference display from a 4XX field should be suppressed because of the existence of a separate reference record containing a 664 field.

See the description of field 664 for examples of subfield ‡w/3 containing code b in 4XX fields in established heading records. See the *Reference Fields-Complex Cross References* description in this section for examples of cross reference displays generated from field 664.

c - Reference not displayed, field 663 used

Generation of a cross reference display from a 5XX field should be suppressed due to the presence of field 663 in the same record.

See the description of field 663 for examples of subfield ‡w/3 containing code c in 5XX fields in established heading records. See the *Reference Fields-Complex Cross References* description in this section for examples of cross reference displays generated from field 663.

d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

Generation of a cross reference display from a 4XX or 5XX field should be suppressed because of a 665 (History Reference) field in the same record.

See the field 665 description for examples of subfield ‡w/3 containing code d in 4XX and 5XX fields in established heading records. See the *Reference Fields-Complex Cross References* description in this section for examples of cross reference displays generated from field 665.

n - Not applicable

No reference display restriction on the 4XX or 5XX field. If code n is applicable, subfield ‡w/3 need not be coded.

■ REFERENCE FIELDS-COMPLEX CROSS REFERENCES

Complex cross references are carried directly in records as reference note fields. The following description is arranged by the source of the reference instruction phrase: tag related (with subfield ‡i) and subfield ‡a.

Tag related reference instruction phrase with subfield ‡i

Field 260 may be used to generate a display of a cross reference with a reference instruction phrase such as *see:* or *search under:*. Field 360 may be used to generate a cross reference with a reference instruction phrase such as *see also:* or *search also under:*. The text in subfield ‡i (Explanatory text) augments the tag related instruction phrase.

260 - Complex See Reference-Subject:

008/09 b [untraced reference record]

150 ##‡aCatalogue . . .

260 ##‡isubject headings beginning with the word‡aCatalog

Cross reference display example:

Catalogue...

search under: subject headings beginning with the word Catalog

260 - Complex See Reference-Subject:

008/09 g [reference and subdivision record]

150 ##‡aAmateurs' manuals

260 ##‡isubdivision‡aAmateurs' manuals‡iunder subjects, e.g.‡aRadio-Amateurs' manuals

Cross reference display example:

Amateurs' manuals

search under: subdivision Amateurs' manuals under subjects, e.g. Radio-Amateurs' manuals

360 - Complex See Also Reference-Subject:

008/09 a [established heading record]

100 0#‡aMary,‡cBlessed Virgin, Saint‡xApparitions and miracles

360 ##‡inames of particular apparitions and miracles, e.g.‡aFatima, Our Lady of

Cross reference display example:

Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint-Apparitions and miracles

search also under: names of particular apparitions and miracles, e.g. Fatima, Our Lady of

‡a - Explanatory text

Any reference instruction phrase needed in fields 663, 664, 665, and 666.

663 - Complex See Also Reference-Name:

008/09 a [established heading record]

100 1#‡aJapp, Alexander H.‡q(Alexander Hay),‡d1839-1905

663 ##‡aFor works of this author written under pseudonyms, search also under‡bGray, E. Condor, 1839-1905‡aand‡bPage, H. A., 1839-1905

Cross reference display example (The cross references from Gray and Page are similarly constructed):

Japp, Alexander H. (Alexander Hay), 1839-1905

For works of this author written under pseudonyms, search also under: Gray, E. Condor, 1839-1905 and Page, H. A., 1839-1905

Tracings and References

664 - *Complex See Reference-Name:*

008/09 c [traced reference record]

100 1#**1a**Reger, Max,**1d**1873-1916.**1t**Dies irae

664 ##**1a**For this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under**1b**Reger, Max, 1873-1916.**1t**Requiem (Mass)

Cross reference display example:

Reger, Max, 1873-1916. Dies irae

For this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under: Reger, Max, 1873-1916. Requiem (Mass)

666 - *General Explanatory Reference-Name:*

008/09 b [untraced reference record]

110 2#**1a**Aktiebolaget . . .

666 ##**1a**Corporate names beginning with this word are entered under the next word in the name.

Cross reference display example:

Aktiebolaget..

Corporate names beginning with this word are entered under the next word in the name.

665 - *History Reference (The cross references from the other corporate names are similarly constructed):*

008/09 a [established heading record]

110 1#**1a**Connecticut.**1b**Dept. of Social Services

665 ##**1a**In Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance. **1a**Works by these bodies are found under the following headings according to the name used at the time of publication:**1a**Connecticut. Dept. of Social Services.**1a**Connecticut. Dept. of Human Resources.**1a**Connecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance.**1a**SUBJECT ENTRY:**1a**Works about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.

Cross reference display example:

Connecticut. Dept. of Social Services

In Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance. Works by these bodies are found under the following headings according to the name used at the time of publication:

Connecticut. Dept. of Social Services

Connecticut. Dept. of Human Resources

Connecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance

SUBJECT ENTRY: Works about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

General Input Conventions - General input conventions for the 4XX and 5XX fields are provided in the *General Information* sections for each type of heading (X00 Personal Names; X10 Corporate Names; X11 Meeting Names; X30 Uniform Titles; X48 Chronological Terms; X50 Topical Terms; X51 Geographic Names; X55 Genre/Form Terms; X80 General Subdivisions; X81 Geographic Subdivisions; X82 Chronological Subdivisions; X85 Form Subdivisions.) The input conventions for the reference note fields are provided in the description of each field.

Tracings and References

Display Constants for Cross References - In the 4XX and 5XX fields, reference instruction phrases such as those listed below are not carried in the MARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the code in subfield ‡w/0 or /2 or the field tag.

Subfield ‡w/0 code related:

- a - search also under [see also] the later heading:
- b - search also under [see also] the earlier heading:
- d - search under [see] the full form of the heading:
- g - search also under [see also] the narrower term:
- h - search also under [see also] the broader term:
- n - [A tag-related reference instruction phrase may be used.]
- t - search also under [see also] the parent body:

Tag-related:

- see:
- see also:
- search under:
- search also under:

Subfield ‡w/2 code related:

- a - search under [see] the later form of heading:

In the *reference note* fields 260 and 360, the complete reference instruction may be a combination of a tag-related phrase, such as *see*, *see also*, *search under*, *search also under*, and explicit text in subfield ‡i (Explanatory text).

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡w/0 - *Print constant code [REDEFINED, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]*

Following values were redefined: g (Full name), h (Real name), i (Real name (reputedly))

Following values were made obsolete: j (Name originally), k (Name in religion), l (Secular name), m (Stage name of), o (Variant name), p (Abbreviated name), q (Official name), r (Broader term), s (Narrower term), x (Print constant generated from tag value), z (Text carried in subfield ‡i)

‡w/0 - *Special relationship*

r - *Relationship information in ‡i or ‡4 [NEW, 2009]*

‡w/1 - *Tracing use restriction*

h - *No reference structures [NEW, 2007]*

‡w/2 - *Earlier form of heading*

x - *Tracing is not the form of heading established under earlier cataloguing rules [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CANMARC only]*

‡w/3 - *Reference display*

e - *Note only generated from the tracing [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CANMARC only]*

i - *Invisible see from reference [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CANMARC only]*

x - *Reference is generated from the tracing [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CANMARC only]*

‡w/4 - *Formerly established heading code [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]*

Following values were defined: d (Formerly accepted heading replaced by the heading in the 1XX field), s (Formerly accepted heading replaced by other headings, one of which is in the 1XX field), x (Not a formerly accepted heading)

‡i - *Reference instruction phrase [REDEFINED, 2009]*

Renamed Relationship information and broadened to include relationship designations in addition to textual reference phrases.

‡4 - *Relationship code [NEW, 2009]*

Tracings and References

[blank page]

400 See From Tracing-Personal Name

(R)

First Indicator

Type of personal name element
 0 Forename
 1 Surname
 3 Family name

Second Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Personal name (NR)	‡q Fuller form of name (NR)
‡b Numeration (NR)	‡r Key for music (NR)
‡c Titles and other words associated with a name (R)	‡s Version (NR)
‡d Dates associated with a name (NR)	‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡e Relator term (R)	‡v Form subdivision (R)
‡f Date of a work (NR)	‡w Control subfield (NR)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)	/0 - Special relationship
‡h Medium (NR)	/1 - Tracing use restriction
‡i Relationship information (R)	/2 - Earlier form of heading
‡j Attribution qualifier (R)	/3 - Reference display
‡k Form subheading (R)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡m Medium of performance for music (R)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡n Number of part/section of a work (R)	‡4 Relationship code (R)
‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a personal name *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a *see from* reference from a personal name not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 400 are the same as those defined for field 100 (Heading-Personal Name), field 500 (See Also From Tracing-Personal Name), and field 700 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Personal Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X00 Personal Names-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 400 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

100 0#‡aBhagata Si‡gha,‡d1921-
400 1#‡aSingh, Bhagat,‡d1921-

400

- 100 1#~~1~~aBeethoven, Ludwig van,~~1~~d1770-1827.~~1~~tConcertos,~~1~~mviolin, orchestra,~~1~~nop. 61,~~1~~rD major
- 400 1#~~1~~aBeethoven, Ludwig van,~~1~~d1770-1827.~~1~~tKonzert für Violine und Orchester D-Dur op. 61
- 100 1#~~1~~aSawyer, Lemuel,~~1~~d1777-1852
- 400 1#~~1~~aBlackbeard, Author of,~~1~~d1777-1852
- 400 0#~~1~~aAuthor of Blackbeard,~~1~~d1777-1852
- 100 0#~~1~~aJesus Christ~~1~~xHistory of doctrines~~1~~yEarly church, ca. 30-600
- 400 0#~~1~~aJesus Christ~~1~~xInterpretations, New Testament
- 100 3#~~1~~aAnjou, House of
- 400 3#~~1~~aAngiò, House of
- 100 1#~~1~~aCampbell, Pam.~~1~~tBibleLog for adults.~~1~~pThru the Old Testament series
- 400 1#~~1~~aCampbell, Stan.~~1~~tBibleLog for adults.~~1~~pThru the Old Testament series

410 See From Tracing-Corporate Name

(R)

First Indicator

- Type of corporate name entry element
- 0 Inverted name
 - 1 Jurisdiction name
 - 2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator

- Undefined
- # Undefined

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|--|---|
| ‡a Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR) | ‡r Key for music (NR) |
| ‡b Subordinate unit (R) | ‡s Version (NR) |
| ‡c Location of meeting (NR) | ‡t Title of a work (NR) |
| ‡d Date of meeting or treaty signing (R) | ‡v Form subdivision (R) |
| ‡e Relator term (R) | ‡w Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡f Date of a work (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡h Medium (NR) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡i Relationship information (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡k Form subheading (R) | ‡x General subdivision (R) |
| ‡l Language of a work (NR) | ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) |
| ‡m Medium of performance for music (R) | ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) |
| ‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| ‡o Arranged statement for music (NR) | ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) |
| ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a corporate name *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a *see from* reference from a corporate name not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 410 are the same as those defined for field 110 (Heading-Corporate Name), field 510 (See Also From Tracing-Corporate Name), and field 710 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Corporate Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X10 Corporate Names-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield |‡4 (Relationship code) in field 410 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

EXAMPLES

110 1#‡aHonduras.‡bOficina de Estudios Territoriales

410 1#‡aHonduras.‡bEstudios Territoriales, Oficina de

110 1#‡aVenezuela.‡tReforma del control de cambio no. 2.‡lEnglish & Spanish

410 1#‡aVenezuela.‡tAmendment of exchange agreement no. 2

410

- 151 ##**1a**Chinatown (San Francisco, Calif.)
410 1#**1a**San Francisco (Calif.).**1b**Chinatown
- 110 2#**1a**Conföderation Iranischer Studenten (N.U.)
410 2#**1a**CISNU
410 2#**1wnnaa1a**Conföderation Iranischer Studenten
- 110 2#**1a**Lherminier (Firm)
410 2#**1a**Pierre Lherminier (Firm)
- 130 #0**1a**Lienzo Totomixtlahuaca
410 2#**1a**Centro de Estudios de Historia de México.**1k**Manuscript.**1s**Códice Condumex
- 130 #0**1a**Biology research report
410 2#**1a**Museum of Northern Arizona.**1t**Biology research report

411 See From Tracing-Meeting Name

(R)

First Indicator

- Type of meeting name entry element
- 0 Inverted name
 - 1 Jurisdiction name
 - 2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator

- Undefined
- # Undefined

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|---|
| ‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR) | ‡s Version (NR) |
| ‡c Location of meeting (NR) | ‡t Title of a work (NR) |
| ‡d Date of meeting (NR) | ‡v Form subdivision (R) |
| ‡e Subordinate unit (R) | ‡w Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡f Date of a work (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡h Medium (NR) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡i Relationship information (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡j Relator term (R) | ‡x General subdivision (R) |
| ‡k Form subheading (R) | ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) |
| ‡l Language of a work (NR) | ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) |
| ‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R) | ‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R) | ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) |
| ‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a meeting name *see from* reference. It is used in an established heading record or an established heading and subdivision record to trace a see from reference from a meeting name not used to an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 411 are the same as those defined for field 111 (Heading-Meeting Name), field 511 (See Also From Tracing-Meeting Name), and field 711 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Meeting Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 411 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

EXAMPLES

- 111 2#‡aInternational Symposium on Laser Anemometry
- 411 2#‡aSymposium on Laser Anemometry, International
- 111 2#‡aBayreuther Festspiele.‡eOrchester
- 411 1#‡wnnaa‡aBayreuth (Germany)‡qFestspiele.‡eOrchester

411

- 111 2#1aJakob-Stainer-Tagung1d(1983 :1cInnsbruck, Austria)
- 411 2#1aJakob-Stainer-Symposium1d(1983 :1cInnsbruck, Austria)
- 111 2#1aInternational Population Conference1d(1959 :1cVienna, Austria).1eWorking Committee of the Conference
- 411 2#1aInternational Population Conference1d(1959 :1cVienna, Austria).1eArbeitsausschuss des Kongresses
- 130 #01aPublications of the Carlsberg Expedition to Phoencia
- 411 2#1aCarlsberg Expedition to Phoencia1d(1958-1959).1tPublications of the Carlsberg Expedition to Phoencia

430 See From Tracing-Uniform Title

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Nonfiling characters
0-9 Number of nonfiling characters

Subfield Codes

‡a	Uniform title (NR)	‡t	Title of a work (NR)
‡d	Date of treaty signing (R)	‡v	Form subdivision (R)
‡f	Date of a work (NR)	‡w	Control subfield (NR)
‡g	Miscellaneous information (NR)		/0 - Special relationship
‡h	Medium (NR)		/1 - Tracing use restriction
‡i	Relationship information (R)		/2 - Earlier form of heading
‡k	Form subheading (R)		/3 - Reference display
‡l	Language of a work (NR)	‡x	General subdivision (R)
‡m	Medium of performance for music (R)	‡y	Chronological subdivision (R)
‡n	Number of part/section of a work (R)	‡z	Geographic subdivision (R)
‡o	Arranged statement for music (NR)	‡4	Relationship code (R)
‡p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	‡5	Institution to which field applies (R)
‡r	Key for music (NR)	‡6	Linkage (NR)
‡s	Version (NR)	‡8	Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a uniform title *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a *see from* reference from a uniform title not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 430 are the same as those defined for field 130 (Heading-Uniform Title), field 530 (See Also From Tracing-Uniform Title), and field 730 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Uniform Title). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X30 Uniform Title-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 430 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

130 #0‡aCollection Les Grandes familles industrielles

430 #0‡aGrandes familles industrielles

100 1#‡aLewis, C. S.‡q(Clive Staples),‡d1898-1963.‡tChronicles of Narnia (Collier Books (Firm))

430 #0‡aChronicles of Narnia (Collier Books (Firm))

130 #0‡aThémis.‡pGestion

430 #0‡aGestion (Presses universitaires de France)

430

- 130 #0‡aBible‡xInfluence‡xMedieval civilization
- 430 #0‡aBible‡xInfluence‡yMiddle Ages

- 130 #0‡aBible‡xGeography‡vMaps
- 430 #0‡aBible‡vAtlases

- 150 ##‡aIran in the Koran
- 430 #0‡aKoran‡zIran

448 See From Tracing-Chronological Term

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Chronological term (NR)	‡x General subdivision (R)
|‡i Relationship information (R)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡v Form subdivision (R)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)	|‡4 Relationship code (R)
/0 - Special relationship	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
/1 - Tracing use restriction	‡6 Linkage (NR)
/2 - Earlier form of heading	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
/3 - Reference display	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a chronological term *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see from reference from a chronological term not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 448 are the same as those defined for field 148 (Heading-Chronological Term), field 548 (See Also From Tracing-Chronological Term), and field 748 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Chronological Term). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X48 Chronological Terms-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 448 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

148 ##‡a1800-1899
448 ##‡aNineteenth century

148 ##‡a1900-1999
448 ##‡aTwentieth century

[blank page]

450 See From Tracing-Topical Term

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Topical term or geographic name entry element (NR)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡b Topical term following geographic name entry element (NR)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡i Relationship information (R)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡v Form subdivision (R)	‡4 Relationship code (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
/0 - Special relationship	‡6 Linkage (NR)
/1 - Tracing use restriction	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
/2 - Earlier form of heading	
/3 - Reference display	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a topical term *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see from reference from a topical term not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 450 are the same as those defined for field 150 (Heading-Topical Term), field 550 (See Also From Tracing-Topical Term), and field 750 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Topical Term). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X50 Topical Terms-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 450 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

- 150 ##‡aAfrican drama (English)
450 ##‡aEnglish drama‡xAfrican authors
- 150 ##‡aMusic‡xTheory‡y15th century
450 ##‡aMusic‡y15th century‡xTheory
- 150 ##‡aGrammar, Comparative and general‡xExclamations
450 ##‡aExclamations (Linguistics)

[blank page]

451 See From Tracing-Geographic Name

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Geographic name (NR)	‡x General subdivision (R)
|‡i Relationship information (R)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡v Form subdivision (R)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)	|‡4 Relationship code (R)
/0 - Special relationship	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
/1 - Tracing use restriction	‡6 Linkage (NR)
/2 - Earlier form of heading	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
/3 - Reference display	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a geographic name *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a *see from* reference from a geographic name not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 451 are the same as those defined for field 151 (Heading-Geographic Name), field 551 (See Also From Tracing-Geographic Name), and field 751 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Geographic Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X51 Geographic Names-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 451 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

151 ##‡aUrsa Major
451 ##‡aDipper (Constellation)

151 ##‡aAdirondack Mountains (N.Y.)
451 ##‡aAdirondacks (N.Y.)

151 ##‡aFort Lesley J. McNair (Washington, D.C.)
451 ##‡aWashington Barracks (Washington, D.C.)

151 ##‡aMedina (Ohio)
451 ##‡wnnaa‡aMedina, Ohio

151 ##‡aGeorgetown (Washington, D.C.)‡vMaps
451 ##‡aWest Washington (D.C.)‡vMaps

[blank page]

455 See From Tracing-Genre/Form Term

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Genre/form term (NR)	‡x General subdivision (R)
|‡i Relationship information (R)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡v Form subdivision (R)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)	|‡4 Relationship code (R)
/0 - Special relationship	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
/1 - Tracing use restriction	‡6 Linkage (NR)
/2 - Earlier form of heading	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
/3 - Reference display	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a genre/form term *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see from reference from a genre/form term not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 455 are the same as those defined for field 155 (Heading-Genre/Form Term), field 555 (See Also From Tracing-Genre/Form Term), and field 755 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Genre/Form Term). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X55 Genre/Form Terms-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 455 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

155	##‡a Operas
455	##‡a Operettas
155	##‡a Science fiction
455	##‡a Sci-fi
155	##‡a Panoramas
455	##‡a Panoramic views

[blank page]

480 See From Tracing-General Subdivision	(R)
---	------------

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡i Relationship information (R) ‡v Form subdivision (R) ‡w Control subfield (NR) /0 - Special relationship /1 - Tracing use restriction /2 - Earlier form of heading /3 - Reference display	‡x General subdivision (R) ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) ‡4 Relationship code (R) ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
---	--

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a general subdivision *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a *see from* reference from a general subdivision not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 480 are the same as those defined for field 180 (Heading-General Subdivision), field 580 (See Also From Tracing-General Subdivision), and 780 (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry-General Subdivision). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X80 General Subdivisions-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 480 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

180 ##‡xAesthetics
 480 ##‡xKnowledge‡xAesthetics
 480 ##‡xViews on aesthetics

180 ##‡xPolitical and social views
 480 ##‡xSocial views
 480 ##‡xViews on politics and society
 480 ##‡xViews on society

[blank page]

481 See From Tracing-Geographic Subdivision (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

<p>‡i Relationship information (R) ‡v Form subdivision (R) ‡w Control subfield (NR) /0 - Special relationship /1 - Tracing use restriction /2 - Earlier form of heading /3 - Reference display</p>	<p>‡x General subdivision (R) ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) ‡4 Relationship code (R) ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)</p>
--	---

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a geographic subdivision *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a *see from* reference from a geographic subdivision not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 481 are the same as those defined for field 181 (Heading-Geographic Subdivision), field 581 (See Also From Tracing-Geographic Subdivision), and field 781 (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry-Geographic Subdivision). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X81 Geographic Subdivision-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 481 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

181 ##‡zWashington (State)‡zRainier, Mount
481 ##‡zWashington (State)‡zMount Rainier

[blank page]

482 See From Tracing-Chronological Subdivision^(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

|‡i Relationship information (R)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡v Form subdivision (R)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
/0 - Special relationship	|‡4 Relationship code (R)
/1 - Tracing use restriction	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
/2 - Earlier form of heading	‡6 Linkage (NR)
/3 - Reference display	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a chronological subdivision *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a *see from* reference from a chronological subdivision not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 482 are the same as those defined for field 182 (Heading-Chronological Subdivision), field 582 (See Also From Tracing-Chronological Subdivision), and field 782 (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry-Chronological Subdivision). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X82 Chronological Subdivisions-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 482 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

182 ##‡yEarly church, ca. 30-600
482 ##‡yPrimitive and early church, ca. 30-600

[blank page]

485 See From Tracing-Form Subdivision

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

|‡i Relationship information (R)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡v Form subdivision (R)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
/0 - Special relationship	|‡4 Relationship code (R)
/1 - Tracing use restriction	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
/2 - Earlier form of heading	‡6 Linkage (NR)
/3 - Reference display	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a form subdivision *see from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a *see from* reference from a form subdivision not used in an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 485 are the same as those defined for field 185 (Heading-Form Subdivision), field 585 (See Also From Tracing-Form Subdivision), and field 785 (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry-Form Subdivision). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X85 Form Subdivisions-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 485 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

185 ##‡vSongs
 485 ##‡vLieder
 485 ##‡vArt songs
 [*Example of a non-LCSH heading and related tracings*]

185 ##‡vDiaries
 485 ##‡vJournals (Diaries)

[blank page]

500 See Also From Tracing-Personal Name (R)

First Indicator

Type of personal name entry element
 0 Forename
 1 Surname
 3 Family name

Second Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Personal name (NR)	‡r Key for music (NR)
‡b Numeration (NR)	‡s Version (NR)
‡c Titles and other words associated with a name (R)	‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡d Dates associated with a name (NR)	‡v Form subdivision (R)
‡e Relator term (R)	‡w Control subfield (NR)
‡f Date of a work (NR)	/0 - Special relationship
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)	/1 - Tracing use restriction
‡h Medium (NR)	/2 - Earlier form of heading
‡i Relationship information (R)	/3 - Reference display
‡j Attribution qualifier (R)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡k Form subheading (R)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡m Medium of performance for music (R)	‡0 Record control number (R)
‡n Number of part/section of a work (R)	‡4 Relationship code (R)
‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡q Fuller form of name (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a personal name *see also from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from a personal name to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 500 are the same as those defined for field 100 (Heading-Personal Name), field 400 (See From Tracing-Personal Name), and field 700 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Personal Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X00 Personal Name-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 500 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

110 **2#‡a**Corinthian Hall (Kansas City, Mo.)

500 **1#‡w‡a**Long, Robert Alexander,**‡d**1850-1934**‡x**Homes and haunts**‡z**Missouri

500

- 100 1#~~1~~aFauré, Gabriel,~~1~~d1845-1924.~~1~~tBallades,~~1~~mpiano, orchestra~~1~~nop. 19
500 1#~~1~~aFauré, Gabriel,~~1~~d1845-1924.~~1~~tBallades,~~1~~mpiano~~1~~nop. 19
- 100 3#~~1~~aVan Horn family
500 3#~~1~~aHorn family

510 See Also From Tracing-Corporate Name (R)

First Indicator

Type of corporate name entry element
 0 Inverted name
 1 Jurisdiction name
 2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)	‡r Key for music (NR)
‡b Subordinate unit (R)	‡s Version (NR)
‡c Location of meeting (NR)	‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡d Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)	‡v Form subdivision (R)
‡e Relator term (R)	‡w Control subfield (NR)
‡f Date of a work (NR)	/0 - Special relationship
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)	/1 - Tracing use restriction
‡h Medium (NR)	/2 - Earlier form of heading
‡i Relationship information (R)	/3 - Reference display
‡k Form subheading (R)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡m Medium of performance for music (R)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)	‡0 Record control number (R)
‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)	‡4 Relationship code (R)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡q Fuller form of name (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a corporate name *see also from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an established corporate name to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 510 are the same as those defined for field 110 (Heading-Corporate Name), field 410 (See From Tracing-Corporate Name), and field 710 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Corporate Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X10 Corporate Names-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 510 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

110 **2#‡a**Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Justice

510 **2#‡wb‡a**Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency

510

- 110 2#~~1a~~ACM~~1b~~Special Interest Group on Personal Computing
- 510 2#~~1wb1a~~Association for Computing Machinery.~~1b~~Special Interest Group on Small and Personal Computing Systems and Applications

- 110 1#~~1a~~Maryland.~~1b~~Bureau of Air Quality Control
- 510 1#~~1wa1a~~Maryland.~~1b~~Air Quality Programs

- 510 1#~~1wa1a~~Missouri.~~1b~~State Highway Patrol.~~1b~~Criminal Records Section
- 510 2#~~1wanna1a~~Karachi Entomological Society

511 See Also From Tracing-Meeting Name	(R)
---	------------

First Indicator

- Type of meeting name entry element
- 0 Inverted name
 - 1 Jurisdiction name
 - 2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator

- Undefined
- # Undefined

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR) ‡c Location of meeting (NR) ‡d Date of meeting (NR) ‡e Subordinate unit (R) ‡f Date of a work (NR) ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR) ‡h Medium (NR) ‡i Relationship information (R) ‡j Relator term (R) ‡k Form subheading (R) ‡l Language of a work (NR) ‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R) ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R) ‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ‡s Version (NR) ‡t Title of a work (NR) ‡v Form subdivision (R) ‡w Control subfield (NR) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> /0 - Special relationship /1 - Tracing use restriction /2 - Earlier form of heading /3 - Reference display ‡x General subdivision (R) ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) ‡0 Record control number (R) ‡4 Relationship code (R) ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
|---|--|

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a meeting name *see also from* reference. It is used in an established heading record or an established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an established meeting name to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 511 are the same as those defined for field 111 (Heading-Meeting Name), field 411 (See From Tracing-Meeting Name), and field 711 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Meeting Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 511 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

EXAMPLES

- 111 2#‡aInternational Drip Irrigation Congress
- 511 2#‡w‡a‡aInternational Drip Irrigation Meeting
- 511 2#‡w‡b‡aInternational Drip/Trickle Irrigation Congress

- 111 2#‡aCongrès européen de droit rural
- 511 2#‡w‡a‡aColloque européen de droit rural

511

- 111 2#~~†~~aEntretiens de Bichat
- 511 2#~~†~~wb~~†~~aEntretiens de Bichat Pitié-Salpêtrière

- 110 1#~~†~~aUnited States.~~†~~bDelegation to the Mexico-United States Interparliamentary Conference, 19th, 1979, Mexico City and Ixtapa, Mexico
- 511 2#~~†~~aMexico-United States Interparliamentary Conference.~~†~~eDelegations

- 130 #0~~†~~aConference proceedings (Australian Institute of Criminology)
- 511 2#~~†~~wa~~†~~aAIC Seminar.~~†~~tProceedings

530 See Also From Tracing-Uniform Title

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Nonfiling characters
0-9 Number of nonfiling characters

Subfield Codes

‡a Uniform title (NR)	‡v Form subdivision (R)
‡d Date of treaty signing (R)	‡w Control subfield (NR)
‡f Date of a work (NR)	/0 - Special relationship
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)	/1 - Tracing use restriction
‡h Medium (NR)	/2 - Earlier form of heading
‡i Relationship information (R)	/3 - Reference display
‡k Form subheading (R)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡m Medium of performance for music (R)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡n Number of part/section of a work (R)	‡0 Record control number (R)
‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)	‡4 Relationship code (R)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡r Key for music (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡s Version (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡t Title of a work (NR)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a uniform title *see also from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an established uniform title to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 530 are the same as those defined for field 130 (Heading-Uniform Title), field 430 (See From Tracing-Uniform Title), and field 730 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Uniform Title). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X30 Uniform Titles-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information) and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 530 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

130 #0‡aHabakkuk commentary
530 #0‡aDead Sea scrolls

130 #0‡aOECD reviews of national policy for education
530 #0‡aReviews of national policies for education

530

- 130 #0‡aData report (Maryland. Air Quality Programs)
- 530 #0‡wb‡aData report (Maryland. Air Management Administration)

- 130 #0‡aDossiers Cinéma d'aujourd'hui
- 530 #0‡aCollection Cinéma d'aujourd'hui.‡pDossiers

- 130 #0‡aPublicaciones del Archivo Histórico de la Provincia de Buenos Aires.‡pDocumentos del archivo
- 530 #0‡wb‡aPublicaciones del Archivo Histórico de la Provincia de Buenos Aires "Ricardo Levene."‡nIII,‡pDocumentos del archivo

- 150 ##‡aGods, Vedic
- 530 #0‡wg‡aVedas‡xCriticism, interpretation, etc.

548 See Also From Tracing-Chronological Term (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a	Chronological term (NR)	‡x	General subdivision (R)
|‡i	Relationship information (R)	‡y	Chronological subdivision (R)
‡v	Form subdivision (R)	‡z	Geographic subdivision (R)
‡w	Control subfield (NR)	‡0	Record control number (R)
	/0 - Special relationship	|‡4	Relationship code (R)
	/1 - Tracing use restriction	‡5	Institution to which field applies (R)
	/2 - Earlier form of heading	‡6	Linkage (NR)
	/3 - Reference display	‡8	Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a chronological term *see also from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an established chronological term to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 548 are the same as those defined for field 148 (Heading-Chronological Term), field 448 (See From Tracing-Chronological Term), and field 748 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Chronological Term). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X48 Chronological Terms-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 548 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

148 ##‡a1710-1717

548 ##‡a1700-1799

148 ##‡a1863

548 ##‡a1800-1899

[blank page]

550 See Also From Tracing-Topical Term

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Topical term or geographic name entry element (NR)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡b Topical term following geographic name entry element (NR)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡i Relationship information (R)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡v Form subdivision (R)	‡0 Record control number (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)	‡4 Relationship code (R)
/0 - Special relationship	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
/1 - Tracing use restriction	‡6 Linkage (NR)
/2 - Earlier form of heading	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
/3 - Reference display	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a topical term *see also from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an established topical term to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 550 are the same as those defined for field 150 (Heading-Topical Term), field 450 (See From Tracing-Topical Term), and field 750 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Topical Term). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X50 Topical Terms-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 550 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

150 ##‡aTritheism

550 ##‡w‡aGod

150 ##‡aSand Creek Massacre, Colo., 1864

550 ##‡w‡aIndians of North America‡xWar‡y1862-1865

[blank page]

551 See Also From Tracing-Geographic Name (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a	Geographic name (NR)	‡x	General subdivision (R)
|‡i	Relationship information (R)	‡y	Chronological subdivision (R)
‡v	Form subdivision (R)	‡z	Geographic subdivision (R)
‡w	Control subfield (NR)	‡0	Record control number (R)
	/0 - Special relationship	|‡4	Relationship code (R)
	/1 - Tracing use restriction	‡5	Institution to which field applies (R)
	/2 - Earlier form of heading	‡6	Linkage (NR)
	/3 - Reference display	‡8	Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a geographic name *see also from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an established geographic name to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 551 are the same as those defined for field 151 (Heading-Geographic Name), field 451 (See From Tracing-Geographic Name), and field 751 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Geographic Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X51 Geographic Names-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 551 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

151 ##‡aBuenos Aires (Argentina)
 551 ##‡aBelgrano (Buenos Aires, Argentina)

151 ##‡aChelsea (London, England)
 551 ##‡aKensington and Chelsea (London, England)
 551 ##‡aLondon (England)

151 ##‡aBarents Sea
 551 ##‡wg‡aArctic Ocean

[blank page]

555 See Also From Tracing-Genre/Form Term (R)
--

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Genre/form term (NR) ‡i Relationship information (R) ‡v Form subdivision (R) ‡w Control subfield (NR) /0 - Special relationship /1 - Tracing use restriction /2 - Earlier form of heading /3 - Reference display	‡x General subdivision (R) ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) ‡0 Record control number (R) ‡4 Relationship code (R) ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
--	--

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a genre/form term *see also from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an established genre/form term to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 555 are the same as those defined for field 155 (Heading-Genre/Form Term), field 455 (See From Tracing-Genre/Form Term), and field 755 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Genre/Form Term). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X55 Genre/Form Terms-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 555 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

155 ##‡aMotion pictures
 555 ##‡w‡a3-D films

155 ##‡aPeriodicals
 555 ##‡w‡aSerial publications

[blank page]

580 See Also From Tracing-General Subdivision (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡i Relationship information (R)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡v Form subdivision (R)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
/0 - Special relationship	‡0 Record control number (R)
/1 - Tracing use restriction	‡4 Relationship code (R)
/2 - Earlier form of heading	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
/3 - Reference display	‡6 Linkage (NR)
	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a general subdivision *see also from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an authorized general subdivision to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 580 are the same as those defined for field 180 (Heading-General Subdivision), field 480 (See From Tracing-General Subdivision), and field 780 (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry-General Subdivision). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X80 General Subdivisions-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 580 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

180 ##‡xMonuments

580 ##‡xShrines

180 ##‡xOfficials and employees‡xFurloughs

580 ##‡xOfficials and employees‡xLeave regulations

[blank page]

581 See Also From Tracing-Geographic Subdivision (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

|‡i Relationship information (R)	‡x General subdivision (R)
‡v Form subdivision (R)	‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)	‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
/0 - Special relationship	‡0 Record control number (R)
/1 - Tracing use restriction	|‡4 Relationship code (R)
/2 - Earlier form of heading	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
/3 - Reference display	‡6 Linkage (NR)
	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a geographic subdivision *see also from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an authorized geographic subdivision to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 581 are the same as those defined for field 181 (Heading-Geographic Subdivision), field 481 (See From Tracing-Geographic Subdivision), and field 781 (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry-Geographic Subdivision). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X81 Geographic Subdivisions-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information), and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 581 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

[blank page]

582 See Also From Tracing-Chronological Subdivision(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

<p>‡i Relationship information (R) ‡v Form subdivision (R) ‡w Control subfield (NR) /0 - Special relationship /1 - Tracing use restriction /2 - Earlier form of heading /3 - Reference display</p>	<p>‡x General subdivision (R) ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) ‡0 Record control number (R) ‡4 Relationship code (R) ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)</p>
--	--

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a chronological subdivision *see also from reference*.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an authorized chronological subdivision to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 582 are the same as those defined for field 182 (Heading-Chronological Subdivision), field 482 (See From Tracing-Chronological Subdivision), and field 782 (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry-Chronological Subdivision). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X82 Chronological Subdivisions-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information) and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 582 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

150 ##‡aCuban Missile Crisis, 1962

582 ##‡w‡y1961-1963

[blank page]

585 See Also From Tracing-Form Subdivision (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

<p>‡i Relationship information (R) ‡v Form subdivision (R) ‡w Control subfield (NR) /0 - Special relationship /1 - Tracing use restriction /2 - Earlier form of heading /3 - Reference display</p>	<p>‡x General subdivision (R) ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) ‡0 Record control number (R) ‡4 Relationship code (R) ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)</p>
--	--

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a form subdivision *see also from* reference.

Used in an established heading or established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an authorized form subdivision to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 585 are the same as those defined for field 185 (Heading-Form Subdivision), field 485 (See From Tracing-Form Subdivision), and field 785 (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry-Form Subdivision). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X85 Form Subdivisions-General Information* section.

Guidelines for using subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡i (Relationship information) and subfield ‡4 (Relationship code) in field 585 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

185 ##‡vAcronyms
585 ##‡vAbbreviations

185 ##‡vBibliography‡vMicroform catalogs
585 ##‡vMicroform catalogs

185 ##‡vDiaries
585 ##‡vAutobiographies

[blank page]

2XX, 3XX Complex Subject References-General Information

260 Complex See Reference - Subject (R)

360 Complex See Also Reference - Subject (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Fields 260 and 360 are used to record information about unauthorized forms of subject headings, different authorized forms of subject headings, and other variants not chosen as the authorized form when the relationships cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references. For more information about references and tracings, see the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

2XX-3XX

[blank page]

Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*.

MARC 21 FORMAT FOR AUTHORITY DATA FORMAT CHANGE LIST

Update No. 10, October 2009 and Update No. 11 (February 2010)

This page documents the changes contained in the tenth and eleventh updates to the 1999 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*. Update No. 10 (October 2009) and Update No. 11 (February 2010) include changes resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during 2009 and January 2010.

UPDATE NO. 10 CHANGES

■ *New content designators:*

Codes

Code r - Relationship designation in \$i or \$4 *in \$w/0* (Special relationship) of Tracings and References fields 400-485, 500-585

Subfield codes

‡4 Relationship code (R) *in* Tracings and References fields 400-485, 500-585

Fields

046 Special Coded Dates (R)
080 Universal Decimal Classification Number (R)
336 Content Type (R)
370 Associated Place (R)
371 Address (R)
372 Field of Activity (R)
373 Affiliation (R)
374 Occupation (R)
375 Gender (R)
376 Family Information (R)
377 Associated Language (R)

■ *Changes in content designator names:*

Subfields

‡i - Reference instruction phrase *changed to* Relationship information *in* Tracings and References fields 400-485, 500-585

UPDATE NO. 11 CHANGES

■ *New content designators:*

Subfield codes

‡k Beginning or single date created (NR) *in* 046 (Special Coded Dates)
‡l Ending date created (NR) *in* 046 (Special Coded Dates)
‡3 Materials specified (NR) *in* 034 (Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data)

Appendix F

Fields

- 380 Form of Work (R)
- 381 Other Distinguishing Characteristics of Work or Expression (R)
- 382 Medium of Performance (R)
- 383 Numeric Designation of Musical Work (R)
- 384 Key (NR)

■ *Changes in repeatability:*

Subfields

- ‡e Description conventions *in* field 040 (Cataloging Source): *from* NR to R

**Updates No. 10 & 11 (October 2009/February 2010) - MARC 21 Format
for Bibliographic Data**

The following page(s) is/ are included in Updates 10 & 11 (October 2009/February 2010) of the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*.

[blank page]

MARC 21

Format for **Bibliographic** Data

Updates No. 10 & 11
October 2009/February 2010

FILING INSTRUCTIONS

This update contains loose-leaf pages to be interfiled in the text of the 1999 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*. Some pages are new, representing newly-defined data elements in the format. However, most pages replace existing pages in the base text.

A listing of the substantive changes covered by this update is contained in Appendix G. Changes in the text are marked by a line (|) in the left margin. This mark is used to indicate places where deletions have occurred as well as additions and modifications to the text. This update title page should be filed behind the title page for the base text. Appendix G may be filed in any appropriate place of the text.

Prepared by
Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress

In cooperation with
Standards, Library and Archives Canada
Bibliographic Development, British Library

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
CATALOGING DISTRIBUTION SERVICE / WASHINGTON

LIBRARY AND ARCHIVES CANADA
OTTAWA

Available in the U.S.A. and other countries from:
Cataloging Distribution Service,
Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20541-4912 U.S.A.

Available in Canada from:
Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada
Ottawa, ON K1A 0S9 Canada

Copyright (c) 2010 by the Library of Congress except within the USA.
Copyright (c) Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (2005)
as represented by Library and Archives Canada.

This publication may be reproduced without permission provided the source is fully acknowledged.

Updates No. 10 and 11 (October 2009/February 2010) are interfiled with the base text of October 1999 as modified by:

Update No. 9 (October 2008)
Update No. 8 (October 2007)
Update No. 7 (October 2006)
Update No. 6 (October 2005)
Update No. 5 (October 2004)
Update No. 4 (October 2003)
Update No. 3 (October 2002)
Update No. 2 (October 2001)
Update No. 1 (October 2000).

MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data

SUMMARY STATEMENT OF CONTENT DESIGNATORS

LEADER**DIRECTORY****VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS***00X Control Fields-General Information*

001	Control Number
003	Control Number Identifier
005	Date and Time of Latest Transaction
006	Fixed-Length Data Elements -- Additional Material Characteristics
007	Physical Description Fixed Field
008	Fixed Length Data Elements

VARIABLE DATA FIELDS*01X-09X Control Information, Number and Codes-General Information*

010	Library of Congress Control Number
013	Patent Control Information
015	National Bibliography Number
016	National Bibliographic Agency Control Number
017	Copyright or Legal Deposit Number
018	Copyright Article-Fee Code
020	International Standard Book Number
022	International Standard Serial Number
024	Other Standard Identifier
025	Overseas Acquisition Number
027	Standard Technical Report Number
028	Publisher Number
030	CODEN Designation
031	Musical Incipits Information
032	Postal Registration Number
033	Date/Time and Place of an Event
034	Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data
035	System Control Number
036	Original Study Number for Computer Data files
037	Source of Acquisition
038	Record Content Licensor
040	Cataloging Source
041	Language Code
042	Authentication Code
043	Geographic Area Code
044	Country of Publishing/Producing Entity Code
045	Time Period of Content
046	Special Coded Dates
047	Form of Musical Composition Code
048	Number of Musical Instruments or Voices Code
050	Library of Congress Call Number
051	Library of Congress Copy, Issue, Offprint Statement
052	Geographic Classification
055	Classification Numbers Assigned in Canada
060	National Library of Medicine Call Number
061	National Library of Medicine Copy Statement
066	Character Sets Present
070	National Agricultural Library Call Number

Summary

071	National Agricultural Library Copy Statement
072	Subject Category Code
074	GPO Item Number
080	Universal Decimal Classification Number
082	Dewey Decimal Classification Number
083	Additional Dewey Decimal Classification Number
084	Other Classification Number
085	Synthesized Classification Number Components
086	Government Document Classification Number
088	Report Number
09X	Local Call Numbers

Heading Fields - General Information Sections

X00	Personal Names-General Information
X10	Corporate Names-General Information
X11	Meeting Names-General Information
X30	Uniform Titles-General Information

1XX Main Entries-General Information

100	Main Entry-Personal Name
110	Main Entry-Corporate Name
111	Main Entry-Meeting Name
130	Main Entry-Uniform Title

20X-24X Title and Title-Related Fields-General Information

210	Abbreviated Title
222	Key Title
240	Uniform Title
242	Translation of Title by Cataloging Agency
243	Collective Uniform Title
245	Title Statement
246	Varying Form of Title
247	Former Title

25X-28X Edition, Imprint, Etc. Fields-General Information

250	Edition Statement
254	Musical Presentation Statement
255	Cartographic Mathematical Data
256	Computer File Characteristics
257	Country of Producing Entity
258	Philatelic Issue Data
260	Publication, Distribution, etc. (Imprint)
263	Projected Publication Date
270	Address

3XX Physical Description, Etc. Fields-General Information

300	Physical Description
306	Playing Time
307	Hours, Etc.
310	Current Publication Frequency
321	Former Publication Frequency
336	Content Type
337	Media Type
338	Carrier Type
340	Physical Medium

342	Geospatial Reference Data
343	Planar Coordinate Data
351	Organization and Arrangement of Materials
352	Digital Graphic Representation
355	Security Classification Control
357	Originator Dissemination Control
362	Dates of Publication and/or Sequential Designation
363	Normalized Date and Sequential Designation
365	Trade Price
366	Trade Availability Information
380	Form of Work
381	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of Work or Expression
382	Medium of Performance
383	Numeric Designation of Musical Work
384	Key
4XX	<i>Series Statements-General Information</i>
490	Series Statement
5XX	<i>Notes-General Information</i>
500	General Note
501	With Note
502	Dissertation Note
504	Bibliography, Etc. Note
505	Formatted Contents Note
506	Restrictions on Access Note
507	Scale Note for Graphic Material
508	Creation/Production Credits Note
510	Citation/References Note
511	Participant or Performer Note
513	Type of Report and Period Covered Note
514	Data Quality Note
515	Numbering Peculiarities Note
516	Type of Computer File or Data Note
518	Date/Time and Place of an Event Note
520	Summary, Etc.
521	Target Audience Note
522	Geographic Coverage Note
524	Preferred Citation of Described Materials Note
525	Supplement Note
526	Study Program Information Note
530	Additional Physical Form Available Note
533	Reproduction Note
534	Original Version Note
535	Location of Originals/Duplicates Note
536	Funding Information Note
538	System Details Note
540	Terms Governing Use and Reproduction Note
541	Immediate Source of Acquisition Note
542	Information Relating to Copyright Status
544	Location of Other Archival Materials Note
545	Biographical or Historical Data
546	Language Note
547	Former Title Complexity Note
550	Issuing Body Note

Summary

552	Entity and Attribute Information Note
555	Cumulative Index/Finding Aids Note
556	Information about Documentation Note
561	Ownership and Custodial History
562	Copy and Version Identification Note
563	Binding Information
565	Case File Characteristics Note
567	Methodology Note
580	Linking Entry Complexity Note
581	Publications About Described Materials Note
583	Action Note
584	Accumulation and Frequency of Use Note
585	Exhibitions Note
586	Awards Note
588	Source of Description Note
59X	Local Notes

6XX *Subject Access Fields-General Information*

600	Subject Added Entry-Personal Name
610	Subject Added Entry-Corporate Name
611	Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name
630	Subject Added Entry-Uniform Title
648	Subject Added Entry-Chronological Term
650	Subject Added Entry-Topical Term
651	Subject Added Entry-Geographic Name
653	Index Term-Uncontrolled
654	Subject Added Entry-Faceted Topical Terms
655	Index Term-Genre/Form
656	Index Term-Occupation
657	Index Term-Function
658	Index Term-Curriculum Objective
662	Subject Added Entry-Hierarchical Place Name
69X	Local Subject Access Fields

70X-75X *Added Entries - General Information*

700	Added Entry-Personal Name
710	Added Entry-Corporate Name
711	Added Entry-Meeting Name
720	Added Entry-Uncontrolled Name
730	Added Entry-Uniform Title
740	Added Entry-Uncontrolled Related/Analytical Title
751	Added Entry-Geographic Name
752	Added Entry-Hierarchical Place Name
753	System Details Access to Computer Files
754	Added Entry-Taxonomic Identification

76X-78X *Linking Entries-General Information*

760	Main Series Entry
762	Subseries Entry
765	Original Language Entry
767	Translation Entry
770	Supplement/Special Issue Entry
772	Supplement Parent Entry
773	Host Item Entry
774	Constituent Unit Entry
775	Other Edition Entry

Summary

776	Additional Physical Form Entry
777	Issued With Entry
780	Preceding Entry
785	Succeeding Entry
786	Data Source Entry
787	Nonspecific Relationship Entry
<i>80X-840</i>	<i>Series Added Entries-General Information</i>
800	Series Added Entry-Personal Name
810	Series Added Entry-Corporate Name
811	Series Added Entry-Meeting Name
830	Series Added Entry-Uniform Title
<i>841-88X</i>	<i>Holdings, Alternate Graphics, Etc.-General Information</i>
850	Holding Institution
852	Location
856	Electronic Location and Access
880	Alternate Graphic Representation
882	Replacement Record Information
886	Foreign MARC Information Field
887	Non-MARC Information Field

Summary

[blank page]

006 Fixed-Length Data Elements-Additional Material (R) Characteristics

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined by form of material. Values for character position 006/00 are specified here. For descriptions 006/01-17 see the corresponding character positions 008/18-34 for Books, Computer files, Maps, Music, Continuing resources, Visual materials, and Mixed materials.

Character Positions (008/18-34 and 006/01-17)

	<u>Books</u>	15	Undefined
00	Form of material	16-17	Special format characteristics
	a Language material		
	t Manuscript language material		
01-04	Illustrations	00	<u>Mixed materials</u> Form of material
05	Target audience		p Mixed material
06	Form of item	01-05	Undefined
07-10	Nature of contents	06	Form of item
11	Government publication	07-17	Undefined
12	Conference publication		
13	Festschrift		<u>Music</u>
14	Index	00	Form of material
15	Undefined		c Notated music
16	Literary form		d Manuscript notated music
17	Biography		i Nonmusical sound recording
			j Musical sound recording
	<u>Computer files/Electronic resources</u>	01-02	Form of composition
00	Form of material	03	Format of music
	m Computer file/Electronic resource	04	Music parts
01-04	Undefined	05	Target audience
05	Target audience	06	Form of item
06	Form of item	07-12	Accompanying matter
07-08	Undefined	13-14	Literary text for sound recordings
09	Type of computer file	15	Undefined
10	Undefined	16	Transposition and arrangement
11	Government publication	17	Undefined
12-17	Undefined		<u>Continuing resources</u>
	<u>Maps</u>	00	Form of material
00	Form of material		s Serial/Integrating resource
	e Cartographic material	01	Frequency
	f Manuscript cartographic material	02	Regularity
01-04	Relief	03	Undefined
05-06	Projection	04	Type of continuing resource
07	Undefined	05	Form of original item
08	Type of cartographic material	06	Form of item
09-10	Undefined	07	Nature of entire work
11	Government publication	08-10	Nature of contents
12	Form of item	11	Government publication
13	Undefined	12	Conference publication
14	Index	13-15	Undefined
		16	Original alphabet or script of title
		17	Entry convention

006

	<i>Visual materials</i>	04	Undefined
00	Form of material	05	Target audience
	g Projected medium	06-10	Undefined
	k Two-dimensional nonprojectible graphic	11	Government publication
	o Kit	12	Form of item
	r Three-dimensional artifact or naturally occurring object	13-15	Undefined
		16	Type of visual material
		17	Technique
01-03	Running time		

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Eighteen character positions (00-17) that provide for coding information about special aspects of the item being cataloged that cannot be coded in field 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements). It is used in cases when an item has multiple characteristics (e.g., printed material with an accompanying cassette or a map that is issued serially) and to record the coded serial aspects of nontextual continuing resources.

It is also used to record the coded computer file aspects of electronic items coded in Leader/06 as something other than code m. The fixed-length data elements defined for field 006, like the corresponding field 008 data elements, are potentially useful for retrieval and data management purposes.

Field has a generic tree structure, whereby the code given in 006/00 (Form of material) determines the data elements defined for subsequent character positions. Except for code s (Serial/Integrating resource), the codes in field 006/00 correspond to those in Leader/06 (Type of record). For each occurrence of field 006, the codes defined for character positions 01-17 will be the same as those defined in the corresponding field 008, character positions 18-34. Configurations of field 006 are given in the following order: books, computer files/electronic resources, maps, music, continuing resources, visual materials, and mixed materials.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Data elements in field 006 are positionally defined. Character position 00 contains a code that identifies a form of material. The fill character (I) is not allowed in this position. The fill character may be used in any other character position when the cataloging agency makes no attempt to code the position.

Only character position 00 is described in this section. The other character positions are described in the corresponding field 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements) position descriptions. In all cases, field 006 positions 01-17 relate to positions 18-34 in one of the field 008 configurations. The relationship between field 006/00 (Form of material) codes and field 008 configurations is indicated below.

006/00 Form of material	Field 008/18-34 configuration
a - Language material	Books
c - Notated music	Music
d - Manuscript notated music	Music
e - Cartographic material	Maps
f - Manuscript cartographic material	Maps
g - Projected medium	Visual Materials
i - Nonmusical sound recording	Music
j - Musical sound recording	Music
k - Two-dimensional nonprojectable graphic	Visual Materials
m - Computer file/Electronic resource	Computer Files
o - Kit	Visual Materials
p - Mixed material	Mixed Materials
r - Three-dimensional artifact or naturally occurring object	Visual Materials

006/00 Form of material
s - Serial/Integrating resource
t - Manuscript language material

Field 008/18-34 configuration
Continuing Resources
Books

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

CODES FOR 006/00

a - Language material

Coded data elements relating to nonserial language material.

c - Notated music

Coded data elements relating to notated music.

d - Manuscript notated music

Coded data elements relating to manuscript notated music.

e - Cartographic material

Coded data elements relating to nonmanuscript cartographic material.

f - Manuscript cartographic material

Coded data elements relating to manuscript cartographic material.

g - Projected medium

Coded data elements relating to a projected medium.

i - Nonmusical sound recording

Coded data elements relating to a nonmusical sound recording.

j - Musical sound recording

Coded data elements relating to a musical sound recording.

k - Two-dimensional nonprojectable graphic

Coded data elements relating to a two-dimensional nonprojectable graphic.

m - Computer file/Electronic resource

Coded data elements relating to either a computer file or an electronic resource in form.

o - Kit

Coded data elements relating to a kit.

p - Mixed material

Coded data elements relating to mixed material.

r - Three-dimensional artifact or naturally occurring object

Coded data elements relating to a three-dimensional artifact or naturally occurring object.

s - Serial/Integrating resource

Coded data elements relating to the control aspects of a non-printed continuing resource. For serially-controlled printed language material, field 008 is used.

006

t - Manuscript language material

Coded data elements relating to manuscript language material.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

006 Fixed-Length Data Elements-Additional Material Characteristics [NEW, 1995]
See Field 008 for history of character positions and values.

In 2002, the Computer Files 006 field was renamed "Computer Files/Electronic Resources." The Serials 006 field was renamed "Continuing Resources."

007 Map

(R)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

00	Category of material	|n	Vellum
	a	p	Plaster
		q	Flexible base photographic, positive
01	Specific material designation	r	Flexible base photographic, negative
	d	s	Non-flexible base photographic, positive
	g	t	Non-flexible base photographic, negative
	j	u	Unknown
	k	|v	Leather
	q	|w	Parchment
	r	y	Other photographic medium
	s	z	Other
	u	|	No attempt to code
	y		
	z		
		05	Type of reproduction
		f	Facsimile
		n	Not applicable
		u	Unknown
		z	Other
		|	No attempt to code
02	Undefined		
03	Color		
	a		
	c		
		06	Production/reproduction details
		a	Photocopy, blueline print
		b	Photocopy
		c	Pre-production
		d	Film
		u	Unknown
		z	Other
		|	No attempt to code
04	Physical medium		
	a		
	b		
	c		
	d		
	e		
	f		
	g		
	|i		
	j		
	|l		
		07	Positive/negative aspect
		a	Positive
		b	Negative
		m	Mixed polarity
		n	Not applicable
		|	No attempt to code

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

When field 007/00 contains code a, it contains special coded information about the physical characteristics of cartographic material other than a globe.

007 - Map

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

00 - Category of material

a - Map

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the category of material to which the item belongs is **map**. Code a is used for all cartographic materials except globes. Code a is used when 008/25 (Type of cartographic material) contains code a, b, c, or e. A fill character (I) is not allowed in this position.

01 - Specific material designation

Special class of cartographic material to which the item belongs.

Usually the class of physical object, e.g., a diagram.

d - Atlas

Atlases generally contain maps, related text, and other cartographic information.

g - Diagram

Map characterized by simplified, or schematic, representation.

Diagrams are graphic representations of numerical data, or of the course or results of an action or process.

j - Map

Two-dimensional map.

Defined as a representation normally to scale and on a flat medium, of a selection of material or abstract features on, or in relation to, the surface of the earth or of another celestial body.

k - Profile

Scale representation of the intersection of a vertical surface (which may or may not be a plane) with the surface of the ground or with that of a conceptual three-dimensional model of phenomena having continuous distribution (e.g., rainfall).

q - Model

Three-dimensional representation of a real object.

Object may be the exact size of the original or to scale.

r - Remote-sensing image

Image produced by a recording device that is not in physical or intimate contact with the object under study.

s - Section

Scaled representation of a vertical surface (commonly a plane) displaying both the the intersection profile or some conceptual model, and the underlying structures, e.g., geological section.

u - Unspecified

y - View

Perspective representation of the landscape shown as if it were projected onto an oblique plane.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - **No attempt to code**

02 - Undefined

Contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

03 - Color

Whether the item is in one color or multicolored.

a - One color

c - Multicolored

| - **No attempt to code**

04 - Physical medium

Material out of which the cartographic item is made.

a - Paper

Any kind of cellulose-based paper.

b - Wood

Material which is based on wood particles or fibers may or may not be considered wood. Consider particle board *wood*.

c - Stone

d - Metal

e - Synthetic

Man-made substances other than textiles, plastic, and vinyl.

f - Skin

Excludes leather, parchment, and vellum.

Synthetic materials that are made to resemble animal skin are coded as *synthetic*.

g - Textiles

Used for all fabrics, whether made from natural or synthetic fibers.

| **i - Plastic**

j - Glass

| **l - Vinyl**

| **n - Vellum**

Fine-grained unsplit lambskin, kidskin, or calfskin prepared especially for writing or drawing on.

007 - Map

p - Plaster

Includes mixtures of ground solids and plaster.

q - Flexible base photographic, positive

Material is a flexible base photographic medium designed to render a positive image.

r - Flexible base photographic, negative

Material is a flexible base photographic medium designed to render a negative image.

s - Non-flexible base photographic, positive

Material is a non-flexible base photographic medium designed to render a positive image.

t - Non-flexible base photographic, negative

Material is a non-flexible base photographic medium designed to render a negative image.

u - Unknown

v - Leather

Animal skin dressed for use.

w - Parchment

Skin of a sheep or goat prepared for writing on.

y - Other photographic medium

Photographic medium other than those covered by one of the more specific codes q, r, s, and t.

z - Other

Physical medium for which none of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

05 - Type of reproduction

Whether the cartographic item is a facsimile or other type of reproduction.

f - Facsimile

Facsimile which resembles the original in all aspects possible, but it is not the original.

n - Not applicable

Item is not a reproduction.

u - Unknown

Type of reproduction is not known.

z - Other

Type of reproduction for which none of the other codes is applicable.

| - No attempt to code

06 - Production/reproduction details

Photographic technique used to produce the cartographic item.

a - Photocopy, blueline print

Has a blueline image on a white background and is reproduced by the whiteprint process.

Bluelines are made from vellum, film positives, or any translucent or transparent original on which an image has been made.

b - Photocopy**c - Pre-production**

Pre-production (proof) copy intended for review.

d - Film

Film copy of the original.

u - Unknown

Production/reproduction details are not known.

z - Other

Production/reproduction details for which none of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code**07 - Positive/negative aspect**

Positive/negative aspect of the photocopy or film of the cartographic item.

This characteristic is also referred to as polarity.

a - Positive

Polarity is positive, i.e., lines and characters are dark on light background.

b - Negative

Polarity is negative, i.e., lines and characters are light on dark background.

m - Mixed polarity

Mixture of positive and negative images.

n - Not applicable

Item is not a photocopy or film.

| - No attempt to code**■ EXAMPLES**

- 007** aj#canzn
[Item is a map (007/00 and 01), in color (03), and on paper (04)]
- 007** ay#cafzn
[Item is a map (007/00) with a view (01), in color (03), on paper (04). It is a facsimile (05)]
- 007** aj#aazba
[Item is a map (007/00 and 01) that is one color (03), on paper (04), a photocopy (06) with a positive polarity (07)]

007 - Map

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field length - For the category of material **map**, field 007 should consist of eight character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

007/01 Specific material designation [CAN/MARC only]

In 1997, the following values were made obsolete: a (Aerial chart); b (Aerial remote-sensing image); c (Anamorphic map); e (Celestial chart); f (Chart); h (Hydrographic chart); i (Imaginative map); j (Orthophoto); m (Photo mosaic (controlled)); n (Photo mosaic (uncontrolled)); o (Photomap); p (Plan); t (Space remote-sensing image); v (Terrestrial remote-sensing image); w (Topographical drawing); x (Topographical print).

007/02 Original versus reproduction aspect [OBSOLETE, 1997] [USMARC only]

Defined codes were: f (Facsimile), o (Original), r (Reproduction), and u (Unknown).

007/03 Color

b Multicolored [OBSOLETE, 1982]

007/04 Physical medium

e Synthetic [REDEFINED, 2009]

Prior to 2010 this code included plastic and vinyl in its definition.

f Skin [REDEFINED, 2009]

Prior to 2010 this code included parchment, vellum, and leather in its definition.

i Plastic [NEW, 2009]

l Vinyl [NEW, 2009]

n Vellum [NEW, 2009]

v Leather [NEW, 2009]

w Parchment [NEW, 2009]

007/07 Positive/negative aspect

u Unknown [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

007 Electronic Resource

(R)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

- | | | | |
|----|---|---------|--|
| 00 | Category of material | u | Unknown |
| | c Electronic resource | v | 8 in. |
| | | z | Other |
| 01 | Specific material designation | \| | No attempt to code |
| | a Tape cartridge | 05 | Sound |
| | b Chip cartridge | # | No sound (silent) |
| | c Computer optical disc cartridge | a | Sound |
|  | \|d Computer disc, type unspecified | u | Unknown |
|  | \|e Computer disc cartridge, type unspecified | \| | No attempt to code |
| | f Tape cassette | 0608 | Image bit depth |
| | h Tape reel | 001-999 | Exact bit depth |
| | j Magnetic disk | mmm | Multiple |
|  | \|k Computer card | nnn | Not applicable |
| | m Magneto-optical disc | --- | Unknown |
| | o Optical disc | \|\|\| | No attempt to code |
| | r Remote | 09 | File formats |
| | u Unspecified | a | One file format |
| | z Other | m | Multiple file formats |
|  | \| No attempt to code | u | Unknown |
|  |  | \| | No attempt to code |
| 02 | Undefined | 10 | Quality assurance target(s) |
| 03 | Color | a | Absent |
| | a One color | n | Not applicable |
| | b Black-and-white | p | Present |
| | c Multicolored | u | Unknown |
| | g Gray scale | \| | No attempt to code |
| | m Mixed | 11 | Antecedent/Source |
| | n Not applicable | a | File reproduced from original |
| | u Unknown | b | File reproduced from microform |
| | z Other | c | File reproduced from an electronic resource |
|  | \| No attempt to code | d | File reproduced from an intermediate (not microform) |
| 04 | Dimensions | m | Mixed |
| | a 3 1/2 in. | n | Not applicable |
| | e 12 in. | u | Unknown |
| | g 4 3/4 in. or 12 cm. | \| | No attempt to code |
| | i 1 1/8 x 2 3/8 in. | | |
| | j 3 7/8 x 2 1/2 in. | | |
| | n Not applicable | | |
| | o 5 1/4 in. | | |

007 - Electronic Resource

- | | | | |
|----|----------------------|----|----------------------|
| 12 | Level of compression | 13 | Reformatting Quality |
| a | Uncompressed | a | Access |
| b | Lossless | n | Not applicable |
| d | Lossy | p | Preservation |
| m | Mixed | r | Replacement |
| u | Unknown | u | Unknown |
| \| | No attempt to code | \| | No attempt to code |
-

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

When field 007/00 contains code c, it contains special coded information about the physical characteristics of an electronic resource.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

00 - Category of material

c - Electronic resource

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the category of material to which the item belongs is **electronic resource** (e.g, programs, data files, imagefiles, digitized audio and video tapes, etc.), which usually consist of digitized machine-readable data, program code, etc. intended to be accessed, processed, or executed by a computer. A fill character (|) is not allowed in this position.

01 - Specific material designation

Special class of material (usually the class of physical object) to which an item belongs (e.g., a magnetic disk).

a - Tape cartridge

Removable module containing secondary storage medium such as magnetic tape or magnetic disks.

b - Chip cartridge

Removable module containing a miniaturized electronic circuit, mass-produced on a tiny chip or wafer of silicon, designed to provide additional processing or memory capacity to a computer.

c - Computer optical disc cartridge

Removable module containing one or more nonmagnetic discs used to store digital information.

d - Computer disc, type unspecified

A disc whose type is not specified.

e - Computer disc cartridge, type unspecified

A disc cartridge whose type is not specified.

f - Tape cassette

Removable module, somewhat like an audio cassette, that contains magnetic tape that can be written on and read from by a tape drive.

h - Tape reel

Removable spool containing magnetic tape that can be written to and read from by a tape drive.

j - Magnetic disk

Digital information storage medium usually consisting of a thin Mylar disk coated with a magnetic material that permits the recording of data. Magnetic disks come in various sizes. They are also known as floppy disks, stiffy disks, computer diskettes, or floppy diskettes.

k - Computer card

m - Magneto-optical disc

Erasable or semi-erasable storage medium, similar to a CD-ROM disc, capable of storing data at a very high density. The disc is written to and read from using a laser beam used to heat the recording surface to a point at which regions of the surface of the disk become magnetically aligned to store bits of data.

o - Optical disc

Medium that uses a series of laser-burned micron-sized holes (pits) on a special recording surface to store data. Recorded data is read optically. These discs are usually a read-only medium. Commonly found computer optical disc formats include: CD-A, CD-I, CD-R, CD-ROM, CD-ROM-XA, DVD-ROM and Photo CD.

r - Remote

Electronic resource that is accessed, processed, executed, etc. remotely. In this case the electronic resource is used via input/output devices connected electronically to a computer. Frequently this involves connection through a computer network. The specific material designation of the remotely accessed physical item (e.g., a CD-ROM accessed remotely through a network) is not specified when code r is used in 007/01.

u - Unspecified

Special material designation for the electronic resource is not specified, e.g., it may be an electronic resource that changes its medium over time.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

02 - Undefined

Contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

03 - Color

Whether the item is one color or multicolored.

a - One color

Images are intended to be produced in a single color other than black (e.g. pink and white, brown and white). If the images are black with white use code b.

b - Black-and-white

Images are intended to be produced in black and white. ASCII files, which do not include color, are coded as b.

007 - Electronic Resource

c - Multicolored

Image is printed or executed in more than one color. Code c is used for colorphotographic processes.

g - Gray scale

Image is produced with degrees of dark to light from black to gray to white.

m - Mixed

Work or collection is a combination of one color, black-and-white, multicolored, handcolored, and/or other images.

n - Not applicable

Color is not applicable to the electronic resource, usually because it does not involve anything visual (e.g., digitally encoded audio data).

u - Unknown

Color characteristics of an item are not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

04 - Dimensions

Dimensions of the medium used to encode the electronic resource.

Only the most common dimensions are indicated. In many cases the dimensions apply to the container in which a magnetic or optical medium is encased. The field 007/04 code corresponding to the dimensions given in the description of the item are used. If no code exactly matches the dimensions of the medium (or container), code z is used.

a - 3 1/2 in.

Diameter of the medium is 3 1/2 inches. It usually refers to the diameter of a magnetic disk.

e - 12 in.

Diameter of the medium is 12 inches. It usually refers to optical or magneto-optical disc.

g - 4 3/4 in. or 12 cm.

Diameter of the medium is 4 3/4 inches (or 12 cm.) It usually refers to optical or magneto-optical disc.

i - 1 1/8 x 2 3/8 in.

Dimensions of the container used for the medium are 1 1/8 x 2 3/8 inches. It usually refers to cartridges.

j - 3 7/8 x 2 1/2 in.

Dimensions of the container used for the medium are 3 7/8 x 2 1/2 inches. It usually refers to cartridges.

n - Not applicable

Physical dimensions are not applicable to the electronic resource. This code is appropriate for remote electronic resources and electronic resources whose specific medium varies (coded u in byte 01).

o - 5 1/4 in.

Diameter of the medium is 5 1/4 inches. It usually refers to the dimensions of a magnetic disk.

u - Unknown

Dimensions of the medium used for the electronic resource are not known.

v - 8 in.

Diameter of the medium is 8 inches. It usually refers to the diameter of a magnetic disk or optical disc.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

05 - Sound

Whether the production of sound is an integral part of an electronic resource.

- No sound (silent)

Not intended to produce sound.

a - Sound

Includes digitally encoded sound or is intended to produce sound.

u - Unknown

Presence or absence of sound or the ability of an electronic resource to produce sound is not known.

| - No attempt to code

06-08 - Image bit depth

Exact bit depth of the scanned image(s) that comprise the electronic resource, or a three-character alphabetic code which indicates that the exact bit depth cannot be recorded. Since only exact bit depth is useful, coding should not include missing digits represented by hyphens (-).

Bit depth is determined by the number of bits used to define each pixel representing the image.

001-999 - Exact bit depth

Image bit depth should be recorded if a single numeric value applies to all files, e.g., all files were scanned in 24-bit color. The numeric value of the image bit depth, using three digits, is right justified with leading zeros (e.g., 001, 024).

mmm - Multiple

Comprised of images that have been scanned and captured at more than one bit depth, such as a volume with text and color images where the text has been scanned as bitonal (1-bit) images and the color plates have been scanned and captured using 24-bit color.

nnn - Not applicable

Bit-depth is not applicable to this electronic resource because there are no images.

--- - Unknown

Bit depth level of the image(s) comprising the electronic resource are not known.

007 - Electronic Resource

||| - No attempt to code

09 - File formats

Whether the file(s) which comprise the electronic resource are of the same format or type for digitally reformatted materials.

Values do not indicate specific types of file formats, which may be contained invariable fields in the record. The information indicates the number of file formats used.

a - One file format

File(s) which comprise(s) the electronic resource are of the same format or type (e.g., all .jpg; all .tif; all .txt; all .wav; all .mpg; etc.).

m - Multiple file formats

Files which comprise the electronic resource are of at least 2 different formats (e.g., .jpg and .tif; .tif and .txt; .sgml and .wav; etc.).

u - Unknown

Format(s) of the file(s) which comprise(s) the electronic resource are not known.

| - No attempt to code

10 - Quality assurance target(s)

Whether quality assurance targets have been included appropriately at the time of reformatting/creation of the electronic resource.

Targets are standard reference points which can be interpreted by a human or machine and used to measure resolution, color, faithfulness of representation to the original, etc.

a - Absent

Quality assurance targets were not included at the time of reformatting and/or are not present in the electronic resource.

n - Not applicable

Inclusion of quality assurance targets is not applicable to this electronic resource.

p - Present

One or more quality assurance targets were appropriately included at the time of reformatting and are present in the electronic resource. Commonly found quality control targets for scanning include the Kodak Q13 or Q14 Color Separation Guide and Gray Scale; Kodak Q60 Color Input Target; AIIM Scanning Test Chart #2; and the RITA Alphanumeric Resolution Test Object. Commonly found quality assurance targets for re-recording/transfer of audio files include reference and azimuth tones.

u - Unknown

Presence of quality assurance targets in the electronic resource is not known.

| - No attempt to code

11 - Antecedent/Source

Information about the source of a digital file important to the creation, use and management of digitally reformatted materials.

a - File reproduced from original

Content (image, audio, or video) comprising the electronic resource has been created by digitization of the original item. Common examples of original objects include: printed or manuscript texts and/or images that are made on paper or on vellum; photographic prints (and in some instances photographic negatives, depending on creator's intent); analog audio formats; and video formats. This value does not pertain to microform even if microform is the original.

b - File reproduced from microform

Content comprising the electronic resource has been created by scanning from microform (16mm microfilm, 35mm microfilm, 105mm microfiche, microcard, micro-opaque, etc.).

c - File reproduced from an electronic resource

Electronic resource has been created or copied from an existing electronic resource (e.g., to generate new copies or derivative copies with lower resolution or smaller file size; to process an existing file with Optical Character Recognition - OCR - software; etc.).

d - File reproduced from an intermediate (not microform)

Content comprising the electronic resource has been created by reformatting/digitizing from an intermediate other than microform. Common examples of non-microform intermediates for visual and textual materials are: photocopies, 35 mm film, transparencies, slides, 2nd generation video tape, etc. A common example of an intermediate for audio materials is 2nd generation analog tapes.

m - Mixed

Images comprising the electronic resource have been created from mixed sources (portions scanned from original item, portions scanned from microfilm, etc.).

n - Not applicable

Antecedent or source are not applicable to this electronic resource. This code is inappropriate for electronic resources other than those created during a reformatting process.

u - Unknown

Antecedent or source of this reformatted electronic resource is not known.

| - No attempt to code

12 - Level of compression

Kind of compression the electronic resource has been subjected to.

Used to judge the fidelity of the file to the original.

a - Uncompressed

Electronic resource has not been compressed through the use of any compression technique.

b - Lossless

Electronic resource has been compressed and the compression type used is "lossless." Lossless compression will allow an electronic resource to be compressed and decompressed with absolute fidelity each time. To be considered lossless, no informational loss may occur during this process. An example of a lossless compression scheme would be TIFF Group 4 compression employed on bitonal image files.

007 - Electronic Resource

d - Lossy

Electronic resource has been compressed and the compression type used is "lossy." Lossy compression schemes employ techniques which average or discard some of the encoded digital information. When the file is decompressed, it will not be an exact replica of the original file. Examples of lossy compression schemes include JPEG, and Kodak ImagePac (Photo CD), AC-3 (Dolby Digital) and MPEG.

m - Mixed

Mixture of techniques has been used to compress various parts of the electronic resource.

u - Unknown

Compression techniques are not known.

| - No attempt to code

13 - Reformatting Quality

Reformatting quality of the electronic resource; an overall assessment of the physical quality of the electronic resource in relation to its intended use. It can be used to judge the level of quality of a file, and an institution's commitment to maintain its availability over time.

a - Access

Electronic resource is of a quality that will support current, electronic access to the original item (reference use), but is not sufficient to serve as a preservation copy.

Examples of electronic resources created for access purposes may include images created for a temporary, online exhibition (possibly to mirror an in-house installation); compressed, lower resolution versions of higher-quality master files that allow for easier transmission and access over the Internet; video converted to MPEG-2 for Internet access; photos which have been scanned at lower resolutions to create an online browsing tool for a collection; or articles scanned as a part of an E-Reserve collection which will be discarded in accordance with previous copyright agreements which specify a time limit on the retention of the electronic resource.

n - Not applicable

Reformatting quality is not applicable to the electronic resource.

p - Preservation

Electronic resource was created via reformatting to help preserve the original item.

Capture and storage techniques associated with preservation files ensure high-quality, long-term electronic resources that warrant long-term protection.

r - Replacement

Electronic resource is of very high quality and, when printed out, viewed on screen or played via a listening device could serve as a replacement should the original be lost, damaged, or destroyed.

u - Unknown

Reformatting quality of the electronic resource is not known.

| - No attempt to code

■ EXAMPLES

- 007** *cj#ca#*
[Item is a computer program on 3 1/2 inch diskette (007/00, 01, and 04), which supports a color (03) video interface but no sound (05).]
- 007** *co#cga*
[Item is interactive software and data on a 4 3/4 inch optical disc (CD-ROM)(007/00, 01, and 04) intended to be viewed in color (03) with sound (05).]
- 007** *cr#bn#*
[Item is a textual electronic journal available remotely (007/01), formatted as ASCII text (007/03).]
- 007** *cu#gn#008apabp*
[Item is a digitized version of an original, reformatted for preservation purposes(007/00, 11, 13). The electronic resource is comprised of grayscale TIFF images only (no sound) which were scanned at a bit depth of 8 bits per pixel, including quality control targets and is compressed using lossless compression (03, 05, 06-08, 09, 10, 12). Because this file was created for preservation purposes, the medium on which the file is stored will vary as it is refreshed and migrated to new systems to remain accessible(01, 04).]
- 007** *co#ngannaadda*
[Item is an access version of an audio file which had been digitally reformatted from the 2nd generation analog tape and is stored on a CD (007/00, 01, 04, 05, 09, 11, 13). Quality assurance target tones are not present on this mpeg-compressed access copy(10, 12). Because it is not an image or video file, color and bit depth aspects are not applicable (03, 06-08).]
- 007** *cu#gn#008apabr*
[Item is a digitized version of an original, reformatted (and replaced) during preservation (007/00, 11, 13). The electronic resource is comprised of grayscale TIFF images only (no sound) which were scanned at a bit depth of 8 bits per pixel, including quality control targets and is compressed using lossless compression (03, 05, 06-08, 09, 10, 12). Because this file was created to replace the original volumes, the medium on which the file is stored will vary as it is refreshed and migrated to new systems to remain accessible (01, 04).]

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field length - Field 007 for the category of material **electronic resource** currently has fourteen character positions defined for it. The first six positions (007/00-05) should always be used. An institution may choose additionally to code positions following 007/05 up to and including 007/13 if providing information about digitally reformatted or preserved materials.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

In 2002, the Computer File 007 field was renamed "Electronic Resource."

007/00 Category of material

c Computer file

In 2002, code c was renamed to "Electronic resource."

007/01 Specific material designation

d Computer disc, type unspecified [NEW, 2009]

e Computer disc cartridge, type unspecified [NEW, 2009]

k Computer card [NEW, 2009]

007 - Electronic Resource

007/02 *Original versus reproduction aspect* [OBSOLETE, 1997] [USMARC only]
Defined codes were: f (Facsimile), o (Original), r (Reproduction), and u (Unknown).

007/03 *Color*

b *Black-and-white* [NEW, 1999]

h *Hand coloured* [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

007/06-08 *Image bit depth* [NEW, 1999]

007/09 *File formats* [NEW, 1999]

007/10 *Quality assurance targets* [NEW, 1999]

007/11 *Antecedent/source* [NEW, 1999]

c *File produced from a computer file*

In 2002, code c was renamed "File produced from an electronic resource."

007/12 *Level of compression* [NEW, 1999]

007/13 *Reformatting quality* [NEW, 1999]

007 Globe

(R)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

00 Category of material	b Wood
d Globe	c Stone
	d Metal
01 Specific material designation	e Synthetic
a Celestial globe	f Skin
b Planetary or lunar globe	g Textile
c Terrestrial globe	i Plastic
e Earth moon globe	l Vinyl
u Unspecified	n Vellum
z Other	p Plaster
| No attempt to code	u Unknown
	v Leather
02 Undefined	w Parchment
	z Other
	| No attempt to code
03 Color	05 Type of reproduction
a One color	f Facsimile
c Multicolored	n Not applicable
| No attempt to code	u Unknown
	z Other
04 Physical medium	| No attempt to code
a Paper	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

When field 007/00 contains code d, it contains special coded information about the physical characteristics of a globe.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ CHARACTER POSITIONS****00 - Category of material****d - Globe**

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the category of material to which the item belongs is **globe**, which is defined as the model of a celestial body, usually the Earth or the celestial sphere, depicted on the surface of a sphere. Code d is used when 008/25 (Type of cartographic material) contains code d. A fill character (|) is not allowed in this position.

007 - Globe

01 - Specific material designation

Special class of material (usually the class of physical object) to which an item belongs, e.g., a celestial globe.

a - Celestial globe

Model relating to the sky of visible heavens (sun, stars, etc.) depicted on the surface of a sphere.

b - Planetary or lunar globe

Lunar globe (other than Earth) or a moon depicted on the surface of a sphere.

c - Terrestrial globe

Model of the Earth depicted on the surface of a sphere.

e - Earth moon globe

Model of the Earth's moon depicted on the surface of a sphere.

u - Unspecified

Special class of globe is unspecified.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

02 - Undefined

Contains blank (#) or a fill character (|).

03 - Color

Whether the globe is in one color or multicolored.

a - One color

c - Multicolored

| - No attempt to code

04 - Physical medium

Material out of which the globe is made.

a - Paper

Any kind of cellulose-based paper.

b - Wood

Material is wood. A material that is based on wood particles or fibers may or may not be considered wood. Consider particle board *wood*.

c - Stone

d - Metal

e - Synthetic

Man-made substances other than textiles, plastic, and vinyl.

f - Skin

Excludes leather, parchment, and vellum.

Synthetic materials that are made to resemble animal skin are coded as *synthetic*.

g - Textile

Used for all fabrics, whether made from natural or synthetic fibers.

i - Plastic

l - Vinyl

n - Vellum

Fine-grained unsplit lambskin, kidskin, or calfskin prepared especially for writing or drawing on.

p - Plaster

Mixtures of ground solids and plaster are also coded as plaster.

u - Unknown

Physical medium of which the globe is made is not known.

v - Leather

Animal skin dressed for use.

w - Parchment

Skin of a sheep or goat prepared for writing on.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

05 - Type of reproduction

Whether the globe is a facsimile or other type of reproduction.

f - Facsimile

Facsimile which resembles the original in all aspects possible, but it is not the original.

n - Not applicable

Not a reproduction.

u - Unknown

Type of reproduction is not known.

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

007 - Globe

■ EXAMPLES

- 007** dc#cen
[Item is a globe (007/00) which is terrestrial (01), in color (03), made of plastic (04).]
- 007** db#cen
[Item is globe (007/00) of the moon (01); in color (03), made of plastic (04).]
-

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field length - For the category of material **globe**, field 007 should consist of six character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

007/01 *Specific material designation*

d *Satellite globe (of our solar system), excluding the earth moon [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]*

007/02 *Original versus reproduction aspect [OBSOLETE, 1997] [USMARC only]*

Defined codes were: f (Facsimile), o (Original), r (Reproduction), and u (Unknown).

007/03 *Color*

b *Multicolored [OBSOLETE, 1982]*

007/04 *Physical medium*

e *Synthetic [REDEFINED, 2009]*

Prior to 2010 this code included plastic and vinyl in its definition.

f *Skin [REDEFINED, 2009]*

Prior to 2010 this code included parchment, vellum, and leather in its definition.

i *Plastic [NEW, 2009]*

l *Vinyl [NEW, 2009]*

n *Vellum [NEW, 2009]*

v *Leather [NEW, 2009]*

w *Parchment [NEW, 2009]*

007 Projected Graphic

(R)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 00 Category of material <ul style="list-style-type: none"> g Projected graphic 01 Specific material designation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c Filmstrip cartridge d Filmstrip \|f Filmstrip, type unspecified o Filmstrip roll s Slide t Transparency u Unspecified z Other \| No attempt to code 02 Undefined 03 Color <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a One color b Black-and-white c Multicolored h Hand colored m Mixed n Not applicable u Unknown z Other \| No attempt to code 04 Base of emulsion <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d Glass e Synthetic j Safety film k Film base, other than safety film m Mixed collection o Paper u Unknown z Other \| No attempt to code 05 Sound on medium or separate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> # No sound (silent) a Sound on medium | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b Sound separate from medium u Unknown \| No attempt to code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 06 Medium for sound <ul style="list-style-type: none"> # No sound (silent) a Optical sound track on motion picture film b Magnetic sound track on motion picture film c Magnetic audio tape in cartridge d Sound disc e Magnetic audio tape on reel f Magnetic audio tape in cassette g Optical and magnetic sound track on motion picture film h Videotape i Videodisc u Unknown z Other \| No attempt to code 07 Dimensions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Standard 8 mm. film width b Super 8 mm./single 8 mm. film width c 9.5 mm. film width d 16 mm. film width e 28 mm. film width f 35 mm. film width g 70 mm. film width j 2x2 in. or 5x5 cm. slide k 2 1/4 x 2 1/4 in. or 6x6 cm. slide s 4x5 in. or 10x13 cm. transparency t 5x7 in. or 13x18 cm. transparency u Unknown v 8x10 in. or 21x26 cm. transparency w 9x9 in. or 23x23 cm. transparency x 10x10 in. or 26x26 cm. transparency y 7x7 in. or 18x18 cm. transparency z Other \| No attempt to code |
|--|--|

007 - Projected Graphic

08	Secondary support material	j	Metal and glass
#	No secondary support	k	Synthetic and glass
c	Cardboard	m	Mixed collection
d	Glass	u	Unknown
e	Synthetic	z	Other
h	Metal	|	No attempt to code

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

When field 007/00 contains code g, it contains special coded information about the physical characteristics of projected graphic material.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

00 - Category of material

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the category of material to which the item belongs is **projected graphic** which is defined as a two-dimensional representation intended to be projected without motion by means of an optical device, for example, a filmstrip, slide, or transparency. A fill character (I) is not allowed in this position.

g - Projected graphic

01 - Specific material designation

Special class of projected graphic to which the item belongs, e.g., a slide.

c - Filmstrip cartridge

Item is a filmstrip which is encased in a cartridge and which has the ends joined to form a loop. A *cartridge* denotes a permanently encased single reel of film or tape that has the ends joined together to form a loop that provides playback without rewinding.

d - Filmstrip

Item is a short filmstrip not in a roll.

f - Filmstrip, type unspecified

Item is a filmstrip other than a filmstrip cartridge, filmstrip, or filmstrip roll or is an unspecified type of filmstrip.

o - Filmstrip roll

Item is a filmstrip roll, a roll of film on which still images are recorded, presenting an integrated communication. It is intended for projection frame by frame.

s - Slide

Slides are transparent material on which there is a two-dimensional image, usually held in a mount, and designed for use in a projector or viewer.

Includes modern stereographs, e.g., Viewmaster reels.

t - Transparency

Transparencies are made of transparent material on which an image is recorded. They are designed for use with a projector or a light box. X-rays are included here.

u - Unspecified

Special material designation for the projected graphic is unspecified.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

02 - Undefined

Contains blank (#) or a fill character (|).

03 - Color

Color characteristics of a projected graphic.

a - One color

Image is printed or executed in a single color (i.e., monochromatic). In projected graphic materials, it is used only for transparency sets.

Does not include black.

b - Black-and-white

Image is printed or executed in black-and-white. Refers to monochrome photographic materials (including film) and videorecordings, or to overhead transparencies executed in black-and-white.

Does not include tinted, toned, or stained items.

c - Multicolored

Image is printed or executed in more than one color. The color is a result of a number of processes, either photographic or electronic, capable of reproducing a reasonable range of hues, or of original application of color materials, for example, paint. Code c is used for color photographic processes (motion pictures, filmstrips, transparencies, and slides), color videorecordings, or multicolored overhead transparencies.

h - Hand colored

Image, produced by a printing or photographic process, is hand colored. Code h is rarely used with commercial audiovisual materials since these are not typically issued with hand coloring.

m - Mixed

Work or collection is a combination of one color, black and white, colored, hand colored, and/or other images. Information for this data element is based on one of the following phrases: *some col.*, *some b&w*, *25 gold toned*, *col. with b&w sequences*, etc. which usually appears in other parts of the MARC record.

n - Not applicable

Item has no images. Used, for example, when the item in hand is sound track film intended to accompany visual images not actually present.

u - Unknown

Color characteristics of the projected graphic are not known.

007 - Projected Graphic

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

Includes tinted, toned (e.g., sepia toned photographic items), or stained items.

| - No attempt to code

04 - Base of emulsion

Type of material for the base of the emulsion of a photonegative, filmstrip, slide, or transparency.

d - Glass

Primary support/base of the emulsion material is glass.

e - Synthetic

Primary support/base of the emulsion material is synthetic (e.g., plastics, vinyl, etc.). Most commercially issued overhead transparency sets have a synthetic primary support material, unless known to be otherwise.

j - Safety film

Primary support/base of the emulsion material is safety (i.e., not nitrate) film. For all commercially issued filmstrips and slide sets, assume that the base of the emulsion is safety film unless known to be otherwise.

k - Film base, other than safety film

Primary support/base of the emulsion material is not safety film.

m - Mixed collection

Primary support/base of the emulsion material varies for different items in a collection. Typically this would be used for groups of projected graphics on various bases.

o - Paper

Primary base of the emulsion is any kind of cellulose-based paper.

u - Unknown

Primary support/base of the emulsion material for the projected graphic is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

05 - Sound on medium or separate

Whether the sound is on or is separate from the projected graphic (i.e., on the accompanying material).

- No sound (silent)

For **filmstrips**, **slides**, and **transparencies**, code # is used when there is no information about sound in subfield \ddot{b} or \ddot{e} of field 300. For **kits** containing any of the above items, the abbreviation *si* or the fact that there is no statement pertaining to sound in field 500 (General Note) justifies use of code #.

a - Sound on medium

Sound is present and is on the item.

b - Sound separate from medium

Sound is on an accompanying item.

u - Unknown

Presence of sound on the item is not known.

| - No attempt to code

06 - Medium for sound

Specific medium used to carry the sound of an item (whether the sound is on the projected graphic or separate) and the type of sound playback required for the item.

Used in conjunction with the information coded in 007/05 (Sound on medium or separate) and 007/07 (Dimensions). Typically, the carriers of sound are: 1) optical and/or magnetic track on a film reel or encased in a cassette or cartridge; 2) audio or video tape which may be on a reel or encased in a cassette or cartridge; and 3) sound or video disc.

- No sound (silent)

Sound is not present.

a - Optical sound track on motion picture film

Sound to accompany a projected graphic is carried on an optical track that is part of a film. In coding 16 and 35 mm. films, it is usually assumed that sound is carried on an optical track.

b - Magnetic sound track on motion picture film

Sound to accompany a projected graphic is carried on a magnetic track that is part of the film. 70 mm. motion picture films often include magnetic sound tracks.

c - Magnetic audio tape in cartridge

Sound to accompany an item is carried on a magnetic audio tape cartridge.

d - Sound disc

Sound to accompany an item is carried on a sound disc. This method of providing for sound is typically used with filmstrips. Sound discs include 7, 10, and 12 in. vinyl phonograph records (identified as *analog* sound discs in subfield \ddagger b of field 300) and 4 3/4 in. compact discs (identified as *digital* sound discs in subfield \ddagger b of field 300)

e - Magnetic audio tape on reel

Sound to accompany an item is carried on a reel of magnetic audio tape.

f - Magnetic audio tape in cassette

Sound to accompany an item is carried on a cassette of magnetic audio tape.

g - Optical and magnetic sound track on motion picture film

Sound to accompany a projected graphic is carried on both an optical and magnetic track.

h - Videotape

Sound to accompany an item is included as part of a videotape. Videotape is not ordinarily used to record only sound.

i - Videodisc

Sound to accompany an item is included as part of a videodisc. Videodiscs are not ordinarily used to record only sound. A distinction must be made between videodiscs (e.g., 12 in. laser-scan videodiscs that include video information) and compact discs that are used to record sound only

007 - Projected Graphic

(e.g., 4 3/4 in. audio compact discs). The technology to physically record video or audio information on digital disc systems is the same.

u - Unknown

Medium for sound is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

07 - Dimensions

Width or dimensions of the projected graphic item.

Width is given for filmstrips. Height and width are given for slides and transparencies. Only the most common dimensions are indicated. For film and slides, only codes that *exactly* match the measurements of the item as given in the physical description should be used. If no code exactly matches, code z is used. For transparencies, the code that most closely *approximates* the dimensions as stated in the physical description is used. The dimensions for slides and transparencies include the size of the mount for the item.

a - Standard 8 mm. film width

Width of the film is standard 8 mm. Film termed *Mauer 8 mm.* is recorded as code a.

b - Super 8 mm./single 8 mm. film width

Width of the film is super 8 mm. Single 8 mm. film is a Japanese equivalent of super 8 mm. film.

c - 9.5 mm. film width

d - 16 mm. film width

e - 28 mm. film width

f - 35 mm. film width

g - 70 mm. film width

j - 2x2 in. or 5x5 cm. slide

Dimensions of the slide in its mounting are either 2x2 in. or 5x5 cm.

k - 2 1/4 x 2 1/4 in. or 6x6 cm. slide

Dimensions of the slide in its mounting are either 2 1/4 x 2 1/4 in. or 6x6 cm.

s - 4x5 in. or 10x13 cm. transparency

t - 5x7 in. or 13x18 cm. transparency

v - 8x10 in. or 21x26 cm. transparency

w - 9x9 in. or 23x23 cm. transparency

x - 10x10 in. or 26x26 cm. transparency

y - 7x7 in. or 18x18 cm. transparency

u - Unknown

Dimensions are not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

08 - Secondary support material

Type of material of the mount of a slide or transparency for a projected graphic.

- No secondary support

Filmstrips are always coded #.

c - Cardboard

Cardboard mount. Slides and transparencies cataloged from data sheets are assumed to have cardboard mounts unless otherwise known.

d - Glass

Glass mount that usually covers the film base but should not be the primary support for the film emulsion.

e - Synthetic

Secondary support material is synthetic (e.g. plastics, vinyl, etc.).

h - Metal

Metal is usually used to frame larger projected graphics which need better support.

j - Metal and glass

Metal portion is usually a frame that holds one or two pieces of glass to support the film base. Glass should not be the primary support for the film emulsion.

k - Synthetic and glass

Synthetic material, e.g., plastics, vinyl, etc., is usually used as a frame to hold one or two pieces of glass to support the film base. Glass should not be the primary support for the film emulsion.

m - Mixed collection

Secondary support material varies for different items in a collection.

Typically this is used for groups of projected graphics on various secondary support materials.

u - Unknown

Secondary support material is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

007 - Projected Graphic

■ EXAMPLES

007 go#cjbff#
[Item is projected graphic material (007/00); a filmstrip (01); in color (03); on safety film (04); the sound is separate from the medium (05) on magnetic tape in a cassette (06); and the filmstrip is 35 mm. (07).]

007 gs#cj##jd
[Item is projected graphic material (007/00); a slide (01); in color (03) on safety film (04); without sound (05-06); 2x2 in. (07) and in a glass mounting (08).]

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field length - For the category of material **projected graphic**, field 007 should consist of nine character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

007/01 *Specific material designation*

Not applicable or no attempt to code [OBSOLETE, 1980]

f *Other type of filmstrip [RENAMED, 2009]*

n *Not applicable [OBSOLETE, 1981] [USMARC only]*

007/02 *Original versus reproduction aspect [OBSOLETE, 1997] [USMARC only]*

Defined codes were: f (Facsimile), o (Original), r (Reproduction), and u (Unknown).

007/04 *Base of emulsion*

Not applicable or no attempt to code [OBSOLETE, 1980]

n *Not applicable [OBSOLETE, 1981]*

007/04 was renamed in 1983 when distinct codes for projected graphics were defined.

007/06 *Medium for sound*

g *Other [OBSOLETE, 1981]*

g *Optical and magnetic sound track on motion picture film [NEW, 1985]*

007/07 *Dimensions*

u *7x7 in. or 18x18 cm. [OBSOLETE, 1980]*

y *Unknown [OBSOLETE, 1980]*

007/08 *Secondary support material [NEW, 1983]*

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

- | | | | | | | |
|----|-------------------------------|-------|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 00 | Category of material | u | Unknown | | | |
| | h | v | Reduction rate varies | | | |
|  |  | \| | No attempt to code | | | |
| 01 | Specific material designation | 06-08 | Reduction ratio | | | |
| | a | 09 | Color | | | |
| | b | | b | Black-and-white | | |
| | c | | c | Multicolored | | |
| | d | | m | Mixed | | |
| | e | | u | Unknown | | |
| | f | | z | Other | | |
| | g |  | \| | No attempt to code | | |
| | h | | 10 | Emulsion on film | | |
| | j | | | a | Silver halide | |
| | u | | | b | Diazo | |
| | z | | | c | Vesicular | |
|  | \| |  |  | m | Mixed emulsion | |
| | | | | n | Not applicable | |
| 02 | Undefined | | | u | Unknown | |
| | | | | z | Other | |
|  |  |  |  | \| | No attempt to code | |
| 03 | Positive/negative aspect | | | 11 | Generation | |
| | a | | | | a | First generation (master) |
| | b | | | | b | Printing master |
| | m | | | | c | Service copy |
| | u | | | | m | Mixed generation |
|  | \| |  |  |  | u | Unknown |
|  |  |  |  |  | \| | No attempt to code |
| 04 | Dimensions | | | 12 | Base of film | |
| | a | | | | a | Safety base, undetermined |
| | d | | | | c | Safety base, acetate undetermined |
| | f | | | | d | Safety base, diacetate |
| | g | | | | i | Nitrate base |
| | h | | | | m | Mixed base (nitrate and safety) |
| | l | | | | n | Not applicable |
| | m | | | | p | Safety base, polyester |
| | o | | | | r | Safety base, mixed |
| | p | | | | t | Safety base, triacetate |
| | u | | | | u | Unknown |
| | z | | | | z | Other |
|  | \| |  |  |  | \| | No attempt to code |
| 05 | Reduction ratio range | | | | | |
| | a | | | | | |
| | b | | | | | |
| | c | | | | | |
| | d | | | | | |
| | e | | | | | |

007 - Microform

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

When field 007/00 contains code h, it contains special coded information about the physical characteristics of microform material.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

00 - Category of material

h - Microform

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the category of material to which the item belongs is **microform**. Microform is a generic term for any medium, transparent or opaque, bearing microimages. A *microimage* is a unit (e.g., a page) of textual, graphic, or computer-generated material that is contained on aperture cards, microfiche, microfilm, microopaques, or other microformats and that is too small to be read without magnification. Microforms may be reproductions of existing textual or graphic materials or they may be original publications. A fill character (I) is not allowed in this position.

01 - Specific material designation

Special class of microform to which the item belongs. (e.g., a microopaque).

a - Aperture card

Card with one or more rectangular opening(s), or aperture(s), specifically prepared for the mounting or insertion of a piece of photographic film containing one or more microimage(s). The cards are usually EAM (Electrical Accounting Machine) punched cards, commonly known as IBM cards, that are standardized for use in card-handling machines. Such cards contain only one aperture and most frequently have only one microimage.

b - Microfilm cartridge

Consists of a strip of photographic film wound onto a single core (or hub), housed in a protective container. Microfilm cartridges require reading equipment (readers and reader-printers) that is specifically adapted for their use. Normally, the end of the film is left free for threading into such equipment. Common film lengths, widths, and reduction ratios are the same as those of microfilm reels.

c - Microfilm cassette

Analogous to the sound tape cassette. Consists of a strip of photographic film wound onto a double core, housed in a protective container. Microfilm cassettes require reading equipment (readers and reader-printers) that is specifically adapted for their use. Because they are double-cored, they are not threaded when used in such readers and reader-printers. Usual film lengths are 100 ft (approximately 30 m.) or less. Common film width is 16 mm. and usual reduction ratios are those of microfilm reels and cartridges.

d - Microfilm reel

Consists of a strip of photographic film wound onto an unenclosed flanged holder (or reel). Microfilm reels require manual threading when used in readers and reader-printers and require equipment that is adapted for their use. Film lengths are usually 100 ft. (approximately 30 m.) or less. For microimages produced by filming textual and graphic materials, the most common film widths are 35 mm. and 16 mm. and reduction ratios commonly range from about 10:1 to about 20:1. Sixteen

millimeter film with effective ratios of either 24:1 or 48:1 is most often used for COM (Computer-Output-Microfilm) microimages.

e - Microfiche

Transparent sheet of photographic film containing microimages arranged in a grid pattern (a two-dimensional array) and having a heading that contains identifying information in text that is large enough to be read without magnification. Grid patterns vary with reduction ratios.

Microfiches are grouped in five ranges of reduction ratios: low reduction (ratios up to and including 15:1), normal reduction (ratios greater than 15:1 up to and including 30:1), high reduction (ratios greater than 30:1 up to and including 60:1), very high reduction (ratios greater than 60:1 up to and including 90:1) and ultrahigh reduction (ratios greater than 90:1).

The most common microfiche are made by filming textual or graphic material at a reduction ratio of approximately 24:1. Such microfiche are 105 mm. high and 148 mm. wide (approximately 4x6 in.) and have a grid pattern that accommodates 98 microimages made from documents that are no more than 11 in. high and 8 1/2 in. wide. The heading area is the width of one row and is found directly above the first row of microimages.

The most common COM (Computer-Output-Microfilm) microfiche are made by recording computer-generated data at an effective reduction ratio of 48:1 on a 105 mm. x 148 mm. sheet of film. Such microfiche have a grid pattern of 15 rows and 18 columns, comprising 270 microimages. The heading area is the width of one row and is found directly above the first row of microimages.

Microfiche made at ultrahigh ratios are commonly called ultrafiche. Ratios and grid patterns have not been standardized for these microfiche and differ according to application and method for production.

f - Microfiche cassette

g - Microopaque

Sheet of opaque material bearing a number of microimages arranged in a two-dimensional array. Microopaques resemble microfiche. Common dimensions are 3x5 in. and 6x9 in. Common reduction ratios are approximately 24:1 or 20:1. Microopaques usually have identifying information in text that is large enough to read without magnification.

h - Microfilm slip

A short strip of microfilm cut from a roll.

j - Microfilm roll

A wound length of microfilm not on a reel, cartridge, etc.

u - Unspecified

Special material designation for the microform is not specified.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate. Some microform types that use code z include:

microchip - A sheet of photographic film of very small dimensions,

microdot - A minuscule piece of photographic film with ultrahigh reduction ration,

microform scroll - A roll of unusually wide photographic film.

| - No attempt to code

007 - Microform

02 - Undefined

Contains blank (#) or a fill character (I).

03 - Positive/negative aspect

Positive/negative polarity of the microform.

This characteristic is also referred to as the polarity.

a - Positive

Lines and characters appear dark against a light background.

Microopaques are always recorded as code a.

b - Negative

Lines and characters appear light against a dark background.

m - Mixed polarity

Mixture of positive and negative images.

u - Unknown

Polarity of the microform is not known. (Some colored negatives may appear to be positive if the colors of the original are not known.)

| - No attempt to code

04 - Dimensions

Dimensions of the microform; does *not* indicate the dimensions of the image.

For example, 16 mm. images on 35 mm. microfilm are coded f (35 mm.). Only the most common dimensions are indicated. Only codes that exactly match the measurement of the item as given in the physical description should be used. If no code exactly matches, code z is used.

The width of a microfilm is indicated in millimeters.

The height and width of a microfiche, microopaque, etc. are indicated in inches or centimeters. The first dimension is the height, the second is the width. The standard microfiche (105 mm. x 148 mm.) is coded m.

a - 8 mm.

d - 16 mm.

f - 35 mm.

g - 70 mm.

h - 105 mm.

l - 3x5 in. or 8x13 cm.

m - 4x6 in. or 11x15 cm.

o - 6x9 in. or 16x23 cm.

p - 3 1/4 x 7 3/8 in. or 9x19 cm.

Height and width of an aperture card in inches or centimeters.

u - Unknown

Dimensions are not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

05 - Reduction ratio range

Reduction ratio range for a microform. The specific reduction ratio is recorded in 007/06-08 (Reduction ratio).

For microfilm created by other than COM (Computer-Output-Microfilm) processes and for microopaque microprints, codes a and b are most likely to be used. For COM microfiche or microfilm, the reduction ratio is actually an expansion ratio and refers to the ratio of expansion required to produce a legible image. Most COM is created at 024-048 reduction ratios (codes b and c), though some COM fiche is at higher ratios (e.g., 072). Codes b-e are used with other types of microforms (e.g., microfiche, ultrafiche, etc.). The most commonly encountered microfiche are normal reduction (code b).

The reduction ratio is usually given on the microform itself. If it is not present, one must know the dimensions of the original item and the size of the image on the microform in order to code the information needed in 007/05.

a - Low reduction ratio

Less than 16:1 ratio (less than 016).

b - Normal reduction

Between 16:1 and 30:1 (016-030).

c - High reduction

Between 31:1 and 60:1 (031-060).

d - Very high reduction

Between 61:1 and 90:1 (061-090).

e - Ultra high reduction

Over 90:1 (over 090).

u - Unknown

Reduction ratio is not known.

v - Reduction rate varies

Not all parts of the microform have the same reduction ratio (e.g., the contents of two books may be microfilmed onto one piece of film; the type face on the books may differ, so that one of the books may be filmed at a 14:1 ratio and the other at a 18:1 ratio).

| - No attempt to code

007 - Microform

06-08 - Reduction ratio

Number specifying the reduction ratio for a microform, recorded as three digits. The number is right justified and each unused position contains a zero (e.g., 015, 048). A hyphen is used for any unknown portion of the reduction ratio (e.g., 03-, 1--, or ---).

A code indicating the *reduction ratio range* is recorded in 007/05. Generally, the specific reduction ratio is recorded when it is ultra high (code e in 007/05). If the ratio is not ultra high, recording the specific ratio is less essential. Three fill character (|||) are used when no attempt has been made to code this data element.

09 - Color

Color of the image for microforms.

b - Black-and-white

Image is in black-and-white (usually black-and-transparent).

Includes only one color or hue other than black, for example, blue-and-white (blue-and-transparent). Always used for microopaques.

c - Multicolored

Has more than one color.

m - Mixed

Combination of one-color and multicolored images.

u - Unknown

Color of the microform is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

10 - Emulsion on film

Type of light-sensitive material on the film.

Proper storage and use of microforms requires identification of the emulsion they contain.

a - Silver halide

Emulsion is a compound of silver and halogens. Silver halide microforms always appear black-and-white (black-and-transparent).

b - Diazo

Emulsion consists of sensitized layers composed of diazonium salts that react with couplers to form dye images. The color of the image is determined by the composition of the diazonium compound as well as the couplers used in the process and may be black, violet, or another color.

c - Vesicular

Light-sensitive component is suspended in a plastic layer. On exposure, the component creates optical vesicles (bubbles) in the layers. These bubbles form the latent image. The latent image becomes visible and fixed by heating the plastic layer and then allowing it to cool. Vesicular films are commonly blue or beige in color. They do not appear to have much contrast (very high density) until projected in a microform reader.

m - Mixed emulsion

For example, a microfilm may have slices of film with one type of emulsion and other slices with another type of emulsion.

n - Not applicable

Item does not have emulsion on film.
Used for microopaques.

u - Unknown

Emulsion on the film is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

11 - Generation

Generation aspect of a microform.

a - First generation (master)

Camera master or COM recorder master.

Used for all master films that are made on archival stock in accordance with archival productions standards and that are given archival storage under relevant ISO standards.

b - Printing master

Any generation employed mainly for the production of other microforms.

Used for all masters that are not manufactured, produced, and stored in accordance with archival standards.

c - Service copy

Microform made from another microform that is intended primarily for use rather than for production of other microforms. Always used for microopaques.

m - Mixed generation

Made up of a combination of generations of film.

u - Unknown

Generation aspect is not known.

| - No attempt to code

12 - Base of film

Base of the film.

Safety base film is a comparatively nonflammable film base that meets the standard requirements for a safety base. On some film, the phrase *safety base* or a small equilateral triangle appears on the edge of microforms. Some microfilm produced overseas has similar notations in foreign languages. Vesicular and diazo microforms are always a safety base, as are silver halide microforms manufactured in the United States since approximately 1951. Nitrate film base is a highly flammable film base that does not meet the requirements for safety base film.

007 - Microform

a - Safety base, undetermined

Type has not been identified.

c - Safety base, acetate undetermined

Acetate safety base film whose exact type cannot be determined, i.e., where it is unknown if the type is diacetate or triacetate.

d - Safety base, diacetate

Cellulose diacetate film base. Introduced before World War I for home movies, diacetate base was more expensive and unpredictable than nitrate base and so failed to gain acceptance in professional 35 mm. film production. Diacetate film base was at times used for microfilming of documents.

i - Nitrate base

Cellulose nitrate film. Cellulose nitrate support or base was used in the manufacture of 35 mm. film (and some 17.5 mm. film) until 1951. Nitrate base film is no longer manufactured. Nitrate film base was at times used for microfilming of documents.

m - Mixed base (nitrate and safety)

Combination of nitrate base and safety base film. The use of mixed bases, spliced together, can be found in microforms from the early 1950s.

n - Not applicable

Microform on a reflective rather than a transparent base.

Microopaques (which can be termed microcard or microprint) are an example of a microform not produced on a film base and are coded n.

p - Safety base, polyester

Film base is made of a synthetic resin (e.g., estar). During the 1980s, it became the most widely used base for microfilming of source documents.

r - Safety base, mixed

Mixed safety base films are spliced together; no nitrate film.

t - Safety base, triacetate

Cellulose triacetate film base. Cellulose triacetate is a high acetal compound with very low flammability and slow burning characteristics. From 1951, triacetate has been used for professional as well as for amateur produced moving image film. It has also been used at times for microfilming of documents.

u - Unknown

Base of film of the microform is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

■ EXAMPLES

- 007** hd#bgc---cuuu
[Item is a microform (007/00); released as a microfilm reel (01); it has negative polarity (03); is 70 mm. (04); has a high reduction ratio (05); and is in color (09). Its emulsion (10), generation (11), and film base (12) are unknown.]
- 007** he#bmb024baca
[Item is a microform (007/00) (originally a printed work that has been filmed for reproduction in the microfiche format); released as a microfiche (01); has negative polarity (03); is approximately 4x6 in. (04); has a normal reduction ratio (05) of 24:1 (06-08); is monochromatic (09); has an emulsion of silver halide (10); is a service copy (11); and is on safety base film (12).]
- 007** hd#afa014bcaa
[Item is a microform (007/00) (a newspaper, filmed for reproduction); released as a microfilm reel (01); has positive polarity (03); is 35 mm. (04); has a low reduction ratio (05) of 14:1 (bytes 6-8); is monochromatic (09); has vesicular emulsion (10); is a service copy (11); and is on safety base film (12).]

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field length - Field 007 for the category of material **microform** currently has thirteen character positions defined for it.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

007/01 *Specific material designation*

- h Microfilm slip [NEW, 2009]
- j Microfilm roll [NEW, 2009]

007/02 *Original versus reproduction aspect [OBSOLETE, 1997] [USMARC only]*

Defined codes were: f (Facsimile), o (Original), r (Reproduction), and u (Unknown).

007/12 *Base of film*

- b Not safety base [OBSOLETE, 1991]

Code b was made obsolete when 007/12 for microforms was made consistent with the 007/12 (Base of film) for motion pictures and code i (Nitrate base) was defined.

[blank page]

007 Nonprojected Graphic

(R)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 00 Category of material | f Skin |
| k Nonprojected graphic | g Textile |
| | h Metal |
| 01 Specific material designation | \|i Plastic |
| \|a Activity card | \|l Vinyl |
| c Collage | m Mixed collection |
| d Drawing | \|n Vellum |
| e Painting | o Paper |
| f Photomechanical print | p Plaster |
| g Photonegative | q Hardboard |
| h Photoprint | r Porcelain |
| i Picture | s Stone |
| h Print | t Wood |
| \|k Poster | u Unknown |
| l Technical drawing | \|v Leather |
| n Chart | \|w Parchment |
| o Flash card | z Other |
| \|p Postcard | \| No attempt to code |
| \|q Icon | |
| \|r Radiograph | 05 Secondary support material |
| \|s Study print | # No secondary support |
| u Unspecified | a Canvas |
| \|v Photograph, type unspecified | b Bristol board |
| z Other | c Cardboard/illustration board |
| \| No attempt to code | d Glass |
| 02 Undefined | e Synthetic |
| | f Skin |
| 03 Color | g Textile |
| a One color | h Metal |
| b Black-and-white | \|i Plastic |
| c Multicolored | \|l Vinyl |
| h Hand colored | m Mixed collection |
| m Mixed | \|n Vellum |
| u Unknown | o Paper |
| z Other | p Plaster |
| \| No attempt to code | q Hardboard |
| | r Porcelain |
| 04 Primary support material | s Stone |
| a Canvas | t Wood |
| b Bristol board | u Unknown |
| c Cardboard/illustration board | \|v Leather |
| d Glass | \|w Parchment |
| e Synthetic | z Other |
|  | \| No attempt to code |

007 - Nonprojected graphic

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

When field 007/00 contains code k, it contains special coded information about the physical characteristics of nonprojected graphic material.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

00 - Category of material

k - Nonprojected graphic

One-character alphabetic code indicates that the category of material to which the item belongs is **nonprojected graphic** which is generally a two-dimensional pictorial representation, often opaque (e.g., print, photoprint, drawing) or transparent, and not intended to be projected for viewing (e.g., a photographic negative). A fill character (I) is not allowed in this position.

01 - Specific material designation

Special class of nonprojected graphic to which the item belongs, (e.g., a picture).

a - Activity card

A card printed with words, numerals, and/or pictures to be used by an individual or a group as a basis for performing a specific activity.

c - Collage

Original work created by affixing various materials (paper, wood, newspaper, cloth, etc.) to a surface.

d - Drawing

Original visual representation (other than a print or painting) made with pencil, pen, chalk, or other writing instrument usually on paper or similar nonrigid support.

e - Painting

Original visual representation produced by applying paint to a surface.

f - Photomechanical print

Any picture produced in imitation of another picture through the use of photographic process to transfer the image to a printing surface. Hence, a snapshot made to document a painting or a Xerox copy of a print are considered photomechanical reproductions. Art reproductions, postcards, posters, and study prints are included here.

g - Photonegative

Piece of film, a glass plate, or pattern on which a negative image appears, i.e., directly opposite to a positive image (photoprint), slide, or transparency, used to produce a positive print. Photonegatives do not include negative photoprints, photoprints that are a combination of negative and positive images, or photograms or solarized prints, all of which are considered to be techniques used when making photoprints.

h - Photoprint

Photoprints have a positive image made either directly or indirectly on a sensitized surface by the action of light or other radiant energy. The term *photoprint* rather than *photograph* is used here as

007 - Nonprojected graphic

a more precise term than *photograph*, which technically can cover both the print and the negative. Radiographs and opaque stereographs are included here.

i - Picture

Two-dimensional visual representation accessible to the naked eye and generally on an opaque backing.

Used when a more specific designation is unknown or not desired.

j - Print

Design or picture transferred from an engraved plate, wood block, lithographic stone, or other medium. Generally there are four types: planographic print, relief print, intaglio print, and stencil print.

k - Poster

l - Technical drawing

Cross section, detail, diagram, elevation, perspective, plan, working plan, etc., made for use in an engineering or other technical context.

n - Chart

Opaque sheet that exhibits data in graphic or tabular form, e.g., a wall chart.

o - Flash card

Card or other opaque material printed with words, numerals, or pictures and designed for rapid display.

p - Postcard

q - Icon

r - Radiograph

A photograph produced by the passage of radiation, such as X rays, gamma rays, or neutrons, through an opaque object.

s - Study print

u - Unspecified

Special material designation for the nonprojected graphic is not specified.

v - Photograph, type unspecified

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

Includes mixed media productions made by a combination of free hand and printing techniques when one or the other does not predominate.

| - No attempt to code

02 - Undefined

Contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

007 - Nonprojected graphic

03 - Color

Color characteristics of the nonprojected graphic.

a - One color

Printed or executed in a single color. Used for *monochrome* art works. It is not used with photographic materials.

Does not include black.

b - Black-and-white

Printed or executed in black-and-white. Refers to monochrome photographic materials executed in black-and-white.

c - Multicolored

Printed or executed in more than one color. Used for color photographic processes.

h - Hand colored

Image, produced by a printing or photographic process, is hand colored. Rarely used with commercial visual materials since these are not typically issued with hand coloring.

m - Mixed

Work or collection is a combination of one color, black-and-white, multicolored, hand colored, and/or other images.

u - Unknown

Color characteristics of the item are not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

Includes stained, tinted, or toned items(e.g., sepia toned photographic items).

| - No attempt to code

04 - Primary support material

Type of material used for the support or base on which an image is printed or executed.

Intended for use in handling and storage of material.

a - Canvas

b - Bristol board

Fine, smooth pasteboard used by artists and painters.

c - Cardboard/illustration board

d - Glass

e - Synthetic

Man-made substances other than textiles, plastic, and vinyl.

f - Skin

Excludes leather, parchment, and vellum.

Synthetic materials that are made to resemble animal skin are coded as *synthetic*.

007 - Nonprojected graphic

g - Textile

Includes all natural or synthetic fibre fabrics except canvas.
Synthetic materials formed to resemble a fabric are considered textiles.

h - Metal

i - Plastic

l - Vinyl

m - Mixed collection

Primary support material varies for different items in a collection.
Typically this would be used for groups of nonprojected graphics on various bases.

n - Vellum

Fine-grained unsplit lambskin, kidskin, or calfskin prepared especially for writing or drawing on.

o - Paper

Any kind of cellulose-based paper.

p - Plaster

Includes mixtures of ground solids and plaster.

q - Hardboard

r - Porcelain

Used only for clay-based porcelain.
Porcelain-like synthetic materials are coded e.

s - Stone

t - Wood

Material that is based on wood particles or fibers may or may not be considered wood. Consider particle board *wood*.

u - Unknown

Primary support material is not known.

v - Leather

Animal skin dressed for use.

w - Parchment

Skin of a sheep or goat prepared for writing on.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

05 - Secondary support material

Type of material (other than normal museum matting) to which the primary support (007/04) is attached.

007 - Nonprojected graphic

Used only when the mount or mat is of historical, informational, aesthetic, or archival importance.

- No secondary support

a - Canvas

b - Bristol board

Fine, smooth pasteboard used by artists and painters.

c - Cardboard/illustration board

d - Glass

e - Synthetic

Man-made substances other than textiles, plastic, and vinyl.

f - Skin

Excludes leather, parchment, and vellum.

Synthetic materials that are made to resemble animal skin are coded as *synthetic*.

g - Textile

Includes all natural or synthetic fibre fabrics except canvas.

h - Metal

i - Plastic

l - Vinyl

m - Mixed collection

Secondary support material varies for different items in a collection.

Typically this would be used for groups of nonprojected graphics on various bases.

n - Vellum

Fine-grained unsplit lambskin, kidskin, or calfskin prepared especially for writing or drawing on.

o - Paper

Any kind of cellulose-based paper.

p - Plaster

Includes mixtures of ground solids and plaster.

q - Hardboard

r - Porcelain

Used only for clay-based porcelain.

Porcelain-like synthetic materials are coded e.

s - Stone

t - Wood

Material that is based on wood particles or fibers may or may not be considered wood. Consider particle board *wood*.

u - Unknown

007 - Nonprojected graphic

Secondary support material is not known.

v - Leather

Animal skin dressed for use.

w - Parchment

Skin of a sheep or goat prepared for writing on or strong, tough, and often somewhat translucent paper made to resemble parchment.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

■ EXAMPLES

007 kh#coo
[The item is a nonprojected graphic (007/00); photoprint (01) in color (03); is on paper base (04) and mounted on paper (05).]

007 kl#ao#
[Item is a nonprojected graphic (007/00); a technical drawing (01); in a single color (03); is on paper (04); has no secondary support material (05).]

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field length - Field 007 for the category of material **nonprojected graphic** currently has six character positions defined for it.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

007/01 Specific material designation

- a Activity card [NEW, 2009]
- k Poster [NEW, 2009]
- p Postcard [NEW, 2009]
- q Icon [NEW, 2009]
- r Radiograph [NEW, 2009]
- s Study print [NEW, 2009]
- v Photograph, type unspecified [NEW, 2009]

007/02 Original versus reproduction aspect [OBSOLETE, 1997] [USMARC only]

Defined codes were: f (Facsimile), o (Original), r (Reproduction), and u (Unknown).

007/04 Primary support material

- e Synthetic [REDEFINED, 2009]
Prior to 2010 this code included plastic and vinyl in its definition
- f Skin [REDEFINED, 2009]
Prior to 2010 this code included leather, parchment, and vellum in its definition.
- i Plastic [NEW, 2009]
- l Vinyl [NEW, 2009]
- n Vellum [NEW, 2009]
- v Leather [NEW, 2009]
- w Parchment [NEW, 2009]

007/05 Secondary support material

- e Synthetic [REDEFINED, 2009]
Prior to 2010 this code included plastic and vinyl in its definition.
- f Skin [REDEFINED, 2009]
Prior to 2010 this code included leather, parchment, and vellum in its definition.
- i Plastic [NEW, 2009]
- l Vinyl [NEW, 2009]

007 - Nonprojected graphic

| n Vellum [NEW, 2009]
| v Leather [NEW, 2009]
| w Parchment [NEW, 2009]

007 Motion Picture

(R)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

- | | |
|--|---|
| 00 Category of material | b Magnetic sound track on motion picture film |
| m Motion picture | c Magnetic audio tape in cartridge |
| 01 Specific material designation | d Sound disc |
| c Film cartridge | e Magnetic audio tape on reel |
| f Film cassette | f Magnetic audio tape on cassette |
| \|o Film roll | g Optical and magnetic sound track on motion picture film |
| r Film reel | h Videotape |
| u Unspecified | i Videodisc |
| z Other | u Unknown |
| \| No attempt to code | z Other |
| 02 Undefined | \| No attempt to code |
| 03 Color | 07 Dimensions |
| b Black-and-white | a Standard 8 mm. |
| c Multicolored | b Super 8 mm./single 8 mm. |
| h Hand colored | c 9.5 mm. |
| m Mixed | d 16 mm. |
| n Not applicable | e 28 mm. |
| u Unknown | f 35 mm. |
| z Other | g 70 mm. |
| \| No attempt to code | u Unknown |
| 04 Motion picture presentation format | z Other |
| a Standard sound aperture (reduced frame) | \| No attempt to code |
| b Nonanamorphic (wide-screen) | 08 Configuration of playback channels |
| c 3D | k Mixed |
| d Anamorphic (wide-screen) | m Monaural |
| e Other wide-screen format | n Not applicable |
| f Standard silent aperture (full frame) | q Quadraphonic, multichannel, or surround |
| u Unknown | s Stereophonic |
| z Other | u Unknown |
| \| No attempt to code | z Other |
| 05 Sound on medium or separate | \| No attempt to code |
| # No sound (silent) | 09 Production elements |
| a Sound on medium | a Workprint |
| b Sound separate from medium | b Trims |
| u Unknown | c Outtakes |
| \| No attempt to code | d Rushes |
| 06 Medium for sound | e Mixing tracks |
| # No sound (silent) | f Title bands/inter-title rolls |
| a Optical sound track on motion picture film | g Production rolls |
| | n Not applicable |
| | z Other |
|  | \| No attempt to code |

007 - Motion Picture

- 10 Positive/negative aspect
a Positive
b Negative
n Not applicable
u Unknown
z Other
| No attempt to code
- 11 Generation
d Duplicate
e Master
o Original
r Reference print/viewing copy
u Unknown
z Other
| No attempt to code
- 12 Base of film
a Safety base, undetermined
c Safety base, acetate undetermined
d Safety base, diacetate
i Nitrate base
m Mixed base (nitrate and safety)
n Not applicable
p Safety base, polyester
r Safety base, mixed
t Safety base, triacetate
u Unknown
z Other
| No attempt to code
- 13 Refined categories of color
a 3 layer color
b 2 color, single strip
c Undetermined 2 color
d Undetermined 3 color
e 3 strip color
f 2 strip color
g Red strip
h Blue or green strip
i Cyan strip
j Magenta strip
k Yellow strip
l S E N 2
- m S E N 3
n Not applicable
p Sepia tone
q Other tone
r Tint
s Tinted and toned
t Stencil color
u Unknown
v Hand colored
z Other
| No attempt to code
- 14 Kind of color stock or print
a Imbibition dye transfer prints
b Three-layer stock
c Three layer stock, low fade
d Duplitized stock
n Not applicable
u Unknown
z Other
| No attempt to code
- 15 Deterioration stage
a None apparent
b Nitrate: suspicious odor
c Nitrate: pungent odor
d Nitrate: brownish, discoloration, fading, dusty
e Nitrate: sticky
f Nitrate: frothy, bubbles, blisters
g Nitrate: congealed
h Nitrate: powder
k Non-nitrate: detectable deterioration
l Non-nitrate: advanced deterioration
m Non-nitrate: disaster
| No attempt to code
- 16 Completeness
c Complete
i Incomplete
n Not applicable
u Unknown
| No attempt to code

17-22 Film inspection date

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

When field 007/00 contains code m, it contains special coded information about the physical characteristics of a **motion picture**.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

00 - Category of material

m - Motion picture

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the category of material to which the item belongs is **motion picture** which is defined as a series of still pictures on film, with or without sound, designed to be projected in rapid succession to produce the optical effect of motion. A fill character (|) is not allowed in this position.

01 - Specific material designation

Special class of motion picture to which the item belongs., e.g., a film reel.

c - Film cartridge

Encased in a cartridge that has the ends joined together to form a loop that provides playback without rewinding.

f - Film cassette

Encased in a cassette that winds and rewinds reel-to-reel.

o - Film roll

A wound length of film not in a reel, cartridge, etc.

r - Film reel

Open reel of motion picture film designed for use with a projector having its own take-up reel. Includes sound track film intended to accompany visual images actually not present.

u - Unspecified

Special material designation for the motion picture is not specified.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

02 - Undefined

Contains blank (#) or a fill character (|).

03 - Color

Color characteristics of a motion picture.

b - Black-and-white

Printed or executed in black-and-white.

007 - Motion Picture

c - Multicolored

Printed or executed in more than one color. Used for color photographic processes.

h - Hand colored

Motion picture, produced by a printing or photographic process, is hand colored. Rarely used with commercial films since these are not typically issued with hand coloring.

m - Mixed

Work or collection is a combination of black-and-white, multicolored, hand colored, and/or other images.

n - Not applicable

Color characteristics are not applicable because the item has no images.

Used, for example, when the item in hand is sound track film intended to accompany visual images not actually present.

u - Unknown

Color characteristics of the motion picture are not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate (e.g., toned, stained, tinted, etc.)

| - No attempt to code

04 - Motion picture presentation format

Presentation format for motion pictures.

Wide-screen is usually indicated with terms such as Techniscope, Todd-AO, Super-Panavision, etc.

a - Standard sound aperture (reduced frame)

Used for non-wide-screen formats.

Includes all standard sound 35 mm., 16 mm., and super 8 mm. film. Should be used even for silent films in which a space has been left for the inclusion of a sound track, i.e., where a full frame silent picture has been cropped to allow space for a sound track.

b - Nonanamorphic (wide-screen)

Wide-screen effect without optically compressing the image or requiring the use of special projection techniques.

Nonanamorphic wide-screen process is primarily associated with 35 mm. and larger film gauges where the image on the film is natural (not optically compressed) and of smaller frame height, which is expanded by projection on a wide screen through the use of normal lenses and the appropriate aperture plate to give the required aspect ratio.

c - 3D

Films which achieve a three-dimensional effect originally through the use of two projectors which superimpose two images of the film on the screen (usually a wide screen). It is usually associated with 35 mm. film. Polarized lenses worn by viewers help to create the impression of depth and dimension.

d - Anamorphic (wide-screen)

Films which achieve the wide-screen effect through the use of an image which is optically compressed or squeezed horizontally. It is then expanded to the correct proportions by projection on a wide screen with the use of special lenses that give greater magnification laterally than

007 - Motion Picture

vertically. Introduced and adopted for commercial use in 1953 under the name of Cinemascope, followed by Techniscope (1963), Naturama, Panavision, etc. Also used for 16 mm. film which employs this process.

e - Other wide-screen format

Any other wide-screen process not covered by other codes. Includes Cinerama, Viterama, Cinemiracle, Circarama and other formats that achieve a wide-screen effect through the use of simultaneous projection of separate prints on very large, sometimes deeply curved screens through the use of multiprojectors that build up the projected picture by a series of images, generally side-by-side.

f - Standard silent aperture (full frame)

35 mm. film on which the exposed picture is approximately the width of the space between the perforation holes of the frame.

Standard format for silent film from about 1899 until the late 1920's when sound film was introduced and the frame size decreased to make room for the sound track.

u - Unknown

Presentation format of the motion picture is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate. An example of this is the 70 mm. Imax format which is a non-rectangular, circular 180 degree limited use format that is not standardized. Imax may not technically be considered a wide-screen format because it does not have an aspect ratio, but it does achieve a wide-screen effect.

| - No attempt to code

05 - Sound on medium or separate

Whether the sound is on the item or separate from the item.

- No sound (silent)

a - Sound on medium

Always used when coding a separate sound track which is physically part of the film (e.g., magnetic strip on edge of film base).

b - Sound separate from medium

Sound is on a separate medium, designed to accompany the images (e.g., a cassette).

u - Unknown

Presence or absence of sound on the item is not known.

| - No attempt to code

06 - Medium for sound

Specific medium used to carry the sound of an item (whether that sound is carried on the item itself or is in the form of accompanying material) and the type of sound playback required.

Used in conjunction with the information coded in 007/05 (Sound on medium or separate) and 007/07 (Dimensions). Typically, the carriers of sound are: 1) optical and/or magnetic track on a film reel or encased in a cassette or cartridge; 2) audio or video tape which may be on a reel or encased in a cassette or cartridge; and 3) sound or videodisc.

007 - Motion Picture

- No sound (silent)

Sound is not present (i.e., the item is intended to be silent).

a - Optical sound track on motion picture film

Sound to accompany a motion picture is carried on an optical track that is part of the film. Optical sound is the most commonly used process for 16 and 35 mm. film.

b - Magnetic sound track on motion picture film

Sound to accompany a motion picture is carried on a separate magnetic track that is part of the film. 70 mm. motion picture films often include magnetic sound tracks.

c - Magnetic audio tape in cartridge

Accompanying sound is carried on a magnetic audio tape cartridge.

d - Sound disc

Sound to accompany an item is carried on a sound disc. Sound discs include 7, 10, and 12 in. vinyl phonograph records and 4 3/4 in. compact discs.

e - Magnetic audio tape on reel

Sound to accompany an item is carried on a reel of magnetic audio tape.

f - Magnetic audio tape in cassette

Sound to accompany an item is carried on a cassette of magnetic audio tape.

g - Optical and magnetic sound track on motion picture film

Sound to accompany a motion picture is carried on both an optical and magnetic track.

h - Videotape

Sound to accompany an item is included as part of a videotape. Videotape is not ordinarily used to record only sound.

i - Videodisc

Sound to accompany an item is included as part of a videodisc. Videodiscs are not ordinarily used to record only sound. A distinction must be made between videodiscs (e.g., 12 in. laser-scan videodiscs that include video information) and compact discs that are used to record sound only (e.g., 4 3/4 in. audio compact discs). The technology to physically record video or audio information on digital disc systems is the same.

u - Unknown

Medium for sound is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

07 - Dimensions

Width of a motion picture.

Only codes that exactly match the measurements of the item as given in the physical description should be used. If no code exactly matches, code z is used.

007 - Motion Picture

a - Standard 8 mm.

Width of the motion picture film is standard 8 mm. Motion pictures termed *Mauer 8 mm.* are recorded as code a.

b - Super 8 mm./single 8 mm.

Width of the motion picture film is super 8 mm. Single 8 mm. motion picture film is a Japanese equivalent of super 8 mm. motion picture film.

c - 9.5 mm.

Width of the motion picture film is 9.5 mm.

d - 16 mm.

Width of the motion picture film is 16 mm.

e - 28 mm.

Width of the motion picture film is 28 mm.

f - 35 mm.

Width of the motion picture film is 35 mm.

g - 70 mm.

Width of the motion picture film is 70 mm.

u - Unknown

Dimensions are not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

08 - Configuration of playback channels

Configuration of playback channels for the sound portion of a motion picture.

Should be coded based on a clear indication of intended playback. These codes do not refer to the configuration of channels originally recorded unless those channels are all intended to be available on playback.

k - Mixed

More than one configuration of playback channels is available on a single motion picture.

An example would be a film with both monaural optical and stereophonic magnetic sound tracks.

m - Monaural

Configured to be played back on one channel.

n - Not applicable

Film is silent, has no sound or sound is on separate medium (007/05 contains b).

Also used when describing an item with separate sound. The configuration of playback channels for the separate sound track would be described in another 007 representing the sound recording on accompanying material (e.g., sound on cassette).

007 - Motion Picture

q - **Quadraphonic, multichannel, or surround**

Configured to be played back on more than two channels. Used for Dolby surround sound tracks and other multichannel techniques.

s - **Stereophonic**

Configured to be played back on two separate channels. Use when the medium is not monaural and when it is not possible to ascertain that multiple playback sources are available or intended.

u - **Unknown**

Configuration of sound playback channels is not known.

z - **Other**

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - **No attempt to code**

09 - **Production elements**

Whether the film is part of a complete production or is a preliminary or post-production element.

Materials described in this character position do not represent a complete work (i.e., a finished film).

a - **Workprint**

Print from the original camera footage which is edited to a fine degree to achieve the final version.

b - **Trims**

Sections of shots remaining after the desired portions have been incorporated into the workprint.

c - **Outtakes**

Shots discarded in the editing of a film.

d - **Rushes**

First positive prints from the laboratory of the previous day's shooting.

Also called dailies.

e - **Mixing tracks**

Separate sound tracks that are combined for the final film sound track.

Mixing tracks may include music, sound effects, and dialog tracks.

f - **Title bands/inter-title rolls**

Printed captions or titles separated from their corresponding picture.

g - **Production rolls**

Various types of production elements (film usually wound on cores) before they are cut and assembled into reels.

n - **Not applicable**

Item is not a production element.

z - **Other**

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - **No attempt to code**

10 - Positive/negative aspect

Whether the film is positive or negative.

Positive/negative aspect of motion picture film is related to the kind of emulsion bonded to and supported by a film base.

a - Positive

Colors and/or tonal values are the same as the original subject matter.

b - Negative

For a black-and-white film, tonal values are the opposite of those in the original subject matter. For a color film, tonal values are the complements of the original subject matter (e.g., red appears as green in a color negative).

n - Not applicable

Film does not have a positive/negative aspect.

u - Unknown

Positive/negative aspect of the film is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

11 - Generation

How far away from the original material the item is (e.g., the actual negative film or original videotape in the camera). Generation data is used to evaluate the quality of available copies, to make preservation decisions, and to identify materials available for viewing and research.

Concept of *generation* represents the photographic process required to create, duplicate, and preserve moving image materials. Material that is produced successively from the original is second, third, fourth, etc. generation material (e.g., original negative to master-positive to duplicate negative to reference print).

d - Duplicate

Duplicate that is usually negative, referred to as a dupe neg, and is a reproduction of the original picture or sound track. A duplicate negative is made from a master positive, which in turn was made from an earlier negative. A duplicate is at least three generations from the original. Duplicate negatives may be prepared either to obtain characteristics not present in the original image, as in special effects work, or to protect and extend the production availability of the assembled original negative as when duplicate negatives are prepared for release printing simultaneously at different labs.

e - Master

Master that is usually positive and referred to as a master positive. It is a specially prepared positive print made from an earlier generation negative film and used for the preparation of duplicate negatives rather than for projection. The master is normally considered second generation material.

o - Original

Original that is usually negative. It is film exposed in a camera and thus of better quality than any subsequent generation or derivative. When referring to older film, an original is almost always a negative. However, the original film may also be a reversal positive.

007 - Motion Picture

r - Reference print/viewing copy

Reference print (ref print) that is defined technically as a release print which has been approved by the producer and director of a film. A reference print may also mean a print kept as a reference print to evaluate the quality of subsequent prints. In film archives, the term is used to indicate that a film may be viewed by researchers. It is not original, master, or duplicate material.

u - Unknown

Generation stage of the film is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

12 - Base of film

Safety base film is a comparatively nonflammable film base that meets ISO requirements for a safety base. On some film, the phrase *safety film* appears on the edge of motion pictures. Nitrate film base is a highly flammable film base that does not meet the ISO requirements for safety base film.

a - Safety base, undetermined

Safety base film whose type has not been identified.

c - Safety base, acetate undetermined

Acetate safety base film whose exact type cannot be determined, i.e., where it is unknown if the type is diacetate or triacetate.

d - Safety base, diacetate

Cellulose diacetate film base. Introduced before World War I for home movies, diacetate base was more expensive and unpredictable than nitrate base and so failed to gain acceptance in professional 35 mm. film production.

i - Nitrate base

Cellulose nitrate film base. Cellulose nitrate support or base was used in the manufacture of 35 mm. film (and some 17.5 mm. film) until 1951. Nitrate base film is no longer manufactured.

m - Mixed base (nitrate and safety)

Combination of nitrate base and safety base film. The use of a mixed base was common in the early 1950s when nitrate base stock shots were spliced with safety base film for low-budget motion pictures. In such releases, up to 50% of the film consisted of stock shots on nitrate base film.

n - Not applicable

Item does not have a film base, e.g., paper film.

p - Safety base, polyester

Film base made of a synthetic resin (e.g., estar).

r - Safety base, mixed

Mixed safety base films spliced together, but *no nitrate film*.

t - Safety base, triacetate

Cellulose triacetate film base. Cellulose triacetate is a high acetal compound with very low flammability and slow burning characteristics. From 1951, triacetate has been used for professional as well as for amateur produced moving image film.

u - Unknown

Base of the film is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

13 - Refined categories of color

More specific color characteristics of the moving image than are contained in 007/03 (Color).

If the color portions of the item include more than one color process, a code for the predominant color process is given. The additional color processes are described in field 500 (General Note).

a - 3 layer color

Three layers of emulsion: cyan, magenta, and yellow. Each layer is sensitive to its own primary color. Beginning in the early 1950's, color film work has been done primarily on 3 layer, also called multilayer, film. This process is also known as integral tri-pack.

b - 2 color, single strip

Single strip of film was exposed with pairs of images by means of a beam-splitter prism. One of the pairs of images was exposed through a red filter and one through a green filter. The resulting negative was used to produce both prints consisting of two strips cemented together, and, later in the history of the process, two color dye transfer prints. Also known as *red and green Technicolor*, the process was used exclusively by Technicolor and had its heyday between 1922 and 1933, although it was used until 1936 for animated cartoons.

c - Undetermined 2 color

System of color reproduction, which cannot be specifically identified, in which the visible spectrum is divided either into blue and red regions or into green and red regions for recording and presentation. Although extensively used in early color film processes, the inherent inability of two components to reproduce a satisfactory range of hues rendered all such systems obsolete when three-color processes became readily available and relatively inexpensive.

d - Undetermined 3 color

System of color reproduction, which cannot be specifically identified, in which the visible spectrum is divided into three sections, normally red, green, and blue, for the purposes of recording and presentation.

e - 3 strip color

Color system in which three color-separation negatives were produced on black-and-white film. 3 strip color is often used synonymously with the trademark Technicolor. In the Technicolor three-component system, light reflected from the subject matter is transmitted through the single lens of a special camera where it strikes a prism. One part of the light is passed through the prism and a green filter to produce a green record. The remainder of the light is reflected from the prism and absorbed by negatives to produce red and blue records. Each of the negatives is developed to produce new negatives which resemble black-and-white negatives.

f - 2 strip color

Color system in which two strips of film, one to record red light and one to record blue, were run through the camera simultaneously and exposed through the base of the front piece of film. These two strips of negatives were then used to produce prints of duplitized film stock (film stock with emulsion on both sides of the base), with a red-dyed image on one side, and a blue-dyed or -toned image on the other. Although extensively used in early color film processes, the inherent inability

007 - Motion Picture

of two components to reproduce the visible color spectrum rendered all such systems obsolete when three-color processes became readily available. The process used from about 1929 to about 1950 by, among others, the following companies: Cinecolor, Magnacolor, and Multicolor.

g - Red strip

Cinecolor process, in which the color separation record of blue-green light prints as red. In the Super Cinecolor process, the color separation record of green light which prints as magenta (called "red" by Cinecolor). In the two-color Technicolor process, the color separation record of green light which prints as red.

h - Blue or green strip

Cinecolor process and the Super Cinecolor process, in which the blue strip is the color separation record of red light which prints as blue-green (called "blue" by Cinecolor). In the two-color Technicolor process, the green strip is the color separation record of magenta-red light which prints as green.

i - Cyan strip

Color separation record of red light which prints as cyan.

j - Magenta strip

Color separation record of green light which prints as magenta.

k - Yellow strip

Color separation record of blue light which prints as yellow.

l - S E N 2

Successive exposure negative 2. S E N 2 is a method of motion picture color photography in which two color separation negative images were recorded on one strip of film by photographing each frame two times successively through red and blue filters. The resultant negative was subsequently optically printed by the use of a skip-frame mechanism. The process was restricted to the photography of animated cartoon and puppet subjects in which the movement from frame to frame could be controlled. The successive exposure process was rendered obsolete by the introduction of 3 layer (multilayer) color negative film.

m - S E N 3

Successive exposure negative 3. S E N 3 is a method of motion picture color photography in which three color separation negative images were recorded on one strip of film by photographing each frame three times successively through red, blue, and green filters. The resultant negative was subsequently optically printed by the use of a skip-frame mechanism. The process was usually restricted to the photography of animated cartoon and puppet subjects in which the movement from frame to frame could be controlled. The successive exposure process was rarely used after the introduction of 3 layer (multilayer) color negative film.

n - Not applicable

Item is not a color film.

p - Sepia tone

Sepia tone which is a conversion of a black-and-white image in silver to sepia (a brownish grey to dark olive brown) by metallic compounds. Sepia was the most common tone used, and was used in black-and-white prints of films for special sequences to enhance the dramatic or pictorial effect.

q - Other tone

Color created by chemically altering the color, for example, uranium produces red, or increasing the brilliance of a print. Toning differs from tinting in that the clear portions of the film remain unaffected. Only the silver image of the positive film becomes colored.

r - Tint

Early in the history of tinting, a tint was created by dipping film in a bath of chemical dyes to get a dominant hue. Later raw stock became available already tinted in eleven stock shades: peach blow, blue for moonlight, amber for firelight, etc. The tinting of a film may be in whole or in part. Tinting was common until the advent of sound.

s - Tinted and toned

Color has been added to a film by using a tinted base and a toned emulsion.

t - Stencil color

Color is added using stencils, one cut for each color. Stencil color replaced the hand-coloring used in earlier years.

u - Unknown

Refined category of color is not known.

v - Hand colored

Image, produced by a photographic process, is hand colored. Used whenever code h (hand-colored) is present in 007/03 (Color).

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate, such as when no single color process is predominant.

| - No attempt to code

14 - Kind of color stock or print

Type of color film stock or color print the item represents.

a - Imbibition dye transfer prints

Film color prints created by the transfer of two or more differently colored dye images to a single strip of blank film. The dye transfer process was used only to produce prints. Imbibition dye transfer prints can be produced from film originally shot on either multi-strip or multi-layer film. The process was used only by the Technicolor Company from ca. 1928 to ca. 1975. The patents were sold to the People's Republic of China, and since ca. 1980, the process has been available only in China.

b - Three-layer stock

Color film stock with three layers of emulsion: cyan, magenta and yellow. Each layer is sensitive to its own primary color. Since the early 1950's, most color films have been both shot and printed on this stock. It is also called multilayer film stock.

c - Three layer stock, low fade

Color film stock with three layers of emulsion: cyan, magenta and yellow. Each layer is sensitive to its own primary color and stabilized to reduce color fading as much as possible. It has been available since ca. 1983.

d - Duplitized stock

Color print stock with emulsion on both sides. Usually one side is dyed red, and the other side is dyed or toned blue.

n - Not applicable

Item is not a color film.

007 - Motion Picture

u - Unknown

Type of color film stock is not known.

z - Other

None of the other codes is appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

15 - Deterioration stage

Level of deterioration of the motion picture film.

Codes are listed according to the seriousness of the deterioration. If more than one condition is applicable to the film in hand, the code for the most serious condition is recorded.

a - None apparent

No deterioration is apparent on either nitrate or non-nitrate motion picture film.

b - Nitrate: suspicious odor

Codes b-h are used for recording nitrate deterioration. The codes are listed according to the seriousness of the condition of deterioration. If more than one condition is applicable to the film in hand, the code for the most serious condition is recorded.

c - Nitrate: pungent odor

d - Nitrate: brownish, discoloration, fading, dusty

e - Nitrate: sticky

f - Nitrate: frothy, bubbles, blisters

g - Nitrate: congealed

h - Nitrate: powder

k - Non-nitrate: detectable deterioration

Codes k-m are used to record deterioration of non-nitrate materials (safety film, etc.). The codes are listed according to the seriousness of the deterioration. If more than one condition is applicable to the film in hand, the code for the most serious condition is recorded.

l - Non-nitrate: advanced deterioration

m - Non-nitrate: disaster

| - No attempt to code

16 - Completeness

Whether or not the item being cataloged is judged to be complete.

c - Complete

Judged to be complete.

i - Incomplete

Judged to be incomplete.

n - Not applicable

Completeness is not applicable to the type of motion picture, e.g., home movies, unedited footage, outtakes, and in some cases, unidentified material, etc.

u - Unknown

Completeness of the item is not known.

| - No attempt to code**17-22 - Film inspection date**

Six characters that indicate the most recent film inspection date; the date is recorded in the pattern *ccyyymm* (century/year/month). A hyphen is used for any unknown portion of the date. Six fill characters (|||||) are used if no attempt is made to code these character positions.

Film inspection date may be the date the item was cataloged or the date it was viewed. If the date is completely unknown, six hyphens are recorded.

007/17-22 199312
 [December 1993]

007/17-22 1987--
 [Inspected in 1987; the month is not known]

■ EXAMPLES

007 *mr#caaadmnrtauac198606*
[Item is a motion picture (007/00); on reel (01); in color (03); standard sound aperture (04); on medium (05); optical track (06); 16 mm. (07); monaural sound (08); production elements not applicable (09); positive emulsion (10); reference print/viewing copy (11); safety base (triacetate) (12); three-layer color (13); kind of color stock unknown (14); no apparent deterioration (15); complete film (16); and film inspected June 1986 (17-22).]

007 *mr#bf##fnnartnnai198512*
[Item is a motion picture (007/00); on reel (01); in black-and-white (03); standard silent aperture (04); no sound (05-06); 35 mm. (07); kind of sound and production elements not applicable (08-09); positive emulsion (10); reference print (11); safety base (triacetate) (12); color categories and stock not applicable (13-14) no apparent deterioration (15); incomplete film (16); and film was inspected December 1985 (17-22).]

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field length - Field 007 for the category of material **motion picture** currently has 23 character positions defined for it. The first eight positions (007/00-07) should always be used. An institution may choose additionally to code positions following 007/07 up to and including 007/22. Because the definitions of the codes in field 007 are dependent upon the character position in which they occur, the coding of any character position following 007/07 mandates that each preceding character position contains a code or fill character (|).

007 - Motion Picture

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

007/01 *Specific material designation [NEW, 2009]*
o *Film roll [NEW, 2009]*

007/02 *Original versus reproduction aspect [OBSOLETE, 1997] [USMARC only]*
Defined codes were: f (Facsimile), o (Original), r (Reproduction), and u (Unknown).

007/04 *Motion picture presentation format*
n *Not applicable [OBSOLETE, 1983]*
e *Other [OBSOLETE, 1980]*
e *Other wide-screen format [NEW, 1981]*

007/06 *Medium for sound*
g *Other [OBSOLETE, 1980]*
g *Optical and magnetic sound track on motion picture film [NEW, 1985]*

007/09 *Productions elements*
h *Other [OBSOLETE, 1988]*

007/17-22 *Film inspection date [CAN/MARC only]*

Prior to the definition of this character position, the film inspection date was coded in field 009/16-19 for Visual Materials (Film inspection date).

008 Fixed-Length Data Elements-General Information (NR)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined by type of material. Descriptions of the elements defined for field 008 positions 18-34 are in seven separate sections corresponding to the following type of material configurations: *Books (BK)*, *Computer Files (CF)*, *Maps (MP)*, *Music (MU)*, *Continuing Resources (CR)*, *Visual Materials (VM)*, and *Mixed Materials (MX)*. In this general section, validity of a particular field 008 data element is indicated by V in the composite field 008 table.

Character Positions (008/18-34 and 006/01-17)

	<u>All materials</u>	30	Undefined
00-05	Date entered on file	31	Index
06	Type of date/Publication status	32	Undefined
07-10	Date 1	33-34	Special format characteristics
11-14	Date 2		
15-17	Place of publication, production, or execution		<u>Music</u>
18-34	[See one of the seven separate 008/18-34 configuration sections for these elements]	18-19	Form of composition
35-37	Language	20	Format of music
38	Modified record	21	Music parts
39	Cataloging source	22	Target audience
		23	Form of item
		24-29	Accompanying matter
	<u>Books</u>	30-31	Literary text for sound recordings
18-21	Illustrations	32	Undefined
22	Target audience	33	Transposition and arrangement
23	Form of item	34	Undefined
24-27	Nature of contents		
28	Government publication		<u>Continuing Resources</u>
29	Conference publication	18	Frequency
30	Festschrift	19	Regularity
31	Index	20	Undefined
32	Undefined	21	Type of continuing resource
33	Literary form	22	Form of original item
34	Biography	23	Form of item
		24	Nature of entire work
	<u>Computer Files</u>	25-27	Nature of contents
81-21	Undefined	28	Government publication
22	Target audience	29	Conference publication
23	Form of item	30-32	Undefined
24-25	Undefined	33	Original alphabet or script of title
26	Type of computer file	34	Entry convention
27	Undefined		
28	Government publication		<u>Visual materials</u>
29-34	Undefined	18-20	Running time for motion pictures and videorecordings
		21	Undefined
	<u>Maps</u>	22	Target audience
18-21	Relief	23-27	Undefined
22-23	Projection	28	Government publication
24	Undefined	29	Form of item
25	Type of cartographic material	30-32	Undefined
26-27	Undefined	33	Type of visual material
28	Government publication	34	Technique
29	Form of item		

008

Mixed materials

18-22	Undefined
23	Form of item
24-34	Undefined

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Forty character positions (00-39) that provide coded information about the record as a whole and about special bibliographic aspects of the item being cataloged. These coded data elements are potentially useful for retrieval and data management purposes.

When a serial or non-serial item being described is a reproduction of a previously existing item and bibliographic information about the reproduction is given in field 533 (Reproduction Note), field 008 is coded for the original except for 008/23 (Form of item) for books, music, continuing resources, and mixed materials and 008/33 (Type of material) for visual materials, which are coded for the reproduction. (When an item is a reproduction, codes defined for certain positions of field 008, which relate to characteristics of the reproduction, are recorded in subfield ‡7 (Fixed-length data elements of reproduction) in field 533.) For reproductions for which bibliographic information is not given in field 533 (e.g., when a reproduction is being described in the body of the entry or when field 534 (Original Version Note) is used to record information about the original) and for reprints of previously existing items, field 008 is coded for the reproduction or reissue except when cataloging guidelines specifically require coding a particular position for the original.

Data elements are positionally-defined. Character positions that are not defined contain a blank (#). All defined character positions must contain a defined code; for some field 008 positions, this may be the fill character (). The fill character may be used (in certain character positions) when a cataloging organization makes no attempt to code the character position. The fill character is not allowed in field 008 positions 00-05 (Date entered on file). Its use is discouraged in positions 07-10 (Date 1), 15-17 (Place of publication, production, or execution), and the 008 position defined for Form of item (either position 23 or 29 depending upon the 008 configuration).

Character positions 00-17 and 35-39 are defined the same across all types of material, with special consideration for position 06. The definition of character positions 18-34 was done independently for each type of material, although certain data elements are defined the same in the specifications for more than one type of material. When similar data elements are defined for inclusion in field 008 for different types of material, they occupy the same field 008 character positions.

In the following documentation, character positions are described in the order of their listing at the beginning of this section. Field 008 positions 00-17 and 35-39 (**All materials**) for all types of material are described first, followed by seven groups of sections for positions 18-34 (**Books, Computer files, Maps, Music, Continuing resources, Visual materials and Mixed materials**).

008 COMPOSITE LISTING BY CHARACTER POSITION

The following list presents all field 008 data elements in character position order. It relates each character position and definition (name) to the type(s) of material for which it is valid (V).

Character Position	Name	<i>Validity by Material Type</i>						
		BK	CF	MP	MU	CR	VM	MX
00-05	Date entered on file	V	V	V	V	V	V	V
06	Type of date/Publication status	V	V	V	V	V	V	V
07-10	Date 1	V	V	V	V	V	V	V
11-14	Date 2	V	V	V	V	V	V	V
15-17	Place of publication, production, or execution	V	V	V	V	V	V	V

Character Position	Name	BK	CF	MP	MU	CR	VM	MX
18	Illustrations (code 1)	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
18	Undefined	.	V	.	.	.	.	V
18	Relief (code 1)	.	.	V	.	.	.	.
18	Form of composition (code pt. 1)	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
18	Frequency	.	.	.	.	V	.	.
18	Running time (digit 1)	.	.	.	.	.	V	.
19	Illustrations (code 2)	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
19	Undefined	.	V	.	.	.	.	V
19	Relief (code 2)	.	.	V	.	.	.	.
19	Form of composition (code pt. 2)	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
19	Regularity	.	.	.	.	V	.	.
19	Running time (digit 2)	.	.	.	.	.	V	.
20	Illustrations (code 3)	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
20	Relief (code 3)	.	.	V	.	.	.	.
20	Format of score	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
20	Running time (digit 3)	.	.	.	.	.	V	.
20	Undefined	.	V	.	.	V	.	V
21	Illustrations (code 4)	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
21	Undefined	.	V	.	.	.	V	V
21	Relief (code 4)	.	.	V	.	.	.	.
21	Type of continuing resource	.	.	.	.	V	.	.
21	Music parts	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
22	Target audience	V	V	.	V	.	V	.
22	Projection (code pt. 1)	.	.	V	.	.	.	.
22	Form of original item	.	.	.	.	V	.	.
22	Undefined	.	.	.	.	.	.	V
|23	Form of item	V	V	.	V	V	.	V
23	Undefined	.	.	.	.	.	V	.
23	Projection (code pt. 2)	.	.	V	.	.	.	.
24	Nature of contents (code 1)	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
24	Undefined	.	V	V	.	.	V	V
24	Accompanying matter (code 1)	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
24	Nature of entire work	.	.	.	.	V	.	.
25	Nature of contents (code 2)	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
25	Undefined	.	V	.	.	.	V	V
25	Type of cartographic material	.	.	V	.	.	.	.
25	Accompanying matter (code 2)	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
25	Nature of contents (code 1)	.	.	.	.	V	.	.
26	Nature of contents (code 3)	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
26	Type of computer file	.	V	.	.	.	.	.
26	Undefined	.	.	V	.	.	V	V
26	Accompanying matter (code 3)	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
26	Nature of contents (code 2)	.	.	.	.	V	.	.
27	Nature of contents (code 4)	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
27	Undefined	.	V	V	.	.	V	V
27	Accompanying matter (code 4)	.	.	.	V	.	.	.

008

Character Position	Name	BK	CF	MP	MU	CR	VM	MX
27	Nature of contents (code 3)	.	.	.	.	V	.	.
28	Government publications	V	V	V	.	V	V	.
28	Accompanying matter (code 5)	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
28	Undefined	.	.	.	.	.	.	V
29	Conference publication	V	.	.	.	V	.	.
29	Undefined	.	V	.	.	.	.	V
29	Form of item	.	.	V	.	.	V	.
29	Accompanying matter (code 6)	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
30	Festschrift	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
30	Undefined	.	V	V	.	V	V	V
30	Literary text for sound recordings (code 1)	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
31	Index	V	.	V	.	.	.	.
31	Undefined	.	V	.	.	V	V	V
31	Literary text for sound recordings (code 2)	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
32	Undefined	V	V	V	V	V	V	V
33	Literary form	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
33	Undefined	.	V	.	V	.	.	V
33	Special format characteristics (code 1)	.	.	V	.	.	.	.
33	Original alphabet or script of title	.	.	.	.	V	.	.
33	Transposition and arrangement	.	.	.	V	.	.	.
33	Type of visual material	.	.	.	.	.	V	.
34	Biography	V	.	.	.	.	.	.
34	Undefined	.	V	.	V	.	.	V
34	Special format characteristics (code 2)	.	.	V	.	.	.	.
34	Entry convention	.	.	.	.	V	.	.
34	Technique	.	.	.	.	.	V	.
35-37	Language	V	V	V	V	V	V	V
38	Modified record	V	V	V	V	V	V	V
39	Cataloging source	V	V	V	V	V	V	V

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Changes to several character positions in field 008 were approved as part of Format Integration and related proposals. See the History section for character positions 18-34 of the individual 008 field configurations for a description of the changes. The changes to field 008 were incorporated into the current MARC specifications in 1995.

In 2002, the Serials 008 field was renamed "Continuing Resources."

008/33 Comics strips (BK) [OBSOLETE, 2008] [MARC 21]

008/40 Fill character usage [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions (008/18-34 and 006/01-17)

18-21	Illustrations (006/01-04)	b	Bibliographies
#	No illustrations	c	Catalogs
a	Illustrations	d	Dictionaries
b	Maps	e	Encyclopedias
c	Portraits	f	Handbooks
d	Charts	g	Legal articles
e	Plans	i	Indexes
f	Plates	j	Patent document
g	Music	k	Discographies
h	Facsimiles	l	Legislation
i	Coats of arms	m	Theses
j	Geneological tables	n	Surveys of literature in a subject area
k	Forms	o	Reviews
l	Samples	p	Programmed texts
m	Phonodisc, phonowire, etc.	q	Filmographies
o	Photographs	r	Directories
p	Illuminations	s	Statistics
|	No attempt to code	t	Technical reports
		u	Standards/specifications
22	Target audience (006/05)	v	Legal cases and case notes
#	Unknown or not specified	w	Law reports and digests
a	Preschool	y	Yearbooks
b	Primary	z	Treaties
c	Pre-adolescent	2	Offprints
d	Adolescent	5	Calendars
e	Adult	6	Comics/graphic novels
f	Specialized	|	No attempt to code
g	General		
j	Juvenile	28	Government publication (006/11)
|	No attempt to code	#	Not a government publication
		a	Autonomous of semi-autonomous component
23	Form of item (006/06)	c	Multilocal
#	None of the following	f	Federal/national
a	Microfilm	i	International intergovernmental
b	Microfiche	l	Local
c	Microopaque	m	Multistate
d	Large print	o	Government publication - level undetermined
f	Braille	s	State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.
o	Online	u	Unknown if item is government publication
q	Direct electronic	z	Other
r	Regular print reproduction	|	No attempt to code
s	Electronic		
|	No attempt to code	29	Conference publication (006/12)
		0	Not a conference publication
24-27	Nature of contents (006/07-10)	1	Conference publication
#	No specified nature of contents	|	No attempt to code
a	Abstracts/summaries		

008 - Books

30	Festschrift (006/13)	e	Essays
0	Not a festschrift	f	Novels
1	Festschrift	h	Humor, satires, etc.
|	No attempt to code	i	Letters
		j	Short stories
31	Index (006/14)	m	Mixed forms
0	No index	p	Poetry
1	Index present	s	Speeches
|	No attempt to code	u	Unknown
		|	No attempt to code
32	Undefined (006/15)		
#	Undefined	34	Biography (006/17)
|	No attempt to code	#	No biographical material
		a	Autobiography
33	Literary form (006/16)	b	Individual biography
0	Not fiction (not further specified)	c	Collective biography
1	Fiction (not further specified)	d	Contains biographical information
d	Dramas	|	No attempt to code

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Books definition of field 008/18-34 is used when Leader/06 (Type of record) contains code a (Language material) or t (Manuscript language material) and Leader/07 (Bibliographic level) contains code a (Monographic component part), c (Collection), d (Subunit), or m (Monograph). Field 008 positions 01-17 and 35-39 are defined the same in all 008 fields and are described in the *008-All materials* section.

Field 008/18-34 correspond to equivalent positionally defined data elements in field 006/01-17 when field 006/00 (Form of material) contains code a (Language material) or t (Manuscript language material). Details about specific codes defined for the equivalent character positions in field 006 and 008 for **books** are provided in the *Guidelines for Applying Content Designators* section of *008-Books* only.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

18-21 - Illustrations (006/01-04)

Up to four (4) one-character alphabetic codes (recorded in alphabetical order) that indicate the presence of types of illustrations in the item. If fewer than four alphabetic codes are assigned, the codes are left justified and unused positions contain blanks (#).

Represented by field 008 or 006 with a **books** configuration. Information for this character position is usually derived from terms in field 300 (Physical Description). If more than four codes are appropriate to an item, only the first four are recorded.

- No illustrations

Work does not contain illustrations. When # is used in 008/18, it is always followed by three other blanks in 008/19-21.

a - Illustrations

Types of illustrations not covered by any of the more specific codes are coded using code a.

b - Maps

Used when the term *map* or *maps* is present in field 300.

c - Portraits

Used when the term *port.* or *ports.* is present in field 300.

d - Charts

Used when the term *chart* or *charts* is present in field 300.

e - Plans

Used when the term *plan* or *plans* is present in field 300.

f - Plates

Used when the term *plate* or *plates* is present in field 300.

g - Music

Used when the term *music* is present in field 300.

h - Facsimiles

Used when the term *facsim.* or *facsim.* is present in field 300.

i - Coats of arms

Used when the term *coat of arms* or *coats of arms* is present in field 300.

j - Genealogical tables

Used when the term *geneal. table* or *geneal. tables* is present in field 300. The presence of the term *table* or *tables* alone mandates the use of code a.

k - Forms

Used when the term *form* or *forms* is present in field 300.

l - Samples

Used when the term *sample* or *samples* is present in field 300.

m - Phonodisc, phonowire, etc.

Used, on current records, when the following terms are present in field 300: *sound disc*, *sound cartridge*, *sound tape reel*, *sound cassette*, *roll*, and *cylinder*. On older records, code m is used for any term beginning with *phono*, e.g., *phonodisc*.

o - Photographs

Used when the term *photo.* or *photos.* is present in field 300. If the photographs are of minor importance code a (Illustrations) may be used.

p - Illuminations

008/18-21 a###
300 ##\$a271 p. :\$bill. ;\$c21 cm.

008/18-21 f###
300 ##\$a246 p., 32 p. of plates ;\$c26 cm.

008 - Books

008/18-21 ab##
300 ##~~t~~bill., maps (in pocket)

008/18-21 acf#
300 ##~~t~~bill., plates, ports.

008/18-21 acdg
300 ##~~t~~bill., charts, facsim., music, ports.

008/18-21 #####
300 ##~~t~~a367 p. ;~~t~~c23 cm.
[no illustrations in the item]

| - No attempt to code

22 - Target audience (006/05)

One-character alphabetic code that describes the intellectual level of the target audience for which the material is intended.

When items with factual content are considered appropriate for more than one target audience, the code is recorded for the primary target audience. If the record has both reading grade level and interest age or interest grade level information present in the 521 (Target Audience Note) field, 008/22 is coded based on the interest age.

- Unknown or not specified

Target audience for which the material is intended is unknown or is not specified.

008/22 #
245 02~~t~~aA Consumer's guide to auto repair costs.

a - Preschool

Intended for children, approximate ages 0-5 years.

b - Primary

Intended for children, approximate ages 6-8 years.

c - Pre-adolescent

Intended for young people, approximate ages 9-13.

d - Adolescent

Intended for young people, approximate ages 14-17.

e - Adult

Intended for adults.

f - Specialized

Aimed at a particular audience and the nature of the presentation would make the item of little interest to other audiences. Examples of items which are coded f include: 1) technical material geared to a specialized audience, and 2) items which address a limited audience; for example, the employees of a single organization.

008/22 f
245 10~~t~~aMARC for library use.

g - General

Of general interest and not aimed at a particular target audience. The code is used for most fictional works that are not covered more appropriately by one of the other codes.

008/22 g
245 10#1aLetter from Peking ;1ba novel.

j - Juvenile

Intended for use by children and young people, approximate ages 0-15. The code is used when a more specific code for the juvenile target audience is not desired.

008/22 j
650 #0#1aGrizzly bear1xJuvenile literature.

008/22 j
245 00#1aSaturday morning heroes ...

| - No attempt to code**23 - Form of item (006/06)**

One-character alphabetic code that specifies the form of material for the item.

- None of the following

Not specified by one of the other codes.

a - Microfilm**b - Microfiche**

008/23 b
300 ###1a1 microfiche ;1c10 x 15 cm.

c - Microopaque**d - Large print**

008/23 d
250 ###1aLarge print ed.

f - Braille**o - Online**

The resource is accessed by means of hardware and software connections to a communications network. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

q - Direct electronic

Storage on a directly accessible tangible recording medium, e.g. disc, tape, playaway device, flashdrive, portable hard drive, etc. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

008 - Books

r - Regular print reproduction

Eye-readable print, such as a photocopy.

008/23 r
500 ##~~1~~aPhoto-reproduction of 1963 edition.

s - Electronic

Intended for manipulation by a computer. The item may reside in a carrier accessed either directly or remotely, in some cases requiring the use of peripheral devices attached to the computer (e.g., a CD-ROM player). This code is not used for items that do not require the use of a computer (e.g., music compact discs, videodiscs). This code can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource. Codes o and q may be used if there is a need to separately identify online and direct electronic resources.

| - No attempt to code

Use of this code is discouraged since form of item information is often used in retrieval and duplicate detection.

24-27 - Nature of contents (006/07-10)

Up to four one-character codes that indicate whether a significant part of the item is or contains certain types of material. If fewer than four codes are assigned, the codes are left justified and unused positions contain blanks (#).

Information for these character positions is usually derived from other areas of the bibliographic record (e.g., field 245 (Title Statement), 5XX (Note) fields, or 6XX (Subject Added Entry) fields). Up to four codes may be recorded. If more than four codes are appropriate to an item, the four most significant are selected.

- No specified nature of contents

When # is used in 008/24, it is followed by three other blanks.

008/24-27 #####
245 14~~1~~aThe responsibilities of leadership /~~1~~c ...
 [No special nature of contents given]

a - Abstracts/summaries

Abstracts or summaries of other publications. Not used when a publication includes an abstract or summary of its own content.

b - Bibliographies

All or part of an item is a bibliography or bibliographies. Used only if the bibliography is substantial enough to be mentioned in the bibliographic record. *Note:* Because bibliographies are included as part of the definition of code n, code b is not used when code n is present.

008/24-27 b###
504 ##~~1~~aBibliography: p. 104-177.c - Catalogs

c - Catalogs

Also includes lists of collectible objects, such as stamps and coins, or trade catalogs, etc. For catalogs of books, sound recordings, or motion pictures, code b (Bibliographies), code k (Discographies), or code q (Filmographies), are given with code c.

d - Dictionaries

Also used for a glossary or a gazetteer.

Concordances are coded as Indexes (code i). Monographic biographical dictionaries are coded as collected biography (code c) in 008/34 (Biography) rather than as a dictionary here.

008/24-27 d###

245 10~~t~~aDictionnaire de la langue québécoise.

e - Encyclopedias

Encyclopedia or an encyclopedic treatment of a specific topic.

f - Handbooks**g - Legal articles**

Contains substantive articles on legal topics, such as those published in law school reviews.

008/24-27 gl##

245 10~~t~~aLaws of the land interpreted :~~t~~bcompendium of contemporary law with analyses and commentary /~~t~~cedited by ...

i - Indexes

Index to bibliographical material *other* than itself.

Not used when a publication contains an index to its own content.

j - Patent document

Detailed description of an invention or discovery of a new and useful process, machine, manufacture, composition of matter, or improvements thereof. A patent document may be one of several kinds of documents: a patent or similar document (e.g., inventor's certificate), a patent application (domestic, foreign, priority application, etc.), or a continuation/division of one of the above.

k - Discographies

Entire item, or a significant part of it, is a discography or discographies, or other bibliography of recorded sound. Used only if the discography is substantial enough to be mentioned in the bibliographic record. For discographies that are also catalogs, both code k and code c are given.

008/24-27 bkq#

504 ~~##t~~aBibliography: p. 80-84.

504 ~~##t~~aDiscography: p. 85-97.

504 ~~##t~~aFilmography: p. 98-101.

l - Legislation

Full or partial texts of enactments of legislative bodies, published either in statute or in code form, or texts of rules and regulations issued by executive or administrative agencies.

m - Theses

Thesis, dissertation, or work identified as having been created to satisfy the requirements for an academic certification or degree.

n - Surveys of literature in a subject area

Composed entirely of authored surveys that summarize what has been published about a subject.

Usually contains a list of references either in the body of the work or as a bibliography. *Note:* Because bibliographies are included as part of the definition of code n, code b (Bibliographies) should not be recorded when code n is present.

008 - Books

o - Reviews

Devoted entirely to critical reviews of published or performed works (e.g., books, films, sound recordings, theater).

p - Programmed texts

q - Filmographies

Entire item, or a significant part of it, is a filmography or other bibliography of moving images. Used only if the filmography is substantial enough to be mentioned in the bibliographic record. For filmographies that are also catalogs, both code q and code c (Catalogs) are given.

008/24-27 bkq#
504 ##~~†~~aBibliography: p. 80-84.
504 ##~~†~~aDiscography: p. 85-97.
504 ##~~†~~aFilmography: p. 98-101.

r - Directories

Directory or register of persons or corporate bodies. Monographic biographical dictionaries are coded as collected biography (code c) in 008/34 (Biography) rather than as a directory here.

s - Statistics

Entire item, or a significant part of it, is a collection of statistical data on a subject. Not used for works about statistical methodology.

t - Technical reports

Work that is the result of scientific investigation or technical development, testing, or evaluation, presented in a form suitable for dissemination to the technical community.

u - Standards/specifications

Either an international, national or industry standard or a specification which gives a precise statement of a process or a service requirement.

v - Legal cases and case notes

Discussions, such as those in the case comments section of law school reviews, of particular legal cases that have been decided by, or that are pending before, courts or administrative agencies.

w - Law reports and digests

Texts of decisions of courts or administrative agencies. Also used when a work consists of texts of digests of such decisions.

y - Yearbooks

Reference publication issued on an annual or less frequent basis that contains articles summarizing the accomplishments or events of a particular year within a specific discipline or area of endeavor. Annual reports, which are administrative overviews of an organization, are not coded here.

z - Treaties

Treaty or accord negotiated between two or more parties to settle a disagreement, establish a relationship, grant rights, etc.

2 - Offprints

Publication that originally was published as an article in a monograph or a serial and that is also issued separately and independently. Includes preprints and postprints.

5 - Calendars

Published systems of organizing days. These may be academic calendars or almanacs, calendars published by bodies, such as labor organizations, library associations, etc.

6 - Comics/graphic novels

Instances of "sequential art" in which a story (whether fact or fiction) is told primarily through a set of images (often in the form of multiple "panels" per page) presented concurrently but meant to be "read" sequentially by the viewer. The accompanying narrative and/or dialog text, when it occurs, works integrally with the images to tell the story.

| - No attempt to code**28 - Government publication (006/11)**

One-character code that indicates whether or not the item is published or produced by or for an international, national, state, provincial, or local government agency, or by any subdivision of such a body.

Also describes the jurisdictional level of the government agency associated with the item. A government body and all its subdivisions are treated as government bodies regardless of how they may be entered as headings (i.e., entered under jurisdiction or not). In the bibliographic record, the body does not have to be a main or added entry, but it should be named as publisher, etc. in the publication, distribution, etc. area, or have caused the item to be published (usually inferred when the governmental body is responsible for the content of the work). When in doubt, treat the item as a government publication.

Guidelines for certain types of publications

- **Socialist countries** - Since the coding of all items published in socialist countries as government publications would limit the usefulness of this element, coding should be used only for the same type of bodies that would be considered government in a non-socialist country. In coding items in this manner, when in doubt, treat the item as a government publication.
- **Two levels** - If an item is published or produced jointly by government agencies at two different levels, record the code for the higher government level.
- **Academic publications** - In the U.S., items published by academic institutions are considered government publications if the institutions are created or controlled by a government.
- **University presses** - In the U.S., items published by university presses are considered government publications if the presses are created or controlled by a government (e.g., state university presses in the United States).

- Not a government publication

Not published by or for a government body.

008/28 #
110 2#†aInternational Comparative Literature Association.

008/28 #
260 ##†aNew York :†bMacmillan,†c1983.

a - Autonomous or semi-autonomous component

Published or produced by or for a government body of an autonomous or semi-autonomous component of a country.

008/28 a
110 1#†aSabah.

008 - Books

c - Multilocal

Published or produced by or for a multilocal jurisdiction which is defined as a regional combination of jurisdictions below the state level.

008/28 c
110 2#†aHouston Independent School District.

f - Federal/national

Published or produced by or for a federal or national government body (e.g., a sovereign nation, such as Canada). Used for the governments of England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland. Also used for American Indian tribes.

008/28 f
110 2#†aNational Agricultural Library.

i - International intergovernmental

Published or produced by or for an international intergovernmental body.

008/28 i
110 2#†aUnited Nations.†bSecretary-General.

l - Local

Published or produced by or for a local government jurisdiction such as a town, city, county, etc.

008/28 l
110 1#†aMexico City (Mexico)

m - Multistate

Published or produced by or for a regional combination of jurisdictions at the state, provincial, territorial, etc. level.

008/28 m
110 2#†aCouncil of State Governments.

o - Government publication-level undetermined

Published or produced by or for a government body but that the jurisdictional level cannot be determined.

s - State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.

Jurisdictional level of the government body is a state, province, territory, or other dependent jurisdiction.

008/28 s
110 1#†aVirginia.†bGovernor.

u - Unknown if item is government publication

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

29 - Conference publication (006/12)

One-character code that indicates whether the item consists of the proceedings, reports, or summaries of a conference.

The following types are considered to be conference publications:

- Proceedings, including collections or partial collections of papers (or of contributions, essays, etc., that are based upon papers) presented at a conference or meeting.
- A partial collection, defined as a work containing two or more papers (or contributions, essays, etc., that are based upon papers) presented at a conference or meeting.
- A collection of preprints of conference papers.

The following types of publications are *not* considered conference publications:

- Works composed of or based on a single paper
- Hearings of legislative bodies
- Courses given in a school (except where the main entry is the name of a meeting)

0 - Not a conference publication

008/29 0
245 12†aA first course in physics /†cby Robert Andrew Millikan ...

1 - Conference publication

008/29 1
245 10†aProceedings of the Third Seminar on Quantum Gravity ...

| - No attempt to code

30 - Festschrift (006/13)

One-character code that indicates whether the item is a festschrift.

Defined as a complimentary or memorial publication usually in the form of a collection of essays, addresses, or biographical, bibliographic, scientific, or other contributions. It often embodies the results of research, issued in honor of a person, an institution, or a society, as a rule, on the occasion of an anniversary celebration. A true festschrift generally mentions the person, institution, or society it commemorates on the chief source of information (i.e., title page). The title of the work may or may not use the word *festschrift*. Other indications that an item is a festschrift include phrases such as: *papers in honor of*, *in memory of*, *commemorating*, and their equivalents in foreign languages.

0 - Not a festschrift

008/30 0
245 10†aEssays on nuclear physics.

1 - Festschrift

008/30 1
245 10†aFoundations of mathematics :†bsymposium papers commemorating the sixtieth birthday of Kurt Gödel.

008/30 1
245 10†aFestschrift to honor F. Wilbur Gingrich, lexicographer ...

| - No attempt to code

008 - Books

31 - Index (006/14)

One-character numeric code that indicates whether the item includes an index to its own contents.

Information for this data element is derived from mention of an index in another part of the bibliographic record (e.g, in the title, or in a note).

0 - No index

008/31 0
 [No indication of index in bibliographic data]

1 - Index present

008/31 1
500 ##~~1~~aIncludes index.

008/31 1
245 14~~1~~aThe corporate law of the District of Columbia :~~1~~bannotated : with index /~~1~~cby Frederick S. Tyler ...

| - No attempt to code

32 - Undefined (006/15)

Contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

33 - Literary form (006/16)

One-character code used to indicate the literary form of an item. Numeric codes 0 and 1 provide a generic identification of whether or not the item is a work of fiction. Alphabetic codes may be used to identify specific literary forms.

0 - Not fiction (not further specified)

Not a work of fiction and no further identification of the literary form is desired.

008/33 0
100 1#~~1~~aClarke, Mary,~~1~~d1923-
245 10~~1~~aBallet in art :~~1~~bfrom the Renaissance to the present ...

1 - Fiction (not further specified)

Work of fiction but no further identification of the literary form is desired.

008/33 1
100 1#~~1~~aDalglish, Alice,~~1~~d1893-
245 14~~1~~aThe bears on Hemlock Mountain ...
650 #1~~1~~aBears~~1~~xFiction.

d - Dramas

e - Essays

f - Novels

h - Humor, satires, etc.

Humorous work, satire, or of similar literary form.

i - Letters

Single letter or collection of correspondence.

j - Short stories

Short story or collection of short stories.

m - Mixed forms

Represents a variety of literary forms (e.g., poetry and short stories).

p - Poetry

Poem or collection of poems.

s - Speeches

Speech or collection of speeches.

u - Unknown

Literary form of the item is unknown.

| - No attempt to code**34 - Biography (006/17)**

One-character alphabetic code that indicates whether or not an item contains biographical material, and if so, what the biographical characteristics are.

- No biographical material

No biographical or autobiographical material.

008/34 #
245 00#aDictionary of Russian verbs.

a - Autobiography**b - Individual biography**

Biography of one individual.

008/34 b
100 1##aDampenon, Philippe.
245 10#aMichel Sardou /#cpar Philippe Dampenon.

c - Collective biography

Biographical material about more than one individual.

008/34 c
245 10#aUnited States music :#bsources of bibliography and collective biography.

d - Contains biographical information

008/34 d
245 00#aCorrespondance inédite de Victor... #bprécédée d'une notice...

| - No attempt to code

008 - Books

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

Field length - Field 008 should always consist of forty (40) character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

008/22 *Target audience*

- c *Elementary and junior high* [RENAMED, 2002]
- d *Secondary (senior high)* [RENAMED, 2002]
- u *School material at first level* [OBSOLETE]
- v *School material at second level* [OBSOLETE]

Prior to the definition of codes a through g in 1995, only codes # and j were used in USMARC.

008/23 *Form of item*

- # *None of the following* [REDEFINED, 1987]
- g *Punched paper tape* [OBSOLETE, 1987]
- h *Magnetic tape* [OBSOLETE, 1987]
- i *Multimedia* [OBSOLETE, 1987]
- o *Online* [NEW, 2010]
- q *Direct electronic* [NEW, 2010]
- z *Other form of reproduction* [OBSOLETE, 1987]

Code # (Not a reproduction) was redefined when the focus of 008/23 was changed. The other codes were made obsolete when the coding of 008/23 (Form of reproduction code) was redefined as information about the medium of the item in hand rather than about bibliographic reproductions.

008/24-27 *Nature of contents*

- h *Handbooks* [OBSOLETE]
- k *Official standards* [REDEFINED, 1997]
- u *Standards/specifications* [NEW, 2002]
- q *Examination papers* [REDEFINED, 1997]
- x *Technical reports* [OBSOLETE, 1997]
- y *Yearbooks* [OBSOLETE, 1988] [REDEFINED, 2008]
- 2 *Offprint* [NEW, 2007]
- 3 *Discographies* [OBSOLETE, 1997]
- 4 *Filmographies* [OBSOLETE, 1997]
- 5 *Calendars* [NEW, 2008]
- 6 *Comics/graphic novels* [NEW, 2008]

Prior to 1979, handbooks were identified by code h; code f is currently used. Prior to 1987, discographies were identified by code b.

008/28 *Government publication*

- n *Government publication-level undetermined* [OBSOLETE]

Prior to 1979, an undetermined level was identified by code n; code o is currently used.

008/32 *Main entry in body of entry* [OBSOLETE, 1990]

Defined codes were: 0 (Main entry not in body of entry), 1 (Main entry in body of entry).

008/33 *Literary form*

- # *Non-fiction* [OBSOLETE, 1997]
- c *Comic strips* [OBSOLETE, 2008]

Prior to the definition of 11 new codes and the change of name for this character position to *Literary form* in 1997, only the generic codes 0 (Not fiction) and 1 (Fiction) were used in USMARC.

008 Computer Files

(NR)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions (008/18-34 and 006/01-17)

18-21	Undefined (006/01-04)	f	Font
#	Undefined	g	Game
|	No attempt to code	h	Sound
		i	Interactive multimedia
22	Target audience (006/05)	j	Online system or service
#	Unknown or not specified	m	Combination
a	Preschool	u	Unknown
b	Primary	z	Other
c	Pre-adolescent	|	No attempt to code
d	Adolescent		
e	Adult	27	Undefined (006/10)
f	Specialized	#	Undefined
g	General	|	No attempt to code
j	Juvenile		
|	No attempt to code	28	Government publication (006/11)
		#	Not a government publication
|23	Form of item (006/06)	a	Autonomous or semi-autonomous component
#	Unknown or not specified	c	Multilocal
|o	Online	f	Federal/national
|q	Direct electronic	i	International intergovernmental
|	No attempt to code	l	Local
		m	Multistate
24-25	Undefined (006/07-08)	o	Government publication-level undetermined
#	Undefined	s	State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.
|	No attempt to code	u	Unknown if item is government publication
		z	Other
26	Type of computer file (006/09)	|	No attempt to code
a	Numeric data		
b	Computer program	29-34	Undefined (006/12-17)
c	Representational	#	Undefined
d	Document	|	No attempt to code
e	Bibliographic data		

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Computer files definition of field 008/18-34 is used when Leader/06 (Type of record) contains code m. Field 008 positions 01-17 and 35-39 are defined the same in all 008 fields and are described in the *008-All materials* section.

Field 008/18-34 correspond to equivalent positionally defined data elements in field 006/01-17 when field 006/00 (Form of material) contains code m (Computer file/Electronic resource). Details about specific codes defined for the equivalent character positions in field 006 and 008 for **computer files** are provided in the *Guidelines for Applying Content Designators* section of *008-Computer files* only.

008 - Computer Files

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

18-21 - Undefined (006/01-04)

Four undefined character positions; each contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

22 - Target audience (006/05)

One-character alphabetic code indicates the target audience for which the material is intended.

Used primarily for educational electronic materials. When items with factual content are considered appropriate for more than one target audience, the code is recorded for the primary target audience.

If the record has both reading grade and interest age information present in the 521 (Target Audience Note) field, 008/22 is coded based on the interest age information.

- Unknown or not specified

Target audience for which the material is intended is unknown or is not specified.

008/22 #

245 10#aMacPoint|h[electronic resource] /|cwritten by Bill Atkinson.

a - Preschool

Intended for children, approximate ages 0-5 years.

008/22 a

245 00#aSesame Street letters for you|h[electronic resource].

b - Primary

Intended for children, approximate ages 6-8 years.

008/22 b

245 10#aAlphabet zoo|h[electronic resource].

c - Pre-adolescent

Intended for young people, approximate ages 9-13.

008/22 c

245 10#aEating for good health|h[electronic resource] /|cwritten by Del Surette.

d - Adolescent

Intended for young people, approximate ages 14-17.

008/22 d

245 10#aBumble plot|h[electronic resource] /|cby Leslie Grimm ; artist, Corinne.

e - Adult

Intended for adults.

008/22 e

245 00#aMaInTax 1985|h[electronic resource] /|cdeveloped by Michael W. Morgan ...

f - Specialized

Aimed at a particular audience and the nature of the presentation would make the item of little interest to other audiences. Examples of items which are coded f include: 1) technical software geared to a very specialized audience and 2) items which address a limited audience, for example, the employees of a single organization.

008/22 f

245 001aDimensional analysis:h[electronic resource] :tbengineering software ...

g - General

Of general interest and not aimed at an audience of a particular intellectual level. Used for fictional works that are not covered more appropriately by one of the other codes.

008/22 g

245 001a[Lode runner]:h[electronic resource].

j - Juvenile

Intended for use by children and young people, approximate ages 0-15. Used when one does not want to more specifically code for the juvenile target audience.

008/22 j

245 001aEasy color paint:h[electronic resource].

| - No attempt to code

23 - Form of item (006/06)

One-character alphabetic code that specifies the form of material for the item.

- Unknown or not specified

o - Online

The resource is accessed by means of hardware and software connections to a communications network.

q - Direct electronic

Storage on a directly accessible tangible recording medium, e.g. disc, tape, playaway device, flashdrive, portable hard drive, etc.

| - No attempt to code

24-25 - Undefined (006/07-08)

Two undefined character positions; each contains a blank (#) or a fill character (()).

26 - Type of computer file (006/09)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the type of computer file described in the bibliographic record.

Specific type of electronic resource is also described in textual form in field 516 (Type of Computer File or Data Note).

008 - Computer Files

a - Numeric data

Mostly numbers or representation by numbers, such as records containing all information on student test scores, all information on football team statistics, etc. Information may be original surveys and/or information that has been summarized or statistically manipulated.

008/26 a
516 ##~~1~~aNumeric data

b - Computer program

Ordered set of instructions directing the computer to perform basic operations and identifying the information and mechanisms required. Includes videogames and microcomputer software and computer models. Some types of computer programs (e.g., game, font) are identified by separate codes in this character position.

008/26 b
516 ##~~1~~aComputer programs

c - Representational

Pictorial or graphic information that can be manipulated in conjunction with other types of files to produce graphic patterns that can be used to interpret and give meaning to the information.

Does not include a document in image format.

008/26 c
516 ##~~1~~aGraphic data (Architectural drawings)

d - Document

Textual, consisting mostly of alphabetic information (words or sentences) converted into a coded format that can be processed, sorted, and manipulated by machine, and then retrieved in many optional formats. Includes language material intended to constitute a textual document, whether represented as ASCII or image data. Includes both single bibliographic entities or a collection of bibliographic entities. Documents whose primary purpose is textual, even if search software is present, are coded here.

008/26 d
516 ##~~1~~aText (Law reports and digests)

e - Bibliographic data

Data with bibliographic citations. Includes data from library catalogs or citation databases. The data may be in a structured or unstructured form. Search software may be present, but the purpose of the record is description of the content of the bibliographic data or database, rather than description of the online system or service.

008/26 e
516 ##~~1~~aLibrary catalog

f - Font

Information for a computer to produce fonts.

008/26 f
516 ##~~1~~aFonts (Bitmapped and PostScript)

g - Game

Intended for recreational or educational use. Generally games consist of text and software. A videogame is included here.

008/26 g
516 ##~~1~~aComputer game

h - Sound

Data encoding sounds producible by the computer.

008/26 h
516 ##~~1~~aAudio data (Digital audio file)

i - Interactive multimedia

Supports navigation through and manipulation of many kinds of media (i.e., audio, video, etc.). Interactive multimedia usually gives the user a high level of control, often allowing almost conversational interaction with the computer and data.

j - Online system or service

May contain nonbibliographic information. An online system or service supports system-based user interaction. If the focus of the record is to describe the system itself, with the content of the databases incidental contained therein, it is coded here. If the resource is an online file where the system is incidental to the description, it falls into another category. Examples of online systems or services are: online library systems (consisting of a variety of databases), FTP sites, electronic bulletin boards, network information centers.

008/26 j
516 ##~~1~~aCampus-wide information system

m - Combination

Combination of two or more of the above types of files.

008/26 m
516 ##~~1~~aComputer programs and text files

u - Unknown

Type of file is unknown.

008/26 u

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

008/26 z
516 ##~~1~~aMailing list

| - No attempt to code

27 - Undefined (006/10)

Undefined; contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

008 - Computer Files

28 - Government publication (006/11)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates whether the computer file is published or produced by or for an international, national, provincial, state, or local government agency (including intergovernmental bodies of all types), any subdivision of such a body and, if so, the jurisdictional level of the agency.

Government bodies and all their subdivisions are treated as government bodies regardless of how they may be entered as headings (i.e., entered under jurisdiction or not). In the bibliographic record, the body does not have to be a main or added entry, but it should be named as publisher, etc. in the publication, distribution, etc. area, or have caused the item to be published (usually inferred when the governmental body is responsible for the content of the work). When in doubt, treat the item as a government publication.

Guidelines for certain types of publications

- **Socialist countries** - Since the coding of all items published in socialist countries as government publications would limit the usefulness of this element, coding should be used only for the same type of bodies that would be considered government in a non-socialist country. In coding items in this manner, when in doubt, treat the item as a government publication.
- **Two levels** - If an item is published or produced jointly by government agencies at two different levels, record the code for the higher government level.
- **Academic publications** - In the U.S., items published by academic institutions are considered government publications if the institutions are created or controlled by a government.
- **University presses** - In the U.S., items published by university presses are considered government publications if the presses are created or controlled by a government (e.g., state university presses in the United States).

- Not a government publication

Not published by or for a government body.

008/28 #
110 2#1a Sentinel Software Ltd.

008/28 #
130 0#1a Ms. Pac-Man.

a - Autonomous or semi-autonomous component

Published or produced by or for a government body of an autonomous or semi-autonomous component of a country.

008/28 a
110 1#1a Sabah.

c - Multilocal

Published or produced by or for a multilocal jurisdiction which is defined as a regional combination of jurisdictions below the state level.

008/28 c
110 2#1a Houston Independent School District.

f - Federal/national

Published or produced by or for a federal or national government body, e.g., a sovereign nation, such as Canada. Used for the governments of England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland. Code f is also used for American Indian tribes.

008/28 f
110 2#1a Centre national de la recherche scientifique (France)

008 - Computer Files

i - International intergovernmental

Published or produced by or for an international intergovernmental body.

008/28 i
110 2#~~1~~aUnesco.

l - Local

Published or produced by or for a local government jurisdiction such as a county, city, town, etc.

008/28 l
110 1#~~1~~aSchiedam (Netherlands)

m - Multistate

Published or produced by or for a regional combination of jurisdictions at the state, provincial, territorial, etc., level.

008/28 m
110 2#~~1~~aCouncil of State Governments.

o - Government publication-level undetermined

Published or produced by or for a government body but that the jurisdictional level cannot be determined.

s - State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.

Jurisdictional level of the government body that published or produced an item is a state, province, territory, etc.

008/28 s
110 1#~~1~~aVirginia.~~1~~bDivision of Motor Vehicles.

u - Unknown if item is government publication

Whether or not the item is published or produced by or for a government agency is unknown.

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

29-34 - Undefined (006/12-17)

Six undefined character positions; each contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

Field length - Field 008 should always consist of forty (40) character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

008/18 Frequency [OBSOLETE, 1995]
Defined codes were: # (No determinable frequency), a (Annual), b (Bimonthly), c (Semiweekly), d (Daily), e (Biweekly), f (Semiannual), g (Biennial), h (Triennial), i (Three times a week), j (Three times a month), m (Monthly), n (Not applicable), q (Quarterly), s (Semimonthly), t (Three times a year), u (Unknown), w (Weekly), and z (Other). For serially issued computer files, frequency can be coded in field 006/01 configured for serials.

008 - Computer Files

008/19 *Regularity* [OBSOLETE, 1995]

Defined codes were: # (Not applicable), n (Normalized irregular), r (Regular), x (Completely irregular), and u (Unknown). For serially issued computer files, regularity can be coded in field 006/02 configured for serials.

008/22 *Target audience* [NEW, 1988] [USMARC only]

Prior to the definition of this element, the byte was undefined. Prior to 1993, when code j (Juvenile) was defined, juvenile materials could only be identified by codes a (Preschool), b (Primary), and c (Elementary and junior high).

c *Elementary and junior high* [RENAMED, 2002]

d *Secondary (senior high)* [RENAMED, 2002]

008/23 *Form of item* [NEW, 2010]

Prior to the definition of this element, the byte was undefined and contained a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

o *Online* [NEW, 2010]

q *Direct electronic* [NEW, 2010]

008/27 *Type of machine* [OBSOLETE, 1989]

Defined codes were: a (Computer readable), z (Other).

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions (008/18-34 and 006/01-17)

18-19 Form of composition (006/01-02)

an	Anthems	pg	Program music
bd	Ballads	pm	Passion music
bg	Bluegrass music	po	Polonaises
bl	Blues	pp	Popular music
bt	Ballets	pr	Preludes
ca	Chaconnes	ps	Passacaglias
cb	Chants, Other religions	pt	Part-songs
cc	Chant, Christian	pv	Pavans
cg	Concerti grossi	rc	Rock music
ch	Chorales	rd	Rondos
cl	Chorale preludes	rg	Ragtime music
cn	Canons and rounds	ri	Ricercars
co	Concertos	rp	Rhapsodies
cp	Chansons, polyphonic	rq	Requiems
cr	Carols	sd	Square dance music
cs	Chance compositions	sg	Songs
ct	Cantatas	sn	Sonatas
cy	Country music	sp	Symphonic poems
cz	Canzonas	st	Studies and exercises
df	Dance forms	su	Suites
dv	Divertimentos, serenades, cassations, divertissements, and nocturni	sy	Symphonies
fg	Fugues	tc	Toccatas
|fl	Flamenco	|tl	Teatro lirico
fm	Folk music	ts	Trio-sonatas
ft	Fantasias	uu	Unknown
gm	Gospel music	|vi	Villancicos
hy	Hymns	vr	Variations
jz	Jazz	wz	Waltzes
mc	Musical revues and comedies	|za	Zarzuelas
md	Madrigals	zz	Other
mi	Minuets	||	No attempt to code
mo	Motets	20	Format of music (006/03)
mp	Motion picture music	a	Full score
mr	Marches	b	Full score, miniature or study size
ms	Masses	c	Accompaniment reduced for keyboard
mu	Multiple forms	d	Voice score
mz	Mazurkas	e	Condensed score or piano-conductor score
nc	Nocturnes	g	Close score
nn	Not applicable	|h	Chorus score
op	Operas	|i	Condensed score
or	Oratorios	|j	Performer-conductor part
ov	Overtures	m	Multiple score formats

008 - Music

n	Not applicable	f	Biography of performer or history of ensemble
u	Unknown	g	Technical and/or historical information on instruments
z	Other	h	Technical information on music
|	No attempt to code	i	Historical information
21	Music parts (006/04)	k	Ethnological information
#	No parts in hand or not specified	r	Instructional materials
d	Instrumental and vocal parts	s	Music
e	Instrumental parts	z	Other
f	Vocal parts	|	No attempt to code
n	Not applicable	30-31	Literary text for sound recordings (006/13-14)
u	Unknown	#	Item is a music sound recording
|	No attempt to code	a	Autobiography
22	Target audience (006/05)	b	Biography
#	Unknown or unspecified	c	Conference proceedings
a	Preschool	d	Drama
b	Primary	e	Essays
c	Pre-adolescent	f	Fiction
d	Adolescent	g	Reporting
e	Adult	h	History
f	Specialized	i	Instruction
g	General	j	Language instruction
j	Juvenile	k	Comedy
|	No attempt to code	l	Lectures, speeches
23	Form of item (006/06)	m	Memoirs
#	None of the following	n	Not applicable
a	Microfilm	o	Folktales
b	Microfiche	p	Poetry
c	Microopaque	r	Rehearsals
d	Large print	s	Sounds
f	Braille	t	Interviews
|o	Online	z	Other
|q	Direct electronic	|	No attempt to code
r	Regular print reproduction	32	Undefined (006/15)
s	Electronic	33	Transposition and arrangement (006/16)
|	No attempt to code	#	Not arrangement or transposition or not specified
24-29	Accompanying matter (006/07-12)	a	Transposition
#	No accompanying matter	b	Arrangement
a	Discography	c	Both transposed and arranged
b	Bibliography	n	Not applicable
c	Thematic index	u	Unknown
d	Libretto or text	|	No attempt to code
e	Biography of composer or author	34	Undefined (006/17)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Music definition of field 008/18-34 is used when Leader/06 (Type of record) contains code c (Notated music), d (Manuscript notated music), i (Nonmusical sound recording), or j (Musical sound recording). Field 008 positions 01-17 and 35-39 are defined the same in all 008 fields and are described in the *008-All materials* section.

Field 008/18-34 correspond to equivalent positionally defined data elements in field 006/01-17 when field 006/00 (Form of material) contains code c (Notated music), d (Manuscript notated music), i (Nonmusical sound recording), or j (Musical sound recording). Details about specific codes defined for the equivalent character positions in field 006 and 008 for **music** are provided in the *Guidelines for Applying Content Designators* of *008-Music* section only.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

18-19 - Form of composition (006/01-02)

Two-character alphabetic code that indicates the form of composition. Codes are based on Library of Congress subject headings. If more than one code is appropriate, the code *mu* (Multiple forms) is used in 008/18-19 and all appropriate specific codes are given in field 047 (Form of Composition). Code *mu* (Multiple forms) may also signify that field 047 (Form of Composition) contains non-MARC composition codes.

Form of composition code is based on the terminology in the work itself and is intended to provide a coded approach to the content of the work. In addition to codes for forms, the list also includes codes for musical genres (e.g., Ragtime music). Codes should be assigned when they apply to the item as a whole (e.g., if the item is a symphony and one of the movements is in sonata form, only the code for symphonies is recorded). Codes for which special information is needed for proper application are described below. Other codes are described in music reference sources. Non music sound recordings do not have a form of composition and are coded nn (Not applicable).

cn - Canons and rounds

Used for canons and rounds (i.e., compositions employing strict imitation throughout).

cz - Canzonas

Used for instrumental music that is designated as a *canzona*.

df - Dance forms

Includes music for individual dances except for mazurkas, minuets, pavans, polonaises, and waltzes, which have separate codes.

dv - Divertimentos, serenades, cassations, divertissements, and nocturni

Used for instrumental music designated as a *divertimento*, *serenade*, *cassation*, *divertissement*, or a *nocturno*.

fl - Flamenco

Generic term which refers to all the Flamenco styles, or "palos", and to other forms of song and dance coming from the folkloric tradition of Spanish gypsies.

fm - Folk music

Used for folk music and includes folk songs, etc.

ft - Fantasias

Includes instrumental music designated as *fantasia*, *fancies*, *fantasies*, etc.

008 - Music

nn - Not applicable

Form of composition is not applicable to the item. Used for any item that is a non-music sound recording.

ps - Passacaglias

Includes all types of ostinato basses.

st - Studies and exercises

Used only when the work is intended for teaching purposes (usually entitled *Studies*, *Etudes*, etc.).

tl - Teatro lirico

Used for a large number of more specific terms which describe Spanish and Spanish American theatre music: "tonadilla escénica", "fiestas de música", "sainetes líricos", "entremeses cómico-lírico," etc.

uu - Unknown

Used when the only indication given is the number of instruments and the medium of performance. No structure or genre is given, although they may be implied or understood.

vi - Villancicos

Characteristic form of Spanish polyphony, religious or secular, from the 16th to 18th centuries. Religious villancicos were usually sung in important ceremonies (including Christmas, when these songs were sometimes called "pastoradas").

za - Zarzuelas

Term applicable to all musical plays taking that name, from the "fiestas de zarzuela" of the 17th/18th-centuries to the so-called "zarzuela moderna" ("modern zarzuela") from the mid 19th to the mid 20th-century.

zz - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate (e.g., incidental music, electronic music, etc.).

|| - No attempt to code

20 - Format of music (006/03)

One-character code that indicates the format of a musical composition (e.g., piano-conductor score).

Information for this data element is generally derived from terms appearing in field 300 (Physical Description). If the item being cataloged consists of one or more scores along with other materials (e.g., one or more parts), consider only the score or scores in coding this character position. Used for notated music; for sound recordings, use code n (Not applicable).

a - Full score

Series of staves containing all the instrumental and/or vocal parts of a musical work, arranged so that they can be read simultaneously.

008/20 a
300 ##\$1a1 score (11 p.) ...

b - Full score, miniature or study size

Miniature score that is usually smaller in size and not intended to be used in performances.

008/20 b
300 ##\$1a1 miniature score ...

c - Accompaniment reduced for keyboard

Accompaniment is reduced for keyboard instrument(s) and the solo voices and/or instrumental parts remain the same.

008/20 c
300 ##~~t~~a1 score (36 p.) + 1 part ...
 [Accompaniment reduced for keyboard]

d - Voice score

Solo voice parts for which the accompaniment has been omitted. Vocal works originally unaccompanied are assigned other codes as appropriate. *Note:* Codes *c* and *d* are assigned to solo voice scores on the basis of the absence of or type of accompaniment. Choral scores are assigned code *h* (Chorus score).

008/20 d
300 ##~~t~~a1 vocal score ...
 [Accompaniment omitted]

e - Condensed score or piano-conductor score

Orchestral or band music that has been reduced to a few staves. It may be part of an ensemble work for a particular instrument, with cues for other instruments. Such a score is used by an individual playing the instrument for which the score was written or for the conductor. Prefer code *i* (Condensed score) or code *j* (Performer-conductor part) if the two types of scores can be distinguished.

008/20 e
300 ##~~t~~a1 condensed score ...

g - Close score

Close score (e.g., a hymnal) that has separate parts transcribed on two staves.

008/20 g
300 ##~~t~~a1 close score ...

h - Chorus score

A score of a work for chorus showing only the parts for chorus, at least in those portions of the work in which the chorus sings, with the instrumental accompaniment either arranged for one or two keyboard instruments or omitted.

i - Condensed score

A score in which the number of staves is reduced to two or a few, generally organized by instrumental sections, and often with cues for individual parts. Used for: Reduced score, Short score.

j - Performer-conductor part

Score reduced to a single instrument for which the score was written or for the conductor.

m - Multiple score formats

Several types of scores are issued together, as is frequently the case with band music.

008/20 m
300 ##~~t~~a1 score (23 p.) : ~~t~~bill. ; ~~t~~c30 cm. + ~~t~~a1 piano conductor part (8 p.)

008 - Music

n - Not applicable

Item is a sound recording.

008/20 n
300 ##~~1~~a1 sound disc ...

u - Unknown

Format of the item is unknown.

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate. Usually it signifies that the item is not a score. Piano music, compositions in graphic notation, and compositions that consist only of instructions for performance are examples in which code z is appropriate. Sets of parts are also assigned code z.

008/20 z
300 ##~~1~~a42 p. of music ...

008/20 z
300 ##~~1~~aFor voice ...

008/20 z
300 ##~~1~~a4 parts ...

| - No attempt to code

21 - Music parts (006/04)

One character code that indicates whether the item being cataloged contains parts. This position is not used to indicate that parts may exist elsewhere.

- No parts in hand or not specified

No parts in hand or the musical parts are not specified.

d - Instrumental and vocal parts

Both instrumental and vocal parts are present.

e - Instrumental parts

Instrumental parts are present.

f - Vocal parts

Vocal parts are present.

n - Not applicable

Item is not notated music.

u - Unknown

Unknown whether the item being cataloged contains parts. May be used for records created without examining the item, such as retrospective conversion from a printed card.

| - No attempt to code

22 - Target audience (006/05)

One-character alphabetic code that describes the intellectual level of the target audience for which the material is intended

Used primarily to identify music to be used or performed by a specific target audience. When items are considered appropriate for more than one target audience, the code is recorded for the primary target audience. For juvenile material, either code j (Juvenile) or the more specific codes a (Preschool), b (Primary), or c (Pre-adolescent) are used. An item considered juvenile material often includes the word *juvenile* in its subject heading(s).

- Unknown or unspecified

Target audience for item is not specified or is unknown.

008/22 #

245 14# Das Münchner Kammerorchester spielt Werke ...

650 #0# String-orchestra music.

a - Preschool

Intended for children, approximate ages 0-5 years.

b - Primary

Intended for children, approximate ages 6-8 years.

c - Pre-adolescent

Intended for young people, approximate ages 9-13.

d - Adolescent

Intended for young people, approximate ages 14-17.

e - Adult

Intended for adults.

008/22 e

245 12# A little night music#h[sound recording].

f - Specialized

Aimed at a particular audience and the nature of the presentation would make the item of little interest to other audiences. Examples of items which are coded f included: 1) technical sound recordings geared to a specialized audience and 2) items which address a limited audience.

g - General

Of general interest and not aimed at a particular target audience. Used for items that are not covered more appropriately by one of the other codes.

j - Juvenile

Intended for use by children and young people, approximate ages 0-15. Used when a more specific code for the juvenile target audience is not desired.

008/22 j

650 #0# Violoncello and piano music#x Juvenile#v Scores and parts.

| - No attempt to code

008 - Music

23 - Form of item (006/06)

One-character alphabetic code that specifies the form of material for the item being described.

- None of the following

Not specified by one of the other codes.

a - Microfilm

b - Microfiche

008/23 b
300 ##\$a14 microfiche ;\$c10 x 15 cm.

c - Microopaque

d - Large print

f - Braille

008/23 f
250 0#\$aBraille score ed.

o - Online

The resource is accessed by means of hardware and software connections to a communications network. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

q - Direct electronic

Storage on a directly accessible tangible recording medium, e.g. disc, tape, playaway device, flashdrive, portable hard drive, etc. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

r - Regular print reproduction

Eye-readable print, such as a photocopy.

008/23 r
500 ##\$aPhotocopy of the original score composed in 1877.

s - Electronic

Intended for manipulation by a computer. May reside in a carrier accessed either directly or remotely, in some cases requiring the use of peripheral devices attached to the computer (e.g., a CD-ROM player). Not used for items that do not require the use of a computer (e.g., music compact discs, videodiscs). This code can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource. Codes o and q may be used if there is a need to separately identify online and direct electronic resources.

| - No attempt to code

24-29 - Accompanying matter (006/07-12)

Up to six one-character alphabetic codes (recorded in alphabetical order) that indicate the contents of program notes and other accompanying material for sound recording, music manuscripts, or notated music. If fewer than six codes are assigned, the codes are left justified and each unused position contains a blank (#).

Generally, a specific code is used only if a significant part of the accompanying material is the type of material represented by the code. If more than six codes are appropriate to an item, only the six most important are recorded.

- No accompanying matter

No accompanying matter or no indication of accompanying matter appears on the item. When # is used it is followed by five other blanks.

008/24-29 #####
 [No accompanying matter indicated]

a - Discography

Accompanying matter contains a discography or other bibliography of recorded sound.

b - Bibliography

Accompanying matter contains a bibliography.

008/24-29 b#####
504 ##~~†~~aBibliography: p. 303-304.

c - Thematic index

Accompanying matter contains a thematic index.

d - Libretto or text

Accompanying matter contains a printed transcription of the libretto or other text (e.g., a transcript of verbal contents of a sound recording).

008/24-29 dz####
500 ##~~†~~aWords of the songs and poster inserted in container.

e - Biography of composer or author

Accompanying matter contains significant biographical information on a composer or author.

f - Biography of performer or history of ensemble

Accompanying matter contains significant biographical information on a performer or a history of an ensemble.

008/24-29 f#####
500 ##~~†~~aProgram notes by John W. Barker and biographical notes on the pianist on container.

g - Technical and/or historical information on instruments

Accompanying matter contains technical and/or historical information on instruments.

008/24-29 fgz###
500 ##~~†~~aProgram notes and notes on the horn by R.D. Dattell and biographical notes on the soloist on container.

h - Technical information on music

Accompanying matter contains significant technical information, including instructions for performance.

008/24-29 h#####
500 ##~~†~~aIncludes instructions for performance.

i - Historical information

Accompanying matter contains significant historical information.

008 - Music

008/24-29 i#####

500 ##†aProgram notes by Kurt Hoffman in German, English, and French on container.
[principally historical information]

k - Ethnological information

Accompanying matter contains significant ethnological information that relates to the musical part of the item.

r - Instructional materials

Accompanying matter contains instructional materials.

008/24-29 r#####

300 ##†a ... +†e1 teacher's guide.

s - Music

Accompanying matter contains a score or other music format than that of the main item.

z - Other

Accompanying matter for which none of the other defined codes are appropriate.

008/24-29 dfz###

500 ##†aProgram notes by Uwe Kraemer, biographical notes on the performers, notes on the recording process, synopsis, and libretto with English translation ([24] p. ill.) laid in container.

| - No attempt to code

30-31 - Literary text for sound recordings (006/13-14)

Up to two one-character codes (recorded in the order of the following list) that indicate the type of literary text contained in a nonmusical sound recording. If only one code is assigned, it is left justified and the unused position contains a blank (#).

If more than two codes for types of literary text are appropriate to an item, only the two most important are recorded.

- Item is a music sound recording

When # is used it is followed by another blank (##).

008/30-31 ##

245 10†aBolero†h[sound recording] /†cMaurice Ravel.

a - Autobiography

b - Biography

c - Conference proceedings

008/30-31 lc

245 00†aModern real estate transactions.

500 ##†aPanel discussions, lectures, and questions and answers.

d - Drama

e - Essays

f - Fiction

Fiction includes novels, short stories, etc.

g - Reporting

Reports of newsworthy events and informative messages are included in this category.

h - History

History includes historical narration, etc. that may also be covered by one of the other codes (e.g., historical poetry).

008/30-31 ht

245 00#aInside the Onaway command post#h[sound recording] /#cwith...

520 ###aSummary: An oral history.

i - Instruction

Includes instructions on how to accomplish a task, learn an art, etc. (e.g., how to replace a light switch). *Note:* Language instruction text is assigned code j.

j - Language instruction

May include passages that fall under the definition for one of the other codes (e.g., language text that includes poetry).

k - Comedy

Spoken comedy.

l - Lectures, speeches

008/30-31 l#

500 ###aLectures.

m - Memoirs

Memoirs are usually autobiographical.

n - Not applicable

Not a sound recording (e.g., printed or manuscript music).

o - Folktales

p - Poetry

008/30-31 pf

245 00#aPoésies et prose françaises ...

r - Rehearsals

Rehearsals are performances of any of a variety of nonmusical productions.

s - Sounds

Includes nonmusical utterances and vocalizations that may or may not convey meaning.

t - Interviews

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

008 - Music

32 - Undefined (006/15)

Undefined; contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

33 - Transposition and arrangement (006/16)

Whether all or part of the item being cataloged is a transposition and/or arrangement of another work.

- Not arrangement or transposition or not specified

Not arrangements or the transposition of the item is not specified.

a - Transposition

Item has been transposed to a different pitch from the original.

b - Arrangement

Item has been adapted as regards medium and/or texture.

c - Both transposed and arranged

Item has been both transposed to a different pitch from the original and has been adapted as regards medium and/or texture.

n - Not applicable

Item is not notated music.

u - Unknown

Unknown whether the item is a transposition or arrangement.

| - No attempt to code

34 - Undefined (006/17)

Undefined; contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

Field length - Field 008 should always consist of forty (40) character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

008/18-19 Form of composition [USMARC only]

Prior to the definition of code bd (Ballads) in 1997, ballads were identified with code fm (Folk music).

In 2006, code mu was redefined to signify that either multiple MARC codes or non-MARC codes are contained in field 047 (Form of Composition).

008/18-19 Form of composition

fl *Flamenco [NEW, 2009]*

tl *Teatro lirico [NEW, 2009]*

vi *Villancicos [NEW, 2009]*

za *Zarzuelas [NEW, 2009]*

zz *Other [REDEFINED, 2009]*

Redefined to remove term villancicos, which was defined in 2009.

008/20 *Format of music*

- h* Chorus score [NEW, 2009]

Prior to 2010 choral scores were included in code *d* (Voice score).

- i* Condensed score [NEW, 2009]

- j* Performer-conductor part [NEW, 2009]

008/21 *Existence of parts* [OBSOLETE, 1988]

Defined codes were: # (No parts exist), a (Parts exist), n (Not applicable), u (Unknown).

008/21 *Music parts* [NEW, 2002]008/22 *Target audience*

- c* Elementary and junior high [RENAMED, 2002]

- d* Secondary (senior high) [RENAMED, 2002]

- u* School material at first level [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

- v* School material at second level [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

Prior to the definition of codes a through g in 1995, only code # and j were used in USMARC.

008/23 *Form of item*

- # None of the following [REDEFINED, 1987]

- g* Punched paper tape [OBSOLETE, 1987]

- h* Magnetic tape [OBSOLETE, 1987]

- i* Multimedia [OBSOLETE, 1987]

- o* Online [NEW, 2010]

- q* Direct electronic [NEW, 2010]

- x* Other form of reproduction [OBSOLETE] [USMARC only]

- z* Other form of reproduction [OBSOLETE]

Code # (Not a reproduction) was redefined when the focus of 008/23 was changed. Codes g, h, and i were made obsolete when the coding of 008/23 (Forms of reproduction code) was redefined as information about the medium of the item in hand rather than about bibliographic reproductions. Prior to 1977, other forms of reproduction were identified by code x.

008/24-29 *Accompanying matter* [USMARC only]

- n* Not applicable [OBSOLETE, 1980]

- j* Historical information other than music [OBSOLETE, 1980]

Code n was made obsolete because the codes defined for these character positions apply to both sound recordings and music scores. Code j was made obsolete when code i was redefined to include any historical information.

008/24-27 *Accompanying matter* [REDEFINED, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

- j* Historical information other than music [OBSOLETE, 1997]

- l* Biography of arranger or transcriber [OBSOLETE, 1997]

008/28 *Government publication* [REDEFINED, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Defined codes were: # (Not a government publication); a (Autonomous or semi-autonomous components of sovereign federations); c (Multilocal); f (Federal/national); i (International intergovernmental bodies); l (Local jurisdictions); m (Multistate); o (Government publication-level undetermined); s (State, provincial, territorial, dependant, etc. jurisdiction); u (Unknown if item is a government publication); z (Other type of government publication)

008/29 *Undefined* [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]008/32 *Main entry in body of entry* [OBSOLETE, 1990]

Defined codes were: 0 (Main entry not in body of entry), 1 (Main entry in body of entry).

008/33 *Transposition and arrangement* [NEW, 2002]

[blank page]

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions (008/18-34 and 006/01-17)

18-21	Relief (006/01-04)		
#	No relief shown		
a	Contours		
b	Shading		
c	Gradient and bathymetric tints		
d	Hachures		
e	Bathymetry/soundings		
f	Form lines		
g	Spot heights		
i	Pictorially		
j	Land forms		
k	Bathymetry/isolines		
m	Rock drawings		
z	Other		
||||	No attempt to code		
22-23	Projection (006/05-06)		
##	Projection not specified		
aa	Aitoff		
ab	Gnomic		
ac	Lambert's azimuthal equal area		
ad	Orthographic		
ae	Azimuthal equidistant		
af	Stereographic		
ag	General vertical near-sided		
am	Modified stereographic for Alaska		
an	Chamberlin trimetric		
ap	Polar stereographic		
au	Azimuthal, specific type unknown		
az	Azimuthal, other		
ba	Gall		
bb	Goode's homolographic		
bc	Lambert's cylindrical equal area		
bd	Mercator		
be	Miller		
bf	Mollweide		
bg	Sinusoidal		
bh	Transverse Mercator		
bi	Gauss-Kruger		
bj	Equirectangular		
|bk	Krovak		
|bl	Cassini-Soldner		
bo	Oblique Mercator		
br	Robinson		
bs	Space oblique Mercator		
bu	Cylindrical, specific type unknown		
		bz	Cylindrical, other
		ca	Albers equal area
		cb	Bonne
		cc	Lambert's conformal conic
		ce	Equidistant conic
		cp	Polyconic
		cu	Conic, specific type unknown
		cz	Conic, other
		da	Armadillo
		db	Butterfly
		dc	Eckert
		dd	Goode's homolosine
		de	Miller's bipolar oblique conformal conic
		df	Van Der Grinten
		dg	Dimaxion
		dh	Cordiform
		dl	Lambert conformal
		zz	Other
		||	No attempt to code
		24	Undefined (006-07)
		#	Undefined
		|	No attempt to code
		25	Type of cartographic material (006/08)
		a	Single map
		b	Map series
		c	Map serial
		d	Globe
		e	Atlas
		f	Separate supplement to another work
		g	Bound as part of another work
		u	Unknown
		z	Other
		|	No attempt to code
		26-27	Undefined (006/09-10)
		##	Undefined
		||	No attempt to code
		28	Government publication (006/11)
		#	Not a government publication
		a	Autonomous or semi-autonomous component
		c	Multilocal
		f	Federal/national

008 - Maps

i	International intergovernmental	31	Index (006/14)
l	Local	0	No index
m	Multistate	1	Index present
o	Government publication-level undetermined	|	No attempt to code
s	State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.		
u	Unknown if item is government publication	32	Undefined (006/15)
z	Other	#	Undefined
|	No attempt to code	|	No attempt to code
29	Form of item (006-12)	33-34	Special format characteristics (006/16-17)
#	None of the following	#	No specified special format characteristics
a	Microfilm	e	Manuscript
b	Microfiche	j	Picture card, post card
c	Microopaque	k	Calendar
d	Large print	l	Puzzle
f	Braille	n	Game
|o	Online	o	Wall map
|q	Direct electronic	p	Playing cards
r	Regular print reproduction	r	Loose-leaf
s	Electronic	z	Other
|	No attempt to code	||	No attempt to code
30	Undefined (006/13)		
#	Undefined		
|	No attempt to code		

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Maps definition of field 008/18-34 is used when Leader/06 (Type of record) contains code e (Cartographic material) or f (Manuscript cartographic material). Field 008 positions 01-17 and 35-39 are defined the same in all 008 fields and are described in the *008-All materials* section.

Field 008/18-34 character positions are equivalent to those in field 006/01-17 when field 006/00 (Form of material) contains code e (Cartographic material) or f (Manuscript cartographic material). Details about specific codes defined for the equivalent character positions in field 006 and 008 for **maps** are provided in the *Guidelines for Applying Content Designators* section of *008-Maps* only.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

18-21 - Relief (006/01-04)

Up to four one-character alphabetic codes that indicate the relief type specified on the item. Codes are recorded in order of their importance to the described item. If fewer than four codes are assigned, the codes are left justified and each unused position contains a blank (#).

Codes used in this field indicate only the relief forms most commonly found on maps and are usually derived from information given in field 500 (General Note). If more than four codes are appropriate to an item, only the four most important are recorded.

- No relief shown

008/18-21 #####
 [No note field]

a - Contours

Relief shown by contours.

008/18-21 ae##
 500 ##†aRelief shown by contours. Depths shown by soundings.

b - Shading

Relief shown by shading (generally of a single color).

008/18-21 b###
 500 ##†aRelief shown by shading.

c - Gradient and bathymetric tints

Relief shown by gradient or bathymetric tints.

008/18-21 c###
 500 ##†aRelief shown by gradient tints.

d - Hachures

Relief shown by hachures (short lines which follow the direction of maximum slope).

008/18-21 dg##
 500 ##†aRelief shown by hachures and spot heights.

e - Bathymetry/soundings

Underwater relief (depth) shown by soundings or spot depths.

008/18-21 e###
 500 ##†aDepths shown by soundings.

f - Form lines

Relief shown by form lines.

008/18-21 f###
 500 ##†aRelief shown by form lines.

g - Spot heights

Relief shown by spot heights.

008/18-21 g###
 500 ##†aRelief shown by spot heights.

i - Pictorially

Land forms and other topographic features shown in the correct planimetric position by pictorial symbols representing their appearance from a high oblique view.

008/18-21 i###
 500 ##†aRelief shown pictorially.

008 - Maps

j - Land forms

Relief shown by land forms.

008/18-21 jg##

500 ##~~ta~~ Relief shown by land forms, and spot heights.

k - Bathymetry/isolines

Underwater relief (depth) shown by isolines (lines that represent constant depths).

008/18-21 kb##

500 ##~~ta~~ Depths shown by isolines. Relief shown by shading.

m - Rock drawings

Relief rock drawing.

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

|||| - No attempt to code

22-23 - Projection (006/05-06)

Two-character alphabetic code that indicates the projection used in producing the item.

Specifically named projections are not described in this document. The presence of the name of the projection identifies the appropriate code for 008/22-23. Cartographic reference sources may be consulted for a more detailed explanation of specific projections.

- Projection not specified

Used for most globes.

aa - Aitoff

ab - Gnostic

ac - Lambert's azimuthal equal area

ad - Orthographic

ae - Azimuthal equidistant

af - Stereographic

ag - General vertical near-sided

am - Modified stereographic for Alaska

an - Chamberlin trimetric

ap - Polar stereographic

au - Azimuthal, specific type unknown

Only the projection type (azimuthal) is known, not the specific projection.

az - Azimuthal, other

Azimuthal projection for which none of the other defined codes are appropriate.

ba - Gall

bb - Goode's homolographic

bc - Lambert's cylindrical equal area

bd - Mercator

be - Miller

bf - Mollweide

bg - Sinusoidal

bh - Transverse Mercator

bi - Gauss-Kruger

bj - Equirectangular

bk - Krovak

bl - Cassini-Soldner

bo - Oblique Mercator

br - Robinson

bs - Space oblique Mercator

bu - Cylindrical, specific type unknown

Only the projection type (cylindrical) is known, not the specific projection.

bz - Cylindrical, other

Cylindrical projection for which none of the other defined codes are appropriate.

ca - Albers equal area

cb - Bonne

cc - Lambert's conformal conic

ce - Equidistant conic

cp - Polyconic

cu - Conic, specific type unknown

Only the projection type (conic) is known, not the specific projection.

cz - Conic, other

Conic projection for which none of the other defined codes are appropriate.

da - Armadillo

db - Butterfly

dc - Eckert

dd - Goode's homolosine

e - Atlas

Includes atlas series, and serially issued atlases.

008/25 e
300 ##1 atlas (288 p.) : chiefly col. maps ; 38 cm.

f - Separate supplement to another work

Other work being supplemented does not have to be cartographic material.

g - Bound as part of another work

Other work included does not have to be cartographic material.

u - Unknown**z - Other**

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

| - No attempt to code**26-27 - Undefined (006/09-10)**

Undefined; each contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

28 - Government publication (006/11)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates whether the item is published or produced by or for an international, national, provincial, state, or local government agency, or by any subdivision of such a body, and, if so, the jurisdictional level of the agency.

Government bodies and all their subdivisions are treated as government bodies regardless of how they may be entered as headings (i.e., entered under jurisdiction or not). In the bibliographic record, the body does not have to be a main or added entry, but it should be named as publisher, etc. in the publication, distribution, etc. area, or have caused the item to be published (usually inferred when the governmental body is responsible for the content of the work). When in doubt, treat the item as a government publication.

Guidelines for certain types of publications

Socialist countries - Since the coding of all items published in socialist countries as government publications would limit the usefulness of this element, coding should be used only for the same type of bodies that would be considered government in a non-socialist country. In coding items in this manner, when in doubt, treat the item as a government publication.

Two levels - If an item is published or produced jointly by government agencies at two different levels, record the code for the higher government level.

Academic publications - In the U.S., items published by academic institutions are considered government publications if the institutions are created or controlled by a government.

University presses - In the U.S., items published by university presses are considered government publications if the presses are created or controlled by a government (e.g., state university presses in the United States).

- Not a government publication

Not published by or for a government body.

008/28 #
110 2#1a Rand McNally.

008 - Maps

008/28 #
260 #1#1aNew York :1bMacmillan,1c1983.

a - Autonomous or semi-autonomous component

Published or produced by or for a government body of an autonomous or semi-autonomous component of a country.

008/28 a
110 1#1aSabah.

c - Multilocal

Published or produced by or for a multilocal jurisdiction which is defined as a regional combination of jurisdictions below the state level.

008/28 c
110 2#1aHouston Independent School District.

f - Federal/national

Published or produced by or for a federal or national government body, e.g., a sovereign nation, such as Canada. Used for the governments of England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland. Also used for American Indian tribes.

008/28 f
110 2#1aServicio Geológico Nacional (Argentina)

i - International intergovernmental

Published or produced by or for an international intergovernmental body.

008/28 i
110 2#1aWorld Health Organization.

l - Local

Published or produced by or for a local government jurisdiction such as a county, city, town, etc.

008/28 l
110 1#1aKippenheim (Germany)

008/28 l
110 1#1aDistrict of Columbia.

m - Multistate

Published or produced by or for a regional combination of jurisdictions at the state, provincial, territorial, etc., level.

008/28 m
110 2#1aLake Erie Regional Transportation Authority.

o - Government publication-level undetermined

Published or produced by or for a government body but that the jurisdictional level cannot be determined.

s - State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.

Jurisdictional level of the government body is a state, province, territory, etc.

008/28 s
110 1#1aWyoming.1bAir Resources Council.

u - Unknown if item is government publication

Whether or not the item is published or produced by or for a government agency is unknown.

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

29 - Form of item (006/12)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the form of material for the item.

- None of the following

Not specified by one of the other codes.

a - Microfilm

b - Microfiche

c - Microopaque

d - Large print

f - Braille

o - Online

The resource is accessed by means of hardware and software connections to a communications network. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

q - Direct electronic

Storage on a directly accessible tangible recording medium, e.g. disc, tape, playaway device, flashdrive, portable hard drive, etc. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

r - Regular print reproduction

Eye-readable print, such as a photocopy.

s - Electronic

Intended for manipulation by a computer. May reside in a carrier accessed either directly or remotely, in some cases requiring the use of peripheral devices attached to the computer (e.g., a CD-ROM player). Not used for items that do not require the use of a computer (e.g., music compact discs, videodiscs). This code can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource. Codes o and q may be used if there is a need to separately identify online and direct electronic resources.

| - No attempt to code

30 - Undefined (006/13)

Undefined; contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

008 - Maps

31 - Index (006/14)

One-character numeric code that indicates whether the item or accompanying material includes a location index or gazetteer.

Information for this data element is derived from mention of an index or gazetteer in other parts of the bibliographic record (e.g., in the title or in a note). A map index to adjoining sheets is not considered an index when coding this position. This data element refers only to gazetteers, place name indexes, etc. Graphic indexes such as index maps are not coded.

0 - No index

Does not include an index or gazetteer to its own contents.

008/31 0
 [No indication of index or gazetteer in bibliographic data]

1 - Index present

Includes an index or gazetteer to its own contents.

008/31 1
500 ##\$aIndex to points of interest on verso.

008/31 1
500 ##\$aIncludes gazetteer and glossary.

| - No attempt to code

32 - Undefined (006/15)

Undefined; contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

33-34 - Special format characteristics (006/16-17)

Up to two one-character alphabetic codes that indicate the special format characteristics of the map. Codes are recorded in order of their importance to the described item. If only one code is assigned, it is left justified and the unused position contains a blank (#).

If more than two characteristics are appropriate to an item, only the two most important are recorded.

- No specified special format characteristics

e - Manuscript

Drawn or fashioned by hand.

j - Picture card, post card

k - Calendar

l - Puzzle

Image may be disassembled into pieces and reassembled.

n - Game

Intended to be used as or is part of a game.

o - Wall map

p - Playing cards

r - Loose-leaf

Separate leaves intended to be stored in a binder or case. Loose-leaf items are often meant to be updated.

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

|| - No attempt to code**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

Capitalization - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

Field length - Field 008 should always consist of forty (40) character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY*008/18-21 Relief*

e Bathymetry/soundings [REDEFINED, 1980]

k Bathymetry/isolines [NEW, 1980]

h Color [OBSOLETE, 1980]

Prior to the definition of code k and the redefinition of code e, both *soundings* and *isolines* were identified by code e (Bathymetry). Code h was made obsolete in favor of the use of code c (Gradient and bathymetric tints) to record coloration.

008/22-23 Projection

bk Krovak [NEW, 2009]

bl Cassini-Soldner [NEW, 2009]

008/24 Prime meridian [OBSOLETE, 1997] [USMARC only]

Defined codes were: # (Not specified), e (Greenwich), f (Ferro), g (Paris), p (Philadelphia), w (Washington, D.C.), and z (Other).

008/24-25 Prime meridian [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Prior to 1997, this position was used to indicate the prime meridian that was named on a map. Defined codes were:

aa Greenwich, England	ba Mexico City, Mex.
ab Ferro, Canary Is.	bb Munich, Germany
ac Paris, France	bc Naples, Italy
ad Amsterdam, Neth.	bd Oslo (Christiana), Norway
ae Athens, Greece	be Philadelphia, Pa.
af Batavia, (Jakarta) Indonesia	bf Pulkovo (St. Petersburg), Russia
ag Berne, Switzerland	bg Rio de Janeiro, Brazil
ah Bogota, Columbia	bh Rome, Italy
ai Bombay, India	bi Santiago, Chile
aj Brussels, Belgium	bj Stockholm, Sweden
ak Cadiz, Spain	bk Sydney, Aust.
al Capetown, S.A.	bl Tirana, Albania
am Caracas, Venezuela	bm Tokyo, Japan
an Copenhagen, Denmark	bn Washington, D.C.
ao Cordoba, Argentina	bo London, England
ap Helsinki, Finland	bp Moscow, Russia
aq Julianehaab, Greenland	bq Istanbul, Turkey
ar Lisbon, Portugal	br Peking, China
as Madras, India	uu Unknown
at Madrid, Spain	zz Other

008/25 Type of cartographic material

e Atlas [NEW, 1995]

Prior to the definition of code e (Atlas), atlases were treated as printed language material. The field 008 configuration for books was used.

008/26-27 Publisher code [OBSOLETE, 1980]

Name of the publisher may be contained in subfield #b of field 260.

008/29 Form of item

o Online [NEW, 2010]

q Direct electronic [NEW, 2010]

008/30 Narrative text [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Defined codes were: 0 (No text present), 1 (Text on cartographic item), 2 (Text accompanies cartographic item).

008/31 Index [CAN/MARC only]

2 Index or gazetteer accompanies cartographic item [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

008 - Maps

008/32 *Citation indicator* [OBSOLETE, 1980]

Defined codes were: a (*Bibliographic cartographique internationale*), b (American Revolution), h (Hummel purchases), r (Railroad), t (Treasure), v (Vellum), w (Warner purchase), y (American Revolution and vellum), z (Treasure and B.C.I.), # (Not applicable).

008/33-34 *Special format characteristics*

- a *Photocopy, blue line print* [OBSOLETE, 1982]
- b *Photocopy* [OBSOLETE, 1982]
- c *Negative photocopy* [OBSOLETE, 1982]
- d *Film negative* [OBSOLETE, 1982]
- f *Facsimile* [OBSOLETE, 1982]
- g *Relief model* [OBSOLETE, 1982]
- h *Rare* [OBSOLETE, 1982]
- m *Braille* [OBSOLETE, 1998]
- q *Large print* [OBSOLETE, 1998]

008 Continuing Resources

(NR)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions (008/18-34 and 006/01-17)

18	Frequency (006/01)	d	Large print
#	No determinable frequency	e	Newspaper format
a	Annual	f	Braille
b	Bimonthly	o	Online
c	Semiweekly	q	Direct electronic
d	Daily	s	Electronic
e	Biweekly	|	No attempt to code
f	Semiannual		
g	Biennial	23	Form of item (006/06)
h	Triennial	#	None of the following
i	Three times a week	a	Microfilm
j	Three times a month	b	Microfiche
k	Continuously updated	c	Microopaque
m	Monthly	d	Large print
q	Quarterly	f	Braille
s	Semimonthly	o	Online
t	Three times a year	q	Direct electronic
u	Unknown	r	Regular print reproduction
w	Weekly	s	Electronic
z	Other	|	No attempt to code
|	No attempt to code		
19	Regularity (006/02)	24	Nature of entire work (006/07)
n	Normalized irregular	#	Not specified
r	Regular	a	Abstracts/summaries
u	Unknown	b	Bibliographies
x	Completely irregular	c	Catalogs
|	No attempt to code	d	Dictionaries
20	Undefined (006/03)	e	Encyclopedias
#	Undefined	f	Handbooks
21	Type of continuing resource (006/04)	g	Legal articles
#	None of the following	h	Biography
d	Updating database	i	Indexes
l	Updating loose-leaf	k	Discographies
m	Monographic series	l	Legislation
n	Newspaper	m	Theses
p	Periodical	n	Surveys of literature in a subject area
w	Updating Web site	o	Reviews
|	No attempt to code	p	Programmed texts
22	Form of original item (006/05)	q	Filmographies
#	None of the following	r	Directories
a	Microfilm	s	Statistics
b	Microfiche	t	Technical reports
c	Microopaque	u	Standards/specifications
		v	Legal cases and case notes
		w	Law reports and digests
		y	Yearbooks
		z	Treaties

008 - Continuing Resources

5	Calendars	l	Local
6	Comics/graphic novels	m	Multistate
|	No attempt to code	o	Government publication-level undetermined
25-27	Nature of contents (006/08-10)	s	State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.
#	Not specified	u	Unknown if item is government publication
a	Abstracts/summaries	z	Other
b	Bibliographies	|	No attempt to code
c	Catalogs	29	Conference publication (006/12)
d	Dictionaries	0	Not a conference publication
e	Encyclopedias	1	Conference publication
f	Handbooks	|	No attempt to code
g	Legal articles	30-32	Undefined (006/13-15)
h	Biography	#	Undefined
i	Indexes	33	Original alphabet or script of title (006/16)
k	Discographies	#	No alphabet or script given/No key title
l	Legislation	a	Basic Roman
m	Theses	b	Extended Roman
n	Surveys of literature in a subject area	c	Cyrillic
o	Reviews	d	Japanese
p	Programmed texts	e	Chinese
q	Filmographies	f	Arabic
r	Directories	g	Greek
s	Statistics	h	Hebrew
t	Technical reports	i	Thai
u	Standards/specifications	j	Devanagari
v	Legal cases and case notes	k	Korean
w	Law reports and digests	l	Tamil
y	Yearbooks	u	Unknown
z	Treaties	z	Other
5	Calendars	|	No attempt to code
6	Comics/graphic novels		
|||	No attempt to code		
28	Government publication (006/11)	34	Entry convention (006/17)
#	Not a government publication	0	Successive entry
a	Autonomous or semi-autonomous component	1	Latest entry
c	Multilocal	2	Integrated entry
f	Federal/national	|	No attempt to code
i	International intergovernmental		

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Continuing resources field 008/18-34 contains coded data for all continuing resources, including serials and integrating resources. It is used when Leader/06 (Type of record) contains code a (Language material) *and* Leader/07 contains code b (Serial component part), i (Integrating resource), or code s (Serial). Field 008 positions 01-17 and 35-39 are defined the same for all 008 fields and are described in the *008-All materials* section.

Field 008/18-34 corresponds to equivalent positionally-defined data elements in field 006/01-17 when field 006/00 (Form of material) contains code s (Serial/Integrating resource). Details about specific codes defined for the equivalent character positions in field 006 and 008 for serials and integrating resources are provided in the *Guidelines for Applying Content Designators* section of *008-Continuing resources* only.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

18 - Frequency (006/01)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the frequency of an item; used in conjunction with 008/19 (Regularity).

In the case of integrating resources, updates to an item. This element is based on the information found in field 310 (Current Frequency). The frequency codes sometimes do not accurately reflect the frequency as given in field 310. This is generally the case when the frequency is expressed in numbers per year (e.g., 4 no. a year). In these cases, the closest applicable frequency is used according to the following chart, and 008/19 (regularity) contains code x.

<u>Issued or Updated</u>	<u>Frequency code</u>
Two no. a year	f (seminannual)
Four no. a year	q (quarterly)
Five no. a year	q (quarterly)
Six no. a year	b (bimonthly)
Seven no. a year	b (bimonthly)
Eight no. a year	b (bimonthly)
Nine no. a year	m (monthly)
Ten no. a year	m (monthly)
Eleven no. a year	m (monthly)
Twelve no. a year	m (monthly)

If an item ceases publication after one issue, give them intended frequency (and regularity) if known. Otherwise, code both frequency and regularity as u (Unknown).

008/18 a
 008/19 r
 300 ##\$a1 v. ;\$c28 cm.
 310 ##\$aAnnual
 362 0#\$a1984.

If an item is issued according to one frequency, but cumulates to another, the frequency (and regularity) are coded without regard for the cumulation.

008/18 b
 008/19 r
 310 ##\$aBimonthly, with the last issue being cumulative for the year

Regular-print reprint or photoreproduction items are coded for the frequency (and regularity) of the reprint or photoreproduction -- not those of the original. In most cases, both frequency and regularity will be coded as u.

- No determinable frequency

Used when the frequency is known to be intentionally irregular.

008/18 #
 008/19 x
 310 ##\$alrregular

008 - Continuing Resources

a - Annual

Issued or updated once a year.

008/18 a
008/19 r
310 ~~##~~aAnnual

b - Bimonthly

Issued or updated every two months.

Includes publications whose frequency is 6, 7, or 8 numbers a year.

008/18 b
008/19 r
310 ~~##~~aBimonthly

c - Semiweekly

Issued or updated twice a week.

008/18 c
008/19 r
310 ~~##~~aSemiweekly

d - Daily

Issued or updated once a day. *Note:* this may include Saturday and Sunday.

008/18 d
008/19 r
310 ~~##~~aDaily

e - Biweekly

Issued or updated every two weeks.

008/18 e
008/19 r
310 ~~##~~aBiweekly

f - Semiannual

Issued or updated twice a year.

Includes publications whose frequency is 2 numbers a year.

008/18 f
008/19 x
310 ~~##~~aSemiannual

g - Biennial

Issued or updated every two years.

008/18 g
008/19 r
310 ~~##~~aBiennial

008 - Continuing Resources

h - Triennial

Issued or updated every three years.

008/18 h
008/19 r
310 ##~~1~~aTriennial

i - Three times a week

008/18 i
008/19 r
310 ##~~1~~aThree no. a week

j - Three times a month

008/18 j
008/19 r
310 ##~~1~~aThree no. a month

k - Continuously updated

Updated more frequent than daily.

008/18 k
008/19 r
310 ##~~1~~aContinuously updated

m - Monthly

Includes publications whose frequency is 9, 10, 11, or 12 numbers a year.

008/18 m
008/19 r
310 ##~~1~~aMonthly

q - Quarterly

Issued or updated every three months.

Includes publications whose frequency is 4 numbers a year.

008/18 q
008/19 r
310 ##~~1~~aQuarterly

s - Semimonthly

Issued or updated twice a month.

008/18 s
008/19 x
310 ##~~1~~aTwo no. a month

t - Three times a year

008/18 t
008/19 r
310 ##~~1~~aThree no. a year

008 - Continuing Resources

u - Unknown

Current frequency of the item is unknown. When code u is used in this character position, it must also be used in 008/19 (Regularity).

w - Weekly

Issued once a week.

008/18 w
008/19 r
310 ###~~t~~aWeekly

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

008/18 z
310 ###~~t~~aEvery leap year

| - No attempt to code

19 - Regularity (006/02)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the intended regularity of an item; used in conjunction with 008/18 (Frequency).

Element is based on the information found in field 310 (Current Frequency). Consider the stated intent of the publisher when coding the regularity.

n - Normalized irregular

Predictable irregularity pattern.

Used, for example, when the publishing pattern intentionally deviates from a standard pattern or when field 310 specifies a cumulation regularly issued in addition to the individual issues.

008/19 n
008/18 m
310 ###~~t~~aMonthly (except July and Aug.)

008/19 n
008/18 m
310 ###~~t~~aMonthly (Nov.-Dec. issue combined)

008/19 n
008/18 b
310 ###~~t~~aBimonthly, with an annual cumulation

r - Regular

Intended regular publishing pattern. Used when one of the frequency codes defined in 008/18 accurately defines the frequency of the publication and whenever the publisher intends to issue the item on a regular basis. This may be determined from information on the piece or by examining the publishing pattern. Thus, if an item states that it is to be issued bimonthly, the regularity is coded as r even though the publishing pattern is known to have occasional variations due to publishing difficulties. The inconsistencies may be expressed in field 515 (Numbering Peculiarities Note) if desired.

008 - Continuing Resources

008/19 r
008/18 m
310 ~~##~~†aMonthly

008/19 r
008/18 z
310 ~~##~~†aQuinquennial

u - Unknown

Regularity of the item is unknown. When code u is used in this character position, it must also be used in 008/18 (Frequency).

008/19 u
008/18 u
 [No 310 field]

x - Completely irregular

Used 1) when the frequency is known to be intentionally irregular (008/18 is coded as #); or 2) when the frequency in field 310 is expressed as *numbers per year*.

008/19 x
008/18 q
310 ~~##~~†aFive no. a year

| - No attempt to code

20 - Undefined (006/03)

Undefined; contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

21 - Type of continuing resource (006/04)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the type of continuing resource.

- None of the following

Also used for yearbooks and annual reports.

008/21 #
245 10†aAnnual report of the Malden Public Library.

d - Updating database

Collection of logically interrelated data stored together in one or more computerized files, usually created and managed by a database management system.

008/21 d
245 00†aMEDLINE on SilverPlatter†h[electronic resource].

008 - Continuing Resources

l - Updating loose-leaf

Bibliographic resource that consists of a base volume(s) updated by separate pages which are inserted, removed, and/or substituted.

008/21 l

245 10†aProducts liability law in New Jersey : †ba practitioner's guide / †cWilliam A. Dreier and Hannah G. Goldman.

m - Monographic series

Used for any title that is a series, regardless of its treatment. A monographic series is a group of analyzable items (i.e., each piece has a distinctive title) that are related to one another by a collective title. The individual items may or may not be numbered.

008/21 m

245 00†aActa Universitatis Wratislaviensis.†pGermanica Wratislaviensia.

n - Newspaper

Continuing resource that is mainly designed to be a primary source of written information on current events connected with public affairs, either local, national and/or international in scope. It contains a broad range of news on all subjects and activities and is not limited to any specific subject matter. It may include (although not primarily) articles on literary or other subjects as well as advertising, legal notices, vital statistics, and illustrations.

008/21 n

245 00†aWall Street journal.

008/21 n

245 04†aThe Washington post.

p - Periodical

Separate articles, stories, other writings, etc. that are published or distributed generally more frequently than annual.

008/21 p

245 04†aThe U.F.O. investigator.

w - Updating Web site

Web site that is updated, but does not fit into one of the other codes, such as periodical, newspaper, or database.

008/21 w

245 00†aCNN.com†h[electronic resource].

| - No attempt to code

22 - Form of original item (006/05)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the form of material in which an item was originally published.

In cases where the item is published simultaneously in more than one form, or when it is difficult to determine the originally published form, the first item received or entered in the database is considered the original physical form.

- None of the following

Not specified by one of the other codes.

008 - Continuing Resources

a - Microfilm

b - Microfiche

c - Microopaque

d - Large print

e - Newspaper format

Item is on newsprint and/or looks like a newspaper. The item need not fit the definition of a newspaper (i.e., the type of continuing resource code in 008/21 need not be code **n**).

f - Braille

o - Online

The resource is accessed by means of hardware and software connections to a communications network. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code **s** can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

q - Direct electronic

Storage on a directly accessible tangible recording medium, e.g. disc, tape, playaway device, flashdrive, portable hard drive, etc. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code **s** can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

s - Electronic

Intended for manipulation by a computer. May reside in a carrier accessed either directly or remotely, in some cases requiring the use of peripheral devices attached to the computer (e.g., a CD-ROM player). Not used for items that do not require the use of a computer (e.g., music compact discs, videodiscs). This code can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource. Codes **o** and **q** may be used if there is a need to separately identify online and direct electronic resources.

| - No attempt to code

23 - Form of item (006/06)

One-character alphabetic code that specifies the form of material for the item being described.

- None of the following

Not specified by one of the other codes.

a - Microfilm

b - Microfiche

c - Microopaque

d - Large print

f - Braille

o - Online

The resource is accessed by means of hardware and software connections to a communications network. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code **s** can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

008 - Continuing Resources

q - Direct electronic

Storage on a directly accessible tangible recording medium, e.g. disc, tape, playaway device, flashdrive, portable hard drive, etc. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

r - Regular print reproduction

Eye-readable print, such as a photocopy.

s - Electronic

Intended for manipulation by a computer. May reside in a carrier accessed either directly or remotely, in some cases requiring the use of peripheral devices attached to the computer (e.g., a CD-ROM player). Not used for items that do not require the use of a computer (e.g., music compact discs, videodiscs). This code can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource. Codes o and q may be used if there is a need to separately identify online and direct electronic resources.

| - No attempt to code

24 - Nature of entire work (006/07)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the nature of an item if it consists *entirely* of a certain type of material. If the item can be considered more than one type of material, the types are recorded in 008/25-27 (Nature of contents) and 008/24 position is coded blank (#).

Used to specify what type of publication the item *is* as opposed to what it *contains*.

- Not specified

Nature of the entire item is not specified.

a - Abstracts/summaries

Abstracts or summaries of *other* publications.

b - Bibliographies

008/24 b

245 00†aBibliographie des Schriftums für den Bereich der Haushaltswissenschaft.

c - Catalogs

List of items in a collection, such as a collection of books, a collection of art objects, etc.

008/24 c

245 00†aLempertz-Katalog.

d - Dictionaries

Also includes glossaries or gazetteers.

Concordances are coded as Indexes (code i). Serial biographical dictionaries are coded as Biography (code h).

e - Encyclopedias

Encyclopedia or an encyclopedic treatment of a specific topic.

008/24 e

245 00†aEncyclopedia of social work.

f - Handbooks

008 - Continuing Resources

g - Legal articles

Substantive articles on legal topics, such as those published in law school reviews.

h - Biography

Biographical material, whether autobiography, individual biography, or collective biography. Genealogy is not coded as biography.

i - Indexes

Index to bibliographical material other than itself (e.g., an indexing journal).

008/24 i

245 001aDeutsche Bibliographie.1pHalbjahres-Verzeichnis.

k - Discographies

Discography or other bibliography of recorded sound.

008/24 k

245 001aJournal of jazz discography.

l - Legislation

Full or partial texts of enactments of legislative bodies or texts of rules and regulations issued by executive or administrative agencies.

Also used when a work consists of texts of rules and regulations issued by executive or administrative agencies.

008/24 l

245 001aTax legislation bulletin.

m - Theses

Thesis, dissertation, or work identified as having been created to satisfy the requirements for an academic certification or degree.

008/24 m

245 001aTheses in progress in Commonwealth studies.

n - Surveys of literature in a subject area

Authored surveys that summarize what has been published about a subject

Usually has a list of references either in the body of the work or as a bibliography.

o - Reviews

Critical reviews of published or performed works (e.g., books, films, sound recordings, theater, etc.).

p - Programmed texts

q - Filmographies

Filmography or other bibliography of moving images.

r - Directories

Directory or register of persons or corporate bodies. Serial biographical dictionaries are coded as Biography (code h).

s - Statistics

Collection of statistical data on a subject. Not used for works about statistical methodology.

008 - Continuing Resources

t - Technical reports

Work that is the result of scientific investigation or technical development, testing, or evaluation, presented in a form suitable for dissemination to the technical community.

u - Standards/specifications

Either an international, national, or industry standard or a specification which gives a precise statement of a process or service requirement.

v - Legal cases and case notes

Discussions, such as those in the case comments section of law school reviews, of particular legal cases that have been decided by, or that are pending before, courts or administrative agencies.

w - Law reports and digests

Texts of decisions of courts or administrative agencies. Also used when a work consists of texts of digests of such decisions.

y - Yearbooks

Reference publication issued on an annual or less frequent basis that contains articles summarizing the accomplishments or events of a particular year within a specific discipline or area of endeavor. Annual reports, which are administrative overviews of an organization, are not coded here.

z - Treaties

Treaties or accords negotiated between two or more parties to settle a disagreement, establish a relationship, grant rights, etc.

008/24

z

245 001aGuide to United States treaties in force.

5 - Calendars

Published systems of organizing days. These may be academic calendars or almanacs, calendars published by bodies, such as labor organizations, library associations, etc.

6 - Comics/graphic novels

Instances of "sequential art" in which a story (whether fact or fiction) is told primarily through a set of images (often in the form of multiple "panels" per page) presented concurrently but meant to be "read" sequentially by the viewer. The accompanying narrative and/or dialog text, when it occurs, works integrally with the images to tell the story.

| - No attempt to code

25-27 - Nature of contents (006/08-10)

Up to three one-character alphabetic codes (recorded in alphabetical order) that indicate that a work *contains* certain types of materials. If fewer than three codes are assigned, the codes are left justified and each unused position contains a blank (#).

Generally, a specific code is used only if a significant part of the item is the type of material represented by the code. Information for these character positions is usually derived from other areas of the bibliographic record (e.g., field 245 (Title Statement), 5XX (Note) fields, or 6XX (Subject Added Entry) fields). If more than three codes are appropriate to the item, the three most significant are selected and recorded in alphabetical order.

008 - Continuing Resources

- Not specified

008/24 #
008/25-27 ###
245 00†aJournal of Ayurveda=†b ...
[No specified nature of contents is appropriate]

a - Abstracts/summaries

Abstracts or summaries of **other** publications.

Not used when a publication includes an abstract or summary of its own content.

008/24 #
008/25-27 a##
245 00†aReview of applied entomology.†nSeries B,†pMedical and veterinary.
650 #2†aVeterinary entomology†xAbstracts†xPeriodicals.

b - Bibliographies

Significant part of the item is a bibliography or bibliographies. Used only if the bibliography is substantial enough to be mentioned in the bibliographic record. *Note:* Because bibliographies are included as part of the definition of code n, code b is not used when code n is present.

008/24 #
008/25-27 b##
504 ##†aIncludes bibliographies.

c - Catalogs

List of items in a collection. Also includes lists of collectible objects, such as stamps and coins, or trade catalogs. For catalogs of books, sound recordings, or motion pictures, code b (Bibliographies), code k (Discographies), or code q (Filmographies), is given with code c.

008/24 #
008/25-27 ci#
245 00†aBook auction records.
650 #0†aBook auctions†xCatalogs†vIndexes.

d - Dictionaries

Also used for a glossary or a gazetteer.

Concordances are coded as Indexes (code i). Code h is used for serial biographical dictionaries.

e - Encyclopedias

Encyclopedia or an encyclopedic treatment of a specific topic.

f - Handbooks

g - Legal articles

Substantive articles on legal topics, such as those published in law school reviews.

h - Biography

Significant part of the item contains biographical material, whether autobiography, individual biography, or collective biography. Genealogy is not coded as biography.

i - Indexes

Index to bibliographical material other than itself (e.g., an indexing journal).

Not used when a publication contains an index to its own content.

008 - Continuing Resources

k - Discographies

Significant part of the item is a discography or discographies, or other bibliography of recorded sound. Used only if the discography is substantial enough to be mentioned in the bibliographic record. For discographies that are also catalogs, both code k and code c (Catalogs) are given.

l - Legislation

Includes full or partial texts of enactments of legislative bodies, published either in statute or in code form, or texts of rules and regulations issued by executive or administrative agencies.

m - Theses

Thesis, dissertation, or work identified as having been created to satisfy the requirements for an academic certification or degree.

n - Surveys of literature in a subject area

Includes authored surveys that summarize what has been published about a subject

Usually has a list of references either in the body of the work or as a bibliography. *Note:* Because bibliographies are included as part of the definition of code n, code b (Bibliographies) should not be recorded when code n is appropriate.

o - Reviews

Includes critical reviews of published or performed works (e.g., books, films, sound recordings, theater, etc.).

p - Programmed texts

008/24 #

008/25-27 p##

245 00†aClinical exercises in internal medicine.

650 #2†aInternal medicine†xProgrammed texts.

q - Filmographies

Significant part of the item is a filmography or other bibliography of moving images. Used only if the filmography is substantial enough to be mentioned in the bibliographic record. For filmographies that are also catalogs, both code q and code c (Catalogs) are given.

r - Directories

Includes a directory or register of persons or corporate bodies. Serial biographical dictionaries are coded as Biography (code h).

s - Statistics

Significant part of the item is a collection of statistical data on a subject. Not used for works about statistical methodology.

008/24 #

008/25-27 bs#

245 00†aList of statistical series collected by international organizations.

t - Technical reports

Includes technical report material that is the result of scientific investigation or technical development, testing, or evaluation, presented in a form suitable for dissemination to the technical community.

u - Standards/specifications

Includes either an international, national, or industry standard or a specification which gives a precise statement of a process or service requirement.

008 - Continuing Resources

v - Legal cases and case notes

Includes discussions, such as those in the case comments section of law school reviews, of particular legal cases that have been decided by, or that are pending before, courts or administrative agencies.

w - Law reports and digests

Includes texts of decisions of courts or administrative agencies. The code is also used when an item includes texts of digests of such decisions.

y - Yearbooks

Reference publication issued on an annual or less frequent basis that contains articles summarizing the accomplishments or events of a particular year within a specific discipline or area of endeavor. Annual reports, which are administrative overviews of an organization, are not coded here.

z - Treaties

Includes treaties or accords negotiated between two or more parties to settle a disagreement, establish a relationship, grant rights, etc.

5 - Calendars

Published systems of organizing days. These may be academic calendars or almanacs, calendars published by bodies, such as labor organizations, library associations, etc.

6 - Comics/graphic novels

Instances of "sequential art" in which a story (whether fact or fiction) is told primarily through a set of images (often in the form of multiple "panels" per page) presented concurrently but meant to be "read" sequentially by the viewer. The accompanying narrative and/or dialog text, when it occurs, works integrally with the images to tell the story.

||| - No attempt to code

28 - Government publication (006/11)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates whether an item is published or produced by or for an international, national, provincial, state, or local government agency, or by any subdivision of such a body, and, if so, the jurisdictional level of the agency.

Government bodies and all their subdivisions are treated as government bodies regardless of how they may be entered as headings (i.e., entered under jurisdiction or not). In the bibliographic record, the body does not have to be a main or added entry, but it should be named as publisher, etc. in the publication, distribution, etc. area, or have caused the item to be published (usually inferred when the governmental body is responsible for the content of the work). When in doubt, treat the item as a government publication.

Guidelines for certain types of publications

- **Socialist countries-** Since the coding of all items published in socialist countries as government publications would limit the usefulness of this element, coding should be used only for the same type of bodies that would be considered government in a non-socialist country. In coding items in this manner, when in doubt, treat the item as a government publication.
- **Two levels-** If an item is published or produced jointly by government agencies at two different levels, record the code for the higher government level.
- **Academic publications-** In the U.S., items published by academic institutions are considered government publications if the institutions are created or controlled by a government.
- **University presses-** In the U.S., items published by university presses are considered government publications if the presses are created or controlled by a government (e.g., state university presses in the United States).

008 - Continuing Resources

- Not a government publication

Not published by or for a government body.

008/28 #
110 2#†aRand McNally.

008/28 #
245 02†aA Guidebook of United States coins.

a - Autonomous or semi-autonomous component

Published or produced by or for a government body of an autonomous or semi-autonomous component of a country.

008/28 a
110 1#†aSabah.

c - Multilocal

Published or produced by or for a multilocal jurisdiction which is defined as a regional combination of jurisdictions below the state level.

008/28 c
110 2#†aRégion parisienne (France)

f - Federal/national

Published or produced by or for a federal or national government body, e.g., a sovereign nation, such as Canada. Used for the governments of England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland. Code f is also used for American Indian tribes.

008/28 f
110 1#†aItaly.†bMinistero degli affari esteri.

i - International intergovernmental

Published or produced by or for an international intergovernmental body.

008/28 i
110 2#†aWorld Health Organization.

l - Local

Published or produced by or for a local government jurisdiction such as a county, city, town, etc.

008/28 l
110 1#†aNew York (N.Y.)

m - Multistate

Published or produced by or for a regional combination of jurisdictions at the state, provincial, territorial, etc. level.

008/28 m
110 2#†aLake Erie Regional Transportation Authority.

o - Government publication-level undetermined

Published or produced by or for a government body but that the jurisdictional level cannot be determined.

008 - Continuing Resources

s - State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.

Jurisdictional level of the government body is a state, province, territory, etc.

008/28 s
110 1#1aWisconsin.1bCommissioners of Fisheries.

u - Unknown if item is government publication

Whether or not the item is published or produced by or for a government agency is unknown.

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

29 - Conference publication (006/12)

One-character numeric code that indicates whether an item consists of the proceedings, reports, or summaries of a conference.

The following types of publications are *not* considered conference publications:

- Works composed of or based on a single paper
- Hearings of legislative bodies
- Courses given in a school (except where the main entry is the name of a meeting)

The following types of publications *are* considered to be conference publications:

- Proceedings, including collections or partial collections of papers (or of contributions, essays, etc., that are based upon papers) presented at a conference or meeting.
- A partial collection, defined as a work containing two or more papers (or contributions, essays, etc. that are based upon papers) presented at a conference or meeting.
- A collection of preprints of conference papers.

0 - Not a conference publication

Work is not a conference publication.

008/29 0
245 001aJournal of family therapy ...

1 - Conference publication

008/29 1
245 101aCompte rendu du congrès /1cAssociation des bibliothécaires du Québec.

| - No attempt to code

30-32 - Undefined (006/13-15)

Undefined; each contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

008 - Continuing Resources

33 - Original alphabet or script of title (006/16)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the original alphabet or script of the language of the title on the source item upon which the key title (field 222) is based.

If there is no key title present, the code value may relate to the title proper (field 245). This data element is *mandatory* for bibliographic records created or updated by one of the centers participating in the ISSN Network. For other non-ISSN Network records, 008/33 is *optional*.

- No alphabet or script given/No key title

May relate to the title proper in field 245 when no key title is present.

For bibliographic records that do not contain field 222 (Key Title), code blank (#) is often used instead of coding for the original alphabet or script of the title proper in field 245 (Title Statement).

a - Basic Roman

Original alphabet of the title is the Roman alphabet. Languages that are usually associated with code a include: Basque, English, Latin, Welsh, and many languages of Central and Southern Africa. Includes no diacritics or special characters.

008/33 a
222 #0‡aNewsweek.

b - Extended Roman

Original alphabet of the title is a Roman alphabet language. Most western European languages, with the major exception of English, fall into this group.

Includes diacritics and special characters.

008/33 b
222 #0‡aRevista de biología del Uruguay

Used if the language itself has diacritics even if the title in hand does not contain any characters from the extended alphabet.

008/33 b
222 #0‡aNew Brunswick police journal
245 00‡aJournal de la police de Nouveau Brunswick.

c - Cyrillic

008/33 c
245 00‡aPravda.

d - Japanese

Japanese language does not actually have an alphabet. It uses two syllabaries (Hiragana and Katakana) and Chinese ideographic characters.

008/33 d
245 00‡aNihon kagaku zasshi.

e - Chinese

Chinese language does not actually have an alphabet. It uses a system of ideographic characters to represent sounds and entire words.

008/33 e
222 #0‡aTianjin yiyào
245 00‡aT'ien-chin i yao.

f - Arabic

008/33 f
245 00†aFikr wa-fann.

g - Greek

008/33 g
245 00†aMelissa ton vivlion.

h - Hebrew

008/33 h
245 00†aShenaton Seminar ha-kibutsim.

i - Thai

j - Devanagari

008/33 j
245 00†aAtma visvasa.

k - Korean

Korean language uses a writing system that forms characters that represent entire words from syllabic components (Hangul). Traditional Chinese ideographic characters are also used.

008/33 k
245 00†aTongguk nongnim.

l - Tamil

008/33 l
245 00†aKirutayukam.

u - Unknown

Original alphabet of the title is unknown.

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

Also used when the title incorporates words from more than one alphabet or script.

008/33 z
245 00†aSak`art`velos muzeumis moambe =†bBulletin du Muséum de Géorgie.
[Title in the Georgian and Extended Roman alphabet]

008/33 z
222 #0†aReport - Österreichische Länderbank

34 - Entry convention (006/17)

One-character numeric code that indicates whether the item was cataloged according to successive entry, latest entry, or integrated entry cataloging conventions.

008 - Continuing Resources

0 - Successive entry

New bibliographic record is created each time 1) a title changes, or 2) a corporate body used as main entry or uniform title qualifier, changes. The earlier or later title or author/title is recorded in a linking field (field 780/785) on each record.

008/34 0
245 **00**~~†~~**a**Hawaii medical journal.
780 **00**~~†~~**t**Hawaii medical journal and inter-island nurses bulletin~~†~~**x**0097-1030

008/34 0
110 **2**~~#~~~~†~~**a**Chartered Institute of Transport.
245 **00**~~†~~**a**Journal.
780 **00**~~†~~**a**Institute of Transport (London. England).~~†~~**t**Journal
[Pre-AACR 2 record]

1 - Latest entry

Cataloged under its latest (most recent) title or issuing body (pre-AACR cataloging rules). All former titles and/or issuing bodies are given in notes (fields 247, 547, and 550).

008/34 1
247 **10**~~†~~**a**British Columbia financial times~~†~~**f**1914-June 1951

008/34 1
111 **2**~~#~~~~†~~**a**Symposium on Underwater Physiology.
245 **10**~~†~~**a**Underwater physiology;~~†~~**b**proceedings.
550 **##**~~†~~**a**Vol. for 1955 issued by the symposium under its earlier name: Underwater Physiology Symposium.

2 - Integrated entry

Cataloged under its latest (most recent) title and/or responsible person or corporate body. Used for integrating resources and electronic serials that do not retain their earlier titles.

New record is made only when there is a major change in edition or it is determined that there is a new work, and for title mergers and splits.

| - No attempt to code

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

Field length - Field 008 should always consist of forty (40) character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

008/18 Frequency
k Continuously updated [NEW, 2001]

008/20 ISSN center

Following codes were made obsolete in USMARC in 1989: 2 (United Kingdom), 3 (Australia), 5 (Moscow Regional Centre), 6 (Federal Republic of Germany), 7 (France), 8 (Argentina), 9 (Japan), u (Unknown). These other codes were made obsolete in CAN/MARC in 1990: a (Finland), b (Yugoslavia), c (Tunisia), d (Italy), e (Nigeria), f (Sweden), g (New Zealand), h (Denmark), i (Austria), j (Netherlands), k (Brazil), l (Columbia), m (Uruguay), n (Ireland), p (Thailand), q (Mexico), r (Norway), s (Israel), t (Morocco). In 2002, code 2 (United Kingdom) was reinstated.

Following codes were made obsolete in 2003: # (No ISSN center code assigned), 0 (International Center), 1 (United States), 2 (United Kingdom), 4 (Canada), z (Other)

008 - Continuing Resources

008/21 *Type of serial* [REDEFINED, 2001]

Field was redefined as Type of continuing resource to accommodate integrating resources.

- d *Updating database* [NEW, 2001]
- l *Updating loose-leaf* [NEW, 2001]
- w *Updating Web site* [NEW, 2001]

008/22 *Form of original item*

- g *Punched paper tape* [OBSOLETE, 1987]
- h *Magnetic tape* [OBSOLETE, 1987]
- i *Multimedia* [OBSOLETE, 1987]
- o *Online* [NEW, 2010]
- q *Direct electronic* [NEW, 2010]
- x *Other physical medium* [OBSOLETE, 1977]
- z *Other* [OBSOLETE, 1987]

Prior to 1977, other physical media were identified by code x; currently code # is used.

008/23 *Form of item*

- # *None of the following* [OBSOLETE, 1987]
- g *Punched paper tape* [OBSOLETE, 1987]
- h *Magnetic tape* [OBSOLETE, 1987]
- i *Multimedia* [OBSOLETE, 1987]
- o *Online* [NEW, 2010]
- q *Direct electronic* [NEW, 2010]
- z *Other* [OBSOLETE, 1987]

Codes #, g, h, i, and z were made obsolete when the coding of 008/23 (Form of reproduction code) was redefined as information about the medium of the item in hand rather than about bibliographic reproductions. Code # (Not a reproduction) was redefined in 1987 when the focus of 008/23 was changed.

008/24 *Nature of entire work*

- n *Legal cases and case notes* [OBSOLETE, 1979]
- y *Yearbooks* [OBSOLETE, 1988] [REDEFINED, 2008]
- t *University calendars* [REDEFINED, 1997]
- u *Standards/specifications* [NEW, 2002]
- 3 *Discographies* [OBSOLETE, 1997]
- 4 *Filmographies* [OBSOLETE, 1997]
- 5 *Calendars* [NEW, 2008]
- 6 *Comics/graphic novels* [NEW, 2008]

Prior to 1979, legal cases and case notes were identified by code n; currently code v is used.

008/25-27 *Nature of contents*

- n *Legal cases and case notes* [OBSOLETE, 1979]
- y *Yearbooks* [OBSOLETE, 1988] [REDEFINED, 2008]
- t *University calendars* [REDEFINED, 1997]
- u *Standards/specifications* [NEW, 2002]
- 3 *Discographies* [OBSOLETE, 1997]
- 4 *Filmographies* [OBSOLETE, 1997]
- 5 *Calendars* [NEW, 2008]
- 6 *Comics/graphic novels* [NEW, 2008]

Prior to 1979, legal cases and case notes were identified by code n; currently code v is used.

008/28 *Government publication*

- n *Government publication-level undetermined* [OBSOLETE, 1979]

Prior to 1979, an undetermined level was identified by code n; currently code o is used.

008/30 *Title page availability* [OBSOLETE, 1990]

Defined codes were: # (No separate title page issued), a (In last issue of the volume, loose), b (In last issue of the volume, attached), c (In first issue of next volume, loose), d (In first issue of next volume, attached), e (Published separately, free upon request), f (Published separately, free, automatically sent), g (Published separately, purchase, request), u (Unknown), z (Other title page availability).

008/31 *Index availability* [OBSOLETE, 1990]

Defined codes were: # (No index published), a (Each issue contains an index to its own contents (no volume index), loose), b (In last issue of volume, loose, separately paged), c (In last issue of volume, loose, unpagged), d (In last issue of volume, attached), e (In first issue of next volume, loose, separately paged), f (In first issue of next volume, loose, unpagged), g (In first issue of next volume, attached), h (Published separately, free, automatically sent), i (Published separately, free, upon request), j (Published separately, bound from publisher, free, automatically sent), k (Published separately, bound from publisher, free, upon request), l (Received separately, bound from publisher), m (Supplement or subseries, indexed in parent journal index), u (Unknown), z (Other index availability).

008/32 *Cumulative index availability* [OBSOLETE, 1990]

Defined codes were: 0 (No cumulative index available), 1 (Cumulative index available), u (Unknown).

008/34 *Title as it appears on the piece indicator* [REDEFINED, 1975]

008/34 *Successive/latest entry* [RENAMED, 2001]

Prior to the definition of variable data field 222 (Key title) in 1975, 008/34 was defined as Title as it appears on the piece designator. The defined codes were: d (Different), t (Same as field 245), and m (Same as 1XX plus 245 fields). 008/34 was renamed Entry convention in 2001 to accommodate the integrating entry convention.

- 2 *Integrated entry* [NEW, 2001]

[blank page]

008 Visual Materials

(NR)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions (008/18-34 and 006/01-17)

18-20	Running time for motion pictures and videorecordings (006/01-03)	c	Microopaque
000	Running time exceeds three characters	d	Large print
001-999	Running time	f	Braille
nnn	Not applicable	o	Online
---	Unknown	q	Direct electronic
|||	No attempt to code	r	Regular print reproduction
		s	Electronic
		|	No attempt to code
21	Undefined (006/04)	30-32	Undefined (006/13-15)
#	Undefined	#	Undefined
|	No attempt to code	|	No attempt to code
22	Target audience (006/05)	33	Type of visual material (006/16)
#	Unknown or not specified	a	Art original
a	Preschool	b	Kit
b	Primary	c	Art reproduction
c	Pre-adolescent	d	Diorama
d	Adolescent	f	Filmstrip
e	Adult	g	Game
f	Specialized	i	Picture
g	General	k	Graphic
j	Juvenile	l	Technical drawing
|	No attempt to code	m	Motion picture
23-27	Undefined (006/06-10)	n	Chart
#	Undefined	o	Flash card
|	No attempt to code	p	Microscope slide
28	Government publication (006/11)	q	Model
#	Not a government publication	r	Realia
a	Autonomous or semi-autonomous component	s	Slide
c	Multilocal	t	Transparency
f	Federal/national	v	Videorecording
i	International intergovernmental	w	Toy
l	Local	z	Other
m	Multistate	|	No attempt to code
o	Government publication-level undetermined	34	Technique (006/17)
s	State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.	a	Animation
u	Unknown if item is government publication	c	Animation and live action
z	Other	l	Live action
|	No attempt to code	n	Not applicable
29	Form of item (006/12)	u	Unknown
#	None of the following	z	Other
a	Microfilm	|	No attempt to code
b	Microfiche		

008 - Visual Materials

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Visual materials definition of field 008/18-34 is used when Leader/06 (Type of record) contains code g (Projected medium), code k (Two-dimensional nonprojectable graphic, code o (Kit), or code r (Three-dimensional artifact or naturally occurring object). Field 008 positions 01-17 and 35-39 are defined the same in all 008 fields and are described in the *008-All materials* section.

Field 008/18-34 correspond to equivalent positionally defined data elements in field 006/01-17 when field 006/00 (Form of material) contains code g, k, o, or r . Details about specific codes defined for the equivalent character positions in field 006 and 008 for **visual materials** are provided in the *Guidelines for Applying Content Designators* section of *008-Visual materials* only.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

18-20 - Running time for motion pictures and videorecordings (006/01-03)

Three-digit number that indicates the total running time of the motion picture or videorecording. The number is right justified and each unused position contains a zero.

000 - Running time exceeds three characters

008/18-20 000

300 ##~~t~~a30 videocassettes (52 min. each) :~~t~~b~~s~~d., col. ;~~t~~c1/2 in.

001-999 - Running time

Represents running time in whole numbers from 1 to 999. Running times of less than three digits are right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

008/18-20 052

300 ##~~t~~a1 film reel (52 min.) :~~t~~b~~s~~d., col. ;~~t~~c16 mm.

008/18-20 180

300 ##~~t~~a12 videorecordings (15 min. each) :~~t~~b~~s~~d., col. ;~~t~~c1 in.

008/18-20 024

300 ##~~t~~a3 film reels (24 min.) :~~t~~b~~s~~d., col. ;~~t~~c16 mm.

505 0#~~t~~aBirds of Maryland (5 min., 21 sec.) -- Birds of Virginia(10 min., 15 sec.) -- Birds of Delaware (8 min., 6 sec.)

nnn - Not applicable

Running time is not applicable, such as when the item is not a motion picture or a videorecording.

008/18-20 nnn

300 ##~~t~~a121 slides :~~t~~bcol. ;~~t~~c2x2 in. +~~t~~e1 teacher's guide.

[Code nnn indicates that the item is other than a motion picture or a videorecording.]

--- - Unknown

Running time is unknown.

008/18-20 ---

300 ##1 videocassette :1bsd., col. ;1c3/4 in.

[Running time not stated elsewhere in the record.]

||| - No attempt to code

21 - Undefined (006/04)

Undefined; contains a blank (#) or a fill character (()).

22 - Target audience (006/05)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the audience for which the item is intended.

Used primarily for educational audiovisual materials. When items with factual content are considered appropriate for more than one target audience, the code is recorded for the highest level appropriate.

- Unknown or not specified

Target audience for which the material is intended is unknown or is not specified. Used for all original or historical graphic material.

008/22 #

245 001aQuantum mechanics.

a - Preschool

Intended for children, approximate ages 0-5 years.

008/22 a

245 041aThe Magic color wheel.

b - Primary

Intended for children, approximate ages 6-8 years.

008/22 b

245 141aThe alphabet.

c - Pre-adolescent

Intended for young people, approximate ages 9-13.

008/22 c

245 001aPearl Harbor:1h[motion picture].

d - Adolescent

Intended for young people, approximate ages 14-17.

008/22 d

245 001aBuilding of the Panama Canal.

008 - Visual Materials

e - Adult

Intended for adults.

008/22 e
245 001a Square dancing :1b advanced level calls.

f - Specialized

Aimed at a particular audience and the nature of the presentation would make the item of little interest to other audiences. Examples include: 1) highly technical training films; 2) items intended for special education of the physically or mentally handicapped; and 3) items which address a limited audience, for example, the employees of a single organization.

008/22 f
245 001a Proper use of the Scubapro buoyancy compensator1h [videorecording].
[An instructional tape accompanying special equipment]

g - General

Of general interest and not aimed at an audience of a particular intellectual level. Used for fictional works not covered more appropriately by one of the other codes.

008/22 g
245 001a To fly1h [motion picture].

j - Juvenile

Intended for use by children and young people, approximate ages 0-15. Used when a more specific code for the juvenile target audience is not desired.

| - No attempt to code

23-27 - Undefined (006/06-10)

Undefined; each contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

28 - Government publication (006/11)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates whether the item is published or produced by or for an international, provincial, national, state, or local government agency, or by any subdivision of such a body, and, if so, the jurisdictional level of the agency.

Government bodies and all their subdivisions are treated as government bodies regardless of how they may be entered as headings (i.e., entered under jurisdiction or not). In the bibliographic record, the body does not have to be a main or added entry, but it should be named as publisher, etc. in the publication, distribution, etc. area, or have caused the item to be published (usually inferred when the governmental body is responsible for the content of the work). When in doubt, treat the item as a government publication.

Guidelines for certain types of publications

- **Socialist countries** - Since the coding of all items published in socialist countries as government publications would limit the usefulness of this element, coding should be used only for the same type of bodies that would be considered government in a non-socialist country. In coding items in this manner, when in doubt, treat the item as a government publication.
- **Two levels** - If an item is published or produced jointly by government agencies at two different levels, record the code for the higher government level.

008 - Visual Materials

- **Academic publications** - In the U.S., items published by academic institutions are considered government publications if the institutions are created or controlled by a government.
- **University presses** - In the U.S., items published by university presses are considered government publications if the presses are created or controlled by a government (e.g., state university presses in the United States).

- Not a government publication

Not published by or for a government body.

008/28 #
110 2#~~1~~aUnited Artists.

008/28 #
260 ##~~1~~aNew York :~~1~~bTime-Life Books,~~1~~c1976.

a - Autonomous or semi-autonomous component

Published or produced by or for a government body of an autonomous or semi-autonomous component of a country.

008/28 a
110 1#~~1~~aSabah.

c - Multilocal

Published or produced by or for a multilocal jurisdiction which is defined as a regional combination of jurisdictions below the state level.

008/28 c
110 2#~~1~~aWashington Metropolitan Area Transit Authority.

f - Federal/national

Published or produced by or for a federal or national government body, e.g., a sovereign nation, such as Canada. Used for the governments of England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland. Code f is also used for American Indian tribes.

008/28 f
110 1#~~1~~aUnited States.~~1~~bNational Park Service.

i - International intergovernmental

Published or produced by or for an international intergovernmental body.

008/28 i
110 2#~~1~~aOrganization of American States.

l - Local

Published or produced by or for a local government jurisdiction such as a county, city, town, etc.

008/28 l
110 1#~~1~~aZanesville (Ohio)

008 - Visual Materials

m - Multistate

Published or produced by or for a regional combination of jurisdictions at the state, provincial, territorial, etc. level.

008/28 m
110 2#1a Tennessee Valley Authority.

o - Government publication-level undetermined

Published or produced by or for a government body but that the jurisdictional level cannot be determined.

s - State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.

Jurisdictional level of the government body is a state, province, territory, etc.

008/28 s
110 1#1a Puerto Rico.1b Legislative Assembly.

u - Unknown if item is government publication

Whether or not the item is published or produced by or for a government agency is unknown.

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

29 - Form of item (006/12)

One-character alphabetic code that specifies the form of material.

- None of the following

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

a - Microfilm

b - Microfiche

c - Microopaque

d - Large print

f - Braille

o - Online

The resource is accessed by means of hardware and software connections to a communications network. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

q - Direct electronic

Storage on a directly accessible tangible recording medium, e.g. disc, tape, playaway device, flashdrive, portable hard drive, etc. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

r - Regular print reproduction

Eye-readable print, such as a photocopy.

s - Electronic

Intended for manipulation by a computer. May reside in a carrier accessed either directly or remotely, in some cases requiring the use of peripheral devices attached to the computer (e.g., a CD-ROM player). Not used for items that do not require the use of a computer (e.g., music compact discs, videodiscs). This code can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource. Codes o and q may be used if there is a need to separately identify online and direct electronic resources.

| - No attempt to code

30-32 - Undefined (006/13-15)

Undefined; each contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

33 - Type of visual material (006/16)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the type of visual material being described.

a - Art original

Two or three-dimensional work of art created by an artist, for example, a sculpture, as contrasted with a reproduction of it.

008/33 a
245 14#~~t~~a[La gioconda]~~t~~h[art original] =~~t~~b[Mona Lisa].

b - Kit

Mixture of components from two or more categories, that is, sound recording, maps, filmstrips, etc., no one of which is the predominant constituent of the item.

Also includes the packages of material called laboratory kits, and packages of assorted materials, such as a set of K-12 social studies curriculum material (all books, workbooks, guides, activities, etc.) or packages of educational test materials (tests, answer sheets, scoring guides, score charts, interpretative manuals, etc.).

008/33 b
245 00#~~t~~a200 ans d'opéra, La Scala~~t~~h[kit] ...
500 ##~~t~~aIssued in box (63 x 48 x 8 cm.) containing 1 vol. (166, [156] p. : ill. ; 31 cm.), 6 sound discs (33 1/3 rpm, mono. ; 12 in. in case), 4 dioramas (47 pieces : col.), 4 souvenir booklets (12 p. each : ill. ; 15 cm. in case), and 2 art reproductions (photogravure, col. ; 60 x 45 cm.).

c - Art reproduction

Two or three-dimensional mechanically reproduced copy of a work of art, generally as one of a commercial edition.

008/33 c
245 10#~~t~~a[Breezing up]~~t~~h[art reproduction].

d - Diorama

Three-dimensional representation of a scene created by placing objects, figures, etc. in front of a two-dimensional background.

008/33 d
245 00#~~t~~aCrèche de Noël~~t~~h[diorama].

008 - Visual Materials

f - Filmstrip

Length of film containing a succession of images intended for projection one frame at a time with or without recorded sound.

008/33 f

245 00#1aWord processing#1h[filmstrip]#1c can audiovisual production of the Robert C. Brady Co.

g - Game

Item or set of items designed for play according to prescribed rules and intended for recreation or instruction. Code g includes puzzles and simulations.

008/33 g

245 04#1aThe Fable game#1h[game].

i - Picture

Two-dimensional visual representation accessible to the naked eye and generally on an opaque backing.

008/33 i

245 03#1a[A Rainbow over the Grand Canyon]#1h[picture].

k - Graphic

Used for original or historical graphic material.

008/33 k

100 1#1aGilpin, Laura,#1c photographer.

245 15#1a[The prelude]#1h[graphic].

l - Technical drawing

Cross section, detail, diagram, elevation, perspective, plan, working plan, etc., made for use in an architectural engineering or other technical context.

008/33 l

245 00#1a[Cross section of west stairway]#1h[technical drawing].

m - Motion picture

Series of still pictures on film with or without sound, designed to be projected in rapid succession to produce the optical effect of motion.

008/33 m

245 00#1aLeaving the freeway#1h[motion picture].

n - Chart

Opaque sheet that exhibits data in graphic or tabular form (e.g., a calendar).

008/33 n

245 00#1a[Periodic table]#1h[chart].

o - Flash card

Card or other opaque material printed with words, numerals, or pictures and designed for rapid display. Activity cards are included in this category.

008/33 o

245 00#1aGerman#1h[flash card].

p - Microscope slide

Transparent mount, usually glass, containing a minute object to be viewed through a microscope or microprojector.

008/33 p
245 001a[Onion skin]1h[microscope slide].

q - Model

Three-dimensional representation of a real thing, either of the exact size of the original or to scale.

008/33 q
245 001aSolar system simulator1h[model].

r - Realia

Includes 1) all other three-dimensional items not covered by the other codes (e.g., clothing, stitchery, fabrics, tools, utensils), and 2) naturally occurring objects.

008/33 r
245 001a[Sea shell]1h[realia].

s - Slide

Transparent material on which there is a two-dimensional image, usually held in a mount, and designed for use in a projector or viewer. Modern stereographs, for example, Viewmaster reels, are included here.

008/33 s
245 001aStreet paintings of Los Angeles1h[slide].

t - Transparency

Transparent material on which a basically still image is recorded. Transparencies are designed for use with an overhead projector or a light box. X-rays are coded as transparencies.

008/33 t
245 041aThe Electromagnetic spectrum1h[transparency].

v - Videorecording

Recording on which visual images, usually in motion and accompanied by sound, have been registered. Videorecordings are designed for playback by means of a television receiver or monitor.

008/33 v
245 001aRadio processing--a short story history of processors1h[videorecording].

w - Toy

Material object for children or others to play with (often an imitation of some familiar object); a plaything; also, something contrived for amusement rather than for practical use.

008/33 w
245 001a[Yoyo]1h[toy].

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

008 - Visual Materials

34 - Technique (006/17)

One-character alphabetic code that indicates the technique used in creating motion in motion pictures or videorecordings.

a - Animation

Animated films are produced using a variety of techniques including 1) cartoons; 2) graphic film (with paint or other media directly applied to the surface of the film); 3) model, clay, or puppet animation (where three-dimensional objects are photographed one frame at a time to achieve the effect of animation); and 4) other techniques.

008/34 a
245 **00**†aClosed Mondays†h[motion picture].
520 **##**†aUses clay animation ...

c - Animation and live action

Combination of animation and live action. Used when there is some indication elsewhere in the cataloging record that there are animated sequences. This information may appear in a Summary note (field 520) or in a Credits note (field 508).

008/34 c
245 **00**†aNarcissus†h[motion picture].
520 **##**†aThrough optical imagery shows the beauty of traditional ballet. Live action and animation are used ...

l - Live action

If no information is found in the cataloging record and accompanying material that indicates otherwise, it is assumed that the motion picture or videorecording is live action.

008/34 l
245 **00**†aAnnie Hall†h[motion picture] ...

n - Not applicable

Item is not a motion picture or a videorecording.

u - Unknown

Technique for creating motion is unknown.

z - Other

Primarily of special techniques which are neither animation nor live action. These include microcinematography, time lapse cinematography, trick cinematography, and other techniques. Code z is also used for videorecordings and motion pictures which were made from still image slide sets or filmstrips without adding animation to the images.

008/34 z
245 **00**†aCloud formation†h[motion picture].
520 **##**†aUses time-lapse photography to show actual cloud formation in the earth's atmosphere.

| - No attempt to code

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

Field length - Field 008 should always consist of forty (40) character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

008/18-20 *Length* [REDEFINED, 1984]

nnn *Not applicable* [NEW, 1984]

In 1984, 008/18-20 (Length) was redefined to limit its use to motion pictures and videorecordings. Code nnn (Not applicable) was defined at that time. Records created prior to that change may contain the number of slides, filmstrip frames, or transparencies in 008/18-20.

008/21 *In LC collection* [OBSOLETE, 1983] [USMARC only]

Defined codes were: # (Not in LC), a (In LC, print note), b (In LC, do not print note), u (Unknown).

008/22 *Target audience*

c *Elementary and junior high* [RENAMED, 2002]

d *Secondary (senior high)* [RENAMED, 2002]

f *General* [OBSOLETE]

g *Specialized* [OBSOLETE]

Prior to 1972, the definitions of codes f and g were reversed: f (General), g (Specialized).

h *Secondary (grades 10-12)* [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

k *Preschool and Kindergarten* [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

m *Primary (grades 4-6)* [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

p *Special education - general* [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

q *Physically handicapped* [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

r *Mentally retarded* [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

s *Simplified works for adults* [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

t *Gifted* [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

008/23-27 *Accompanying matter code* [OBSOLETE, 1980]

0 *No* [OBSOLETE] [USMARC only]

1 *Yes* [OBSOLETE] [USMARC only]

Prior to 1980, character positions 23-27 were positionally defined (23, Stills; 24, Script material; 25, Posters; 26, Press books; and 27, Other). Each position contained a status code 0 (No) or 1 (Yes) to indicate the absence or presence of the type of material. In 1980, specific codes were defined for types of accompanying material and 008/23-27 were restructured to contain as many as five codes.

Character positions 23-27 were made obsolete in 1997. The defined codes were: # (No accompanying matter), l (Stills), m (Script material), o (Posters), p (Pressbooks), q (Lobby cards), r (Instructional materials), s (Music), z (Other).

008/23 *Form of item* [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Defined codes were: # (None of the following), a (Microfilm); b (Microfiche); c (Microopaque). Code z (Other) was obsolete.

008/24-27 *Accompanying material* [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Defined codes were: # (No accompanying material); a (Language material-printed); c (Music-printed); d (Diorama); e (Map-printed); f (Filmstrip); g (Game); h (Microform); i (Sound recording-non-musical); j (Sound recording-musical); k (Picture); l (Machine-readable data file); m (Motion picture); n (Chart); o (Flash card); p (Microscope slide); q (Model); r (Realia); s (Slide); t (Transparency); v (Videorecording); z (Other).

008/28 *Government publication*

n *Government publication-level undetermined* [OBSOLETE, 1979]

Prior to 1979, an undetermined level was identified by code n; currently code o is used.

008/29 *Form of item*

o *Online* [NEW, 2010]

q *Direct electronic* [NEW, 2010]

008/32 *Main Entry in body of entry* [OBSOLETE, 1990]

Defined codes were: 0 (Main entry not in body of entry), 1 (Main entry in body of entry).

008/33 *Type of visual material*

e *Electronic videorecording* [OBSOLETE, 1975]

Code was made obsolete when code v (Videotape) was redefined to include any videorecording.

008/34 *Technique*

Not applicable [OBSOLETE, 1980]

Codes defined for this character position were applicable only to motion pictures until the definition was expanded to include videorecordings in 1980. At that time code n was defined for items other than motion pictures and videorecordings and # was made obsolete.

[blank page]

008 Mixed Materials

(NR)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions (008/18-34 and 006/01-17)

18-22	Undefined (006/01-05)	f	Braille
#	Undefined	o	Online
|	No attempt to code	q	Direct electronic
		r	Regular print reproduction
23	Form of item (006/06)	s	Electronic
#	None of the following	|	No attempt to code
a	Microfilm		
b	Microfiche	24-34	Undefined (006/07-17)
c	Microopaque	#	Undefined
d	Large print	|	No attempt to code

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Mixed materials definition of field 008/18-34 is used when Leader/06 (Type of record) contains code p (Mixed material). Field 008 positions 01-17 and 35-39 are defined the same in all 008 fields and are described in the *008-All materials* section.

Field 008/18-34 correspond to equivalent positionally defined data elements in field 006/01-17 when field 006/00 (Form of material) contains code p (Mixed material). Details about specific codes defined for the equivalent character positions in field 006 and 008 for **mixed materials** are provided in the *Guidelines for Applying Content Designators* section of *008-Mixed materials* only.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ CHARACTER POSITIONS****18-22 - Undefined (006/01-05)**

Undefined; each contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

23 - Form of item (006/06)

One-character alphabetic code that specifies the form of material for the item.

- None of the following

Not specified by one of the other codes.

a - Microfilm**b - Microfiche**

008/23 b
300 ~~##~~1 microfiche ;~~t~~c10 x 15 cm.

008 - Mixed Materials

c - Microopaque

d - Large print

008/23 d
250 ~~##~~1a Large print ed.

f - Braille

o - Online

The resource is accessed by means of hardware and software connections to a communications network. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

q - Direct electronic

Storage on a directly accessible tangible recording medium, e.g. disc, tape, playaway device, flashdrive, portable hard drive, etc. If a distinction between types of electronic resources is not necessary, code s can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource.

r - Regular print reproduction

Eye-readable print, such as a photocopy.

008/23 r
500 ~~##~~1a Photo-reproduction of 1963 edition.

s - Electronic

Intended for manipulation by a computer. May reside in a carrier accessed either directly or remotely, in some cases requiring the use of peripheral devices attached to the computer (e.g., a CD-ROM player). Not used for items that do not require the use of a computer (e.g., music compact discs, videodiscs). This code can be used as a generic code for any form of electronic resource. Codes o and q may be used if there is a need to separately identify online and direct electronic resources.

| - No attempt to code

24-34 - Undefined (006/07-17)

Undefined; each contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

Field length - Field 008 should always consist of forty (40) character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

008/23 *Form of item*
None of the following [REDEFINED, 1987]
g *Punched paper tape [OBSOLETE, 1987]*
h *Magnetic tape [OBSOLETE, 1987]*
i *Multimedia [OBSOLETE, 1987]*
j *Handwritten transcript [OBSOLETE, 1987]*
o *Online [NEW, 2010]*
p *Photocopy [OBSOLETE, 1987]*
q *Direct electronic [NEW, 2010]*
t *Typewritten transcript [OBSOLETE, 1987]*

008 - Mixed Materials

z Other form of reproduction [OBSOLETE, 1987]

Code # (Not a reproduction) was redefined when the focus of 008/23 was changed. The other codes were made obsolete when the coding of 008/23 (Form of reproduction code) was redefined as information about the medium of the item in hand rather than about bibliographic reproductions.

008/30 Case file indicator [OBSOLETE, 1983]

Defined codes were: # (No case file exists) and c (Case file exists). This kind of information may be contained in field 583 (Actions).

008/32 Processing status code [OBSOLETE, 1983]

Defined codes were: a (Collection not in library), b (Completely processed), c (Processed but with unprocessed additions), d (Requires reprocessing), e (Totally unprocessed), f (Under total closure), u (Unknown). This kind of information may be contained in field 583 (Actions).

008/33 Collection status code [OBSOLETE, 1983]

Defined codes were: a (Discrete grouping of material), b (Accession), c (Active solicitation), d (Solicitation unsuccessful), e (Information file only), u (Unknown). This kind of information may be contained in field 583 (Actions).

008/34 Level of collection control code [OBSOLETE, 1983]

Defined codes were: a (Control on collection level), b (Control by series), c (Control by container), d (Control by folder), e (Control by item), u (Unknown). This kind of information may be contained in field 555 (Cumulative Index/Finding Aids Note).

[blank page]

033 Date/Time and Place of an Event

(R)

First Indicator

Type of date in subfield ‡a
 # No date information
 0 Single date
 1 Multiple single dates
 2 Range of dates

Second Indicator

Type of event
 # No information provided
 0 Capture
 1 Broadcast
 2 Finding

Subfield Codes

‡a Formatted date/time (R)	|‡2 Source of term (R)
‡b Geographic classification area code (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡c Geographic classification subarea code (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
|‡p Place of event (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
|‡0 Record control number (R)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Formatted date/time and/or coded place of creation, capture, recording, filming, execution, or broadcast associated with an event or the finding of a naturally occurring object. This information in textual form is contained in field 518 (Date/Time and Place of an Event Note).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Type of date in subfield ‡a**

Type of date information contained in subfield ‡a.

- No date information

No date information is given and therefore, there is no subfield ‡a.

0 - Single date

Date information consists of a single date, regardless of whether its form is year-month-day, year-month, or year alone.

1 - Multiple single dates

Date information consists of more than one single date. Also used for two consecutive dates.

2 - Range of dates

Used, for example, when the period of capture, execution, etc., spanned more than two consecutive days, and the individual dates are unknown or too numerous to be specified.

033

Second Indicator - Type of event

Specifies the type of event information found in the field.

- No information provided

0 - Capture

Pertains to the recording of sound, the filming of visual images, the making or producing of an item, or other form of creation of an item.

1 - Broadcast

Pertains to the broadcasting (i.e., transmission) or re-broadcasting of sound or visual images.

2 - Finding

Pertains to the finding of a naturally occurring object.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Formatted date/time

Seventeen characters, recorded in the pattern *yyyymmddhhmm+-hmm*, that indicate the actual or approximate date (*yyyymmdd*)/time (*hhmm*) of capture, finding, or broadcast and Time Differential Factor (*+hmm*) information. A hyphen (-) is used for unknown digits in the year/month/day segment. Within each segment, the data is right justified and any unused position contains a zero.

The first eight characters *yyyymmdd* (4 for the year, 2 for the month, and 2 for the day) represent the date and are mandatory if the subfield is used.

The following four characters, *hhmm* (2 for the hour, 2 for the minute), represent the time as hour and minute.

The last 5 character positions *+hhmm* give the Time Differential Factor information. The Time Differential Factor (TDF) is preceded by a plus (+) or minus (-) sign, indicating the hours and minutes the local time is ahead of or behind Universal Time (Greenwich Mean Time), respectively. Local times throughout the world vary from Universal Time by as much as -1200 (west of the Greenwich Meridian) and by as much as +1300 hours (east of the Greenwich Meridian).

For the hour, in all cases, the 24-hour clock (00-23) is used.

Multiple single date/times and date/times in a range associated with the same type of event may be contained in repeating ‡a subfields, with earlier times preceding later ones.

518 ##‡aSigned and dated 1858 in the medium.

033 00‡a1858----

[An original or historical graphic item that was executed in 1858.]

033 02‡a19750305‡b4034‡cR4

[A meteorite that was found on March 5, 1975, in Richmond, Texas.]

518 ##‡aBroadcast October 17, 1954 at 7:30 p.m. (PST).

033 01‡a195410171930-0700

[A television program.]

518 ##‡aBroadcast September 7, 1987 at 7:00 p.m. (EST) and subsequently rebroadcast October 1, 1987 at 8:30 p.m. (EST).

033 11‡a198709071900-0400‡a198710012030-0400

[A radio program.]

518 ##‡aBroadcast every night at 8:00 p.m. (EST) from September 10 to September 14, 1978.

033 21‡a197809102000-0400‡a197809142000-0400

[A television mini-series.]

518 ##†aBroadcast at 9:30 p.m. (EST) in 1962.

033 01†a1962----2130

[An episode of a television series with the specific broadcast date unknown, but known to have been broadcast at 9:30 p.m. (EST).]

033 01†a198707281409+0530†b7654†c2

[A radio program broadcast at 2 hours, 9 minutes and 23 seconds past noon on July 28, 1987 in Calcutta, India (five and one-half hours different from the Universal Time and east of the Greenwich Meridian).]

If an exact date is not specified, an approximate date or span of dates is recorded.

518 ##†aRecorded ca. 1963.

033 00†a1963----

†b - Geographic classification area code

Four to six character numeric code for the main geographic area associated with an item. The code consists of the appropriate classification number from the range G3190-G9980 derived from the *Library of Congress Classification--Class G* by dropping the letter G.

Library of Congress maintains the *Library of Congress Classification--Class G*. Subfield †b may be repeated when more than one place is associated with an item.

033 #0†b3960

[The place of recording is implied from title, "Folk songs of S.E. Tennessee," and a general note, "Recorded at performers' homes."]

033 00†a19780916†b3964†cN2

[A videorecording that was filmed in Nashville, Tennessee on September 16, 1978.]

033 20†a197601--†a197606--†b6714†cR7†b6714†cV4

[A motion picture that was filmed on location in Rome and Venice from January through June 1976.]

If the place of recording is not specified, but is implied, the implied place is given as the place of recording, etc.

245 00†aFolk songs of S.E. Tennessee†h[sound recording].

518 ##†aRecorded at the performers' homes.

033 #0†b3960

518 ##†aRecorded from Dutch and German radio broadcasts.

033 #0†b6000

033 #0†b6080

†c - Geographic classification subarea code

Alphanumeric Cutter number for a geographic subarea, derived from the *Library of Congress Classification--Class G* or expanded Cutter number lists for place names. Cutter numbers for places in the United States are also published in *Geographic Cutters. Class G, Geographic Cutters*, and the expanded Cutter lists are maintained by the Library of Congress.

Each geographic subarea code is contained in a separate subfield †c. Subfield †c may be repeated when more than one place is associated with an item; each subfield †c must follow its associated subfield †b.

033 10†a19770115†a19770210†b3824†cP5†b3804†cN4

033

‡p - Place of event

Place of event. May be in a controlled or uncontrolled form.

033 00‡a200008--‡b5754‡cL7‡pAbbey Road Studio 1, London

‡0 - Record control number

Control number of the record for a controlled place term in subfield ‡p.

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

MARC code that identifies the source of the term used in ‡p when it is from a controlled list.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

033 00‡3Horse‡a1925----
[A horse component of a sculpture group that was cast in 1925.]

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Collection of works - If the record is of a collection of works and their dates and places of recording are not listed individually in field 518, all information about the date(s) and place(s) are recorded in a single field 033.

518 ##‡aRecorded 1976-1978 principally in the Broadcasting House Concert Hall or the New Gallery, London.
033 20‡a1976----‡a1978----‡b5754‡cL7

More than one work - If the recording contains more than one work, and the individual works were captured on different dates and/or in different locations, the information for each work or group of works is recorded in a separate field 033.

518 ##‡aRecorded Oct. 1979 during performances at Amerika Haus, Munich, and the Limmalthaus, Zurich.
033 00‡a197910--‡b6299‡cM8
033 00‡a197910--‡b6044‡cZ8
518 ##‡aRecorded Aug. 1-2 (Finzi) and Nov. 28-29 (Stanford) 1979 in Henry Wood Hall, London.
033 10‡a19790801‡a19790802‡b5754‡cL7
033 10‡a19791128‡a19791129‡b5754‡cL7
033 10‡a19770115‡a19770210‡b3824‡cP5‡b3804‡cN4
033 20‡a19710607‡a19710614‡b3804‡cN4:2C3
[A videorecording containing two works, one of which was captured in Philadelphia and New York on January 15 and February 10, 1977, and one of which was filmed during the week of June 7, 1971 in New York at Carnegie Hall.]

Dates - If an item is recorded or filmed on one date and broadcast on another date, the information for each event is recorded in a separate field 033.

033 00‡a19870705

033 01‡a198709272000-0400‡a198712292200-0500

[A videorecording that was filmed on July 5, 1987 and broadcast on television on September 27, 1987 at 8:00 p.m. (EST). It was rebroadcast on December 29 at 10:00 p.m. (EST). The Time Differential Factor differs because one time involved daylight saving time; the other standard time.]

Punctuation - Period that usually precedes a Cutter number is omitted in subfield ‡c.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Type of event

In 1989, the second indicator was given its present definition. Records created prior to this change may contain a # meaning *undefined*.

|‡p - *Place of event [NEW, 2010]*

|‡0 - *Record control number [NEW, 2010]*

|‡2 - *Source of term [NEW, 2010]*

[blank page]

034 Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data	(R)
---	------------

First Indicator

Type of scale

- 0 Scale indeterminable/No scale recorded
- 1 Single scale
- 3 Range of scales

Second Indicator

Type of ring

- # Not applicable
- 0 Outer ring
- 1 Exclusion ring

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ‡a Category of scale (NR) ‡b Constant ratio linear horizontal scale (R) ‡c Constant ratio linear vertical scale (R) ‡d Coordinates - westernmost longitude (NR) ‡e Coordinates - easternmost longitude (NR) ‡f Coordinates - northernmost latitude (NR) ‡g Coordinates - southernmost latitude (NR) ‡h Angular scale (R) ‡j Declination - northern limit (NR) ‡k Declination - southern limit (NR) ‡m Right ascension - eastern limit (NR) ‡n Right ascension - western limit (NR) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ‡p Equinox (NR) ‡r Distance from earth (NR) ‡s G-ring latitude (R) ‡t G-ring longitude (R) ‡x Beginning date (NR) ‡y Ending date (NR) ‡z Name of extraterrestrial body (NR) ‡2 Source (NR) \|‡3 Materials specified (NR) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
|---|---|

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Contains cartographic mathematical data, including scale, projection, and/or coordinates in coded form. For digital items, the coordinates can represent a bounding rectangle, the outline of the area covered and/or the outline of an interior area not covered. For celestial charts, it may also contain zone, declination data, and/or right ascension data, and/or equinox. There should be an 034 field corresponding to each 255 field in a record.

For **relief models** and **other three-dimensional items**, if a single set of scales is used in field 255 (i.e., one horizontal and one vertical scale), the first indicator position in field 034 contains value 1, the denominator of the representative fraction for the horizontal scale is recorded in subfield ‡b, and the denominator of the representative fraction for the vertical scale is recorded in subfield ‡c. If multiple or varying sets of scales are recorded as a range, the smaller and larger denominators for the horizontal scales are recorded in the first and second subfield ‡b respectively, the smaller and larger denominators for the vertical scales are recorded in the first and second subfield ‡c, respectively, and the first indicator position contains value 3.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Type of scale**

Specifies the type of scale information given.

0 - Scale indeterminable/No scale recorded

Used when no representative fraction is given in field 255.

1 - Single scale

Single horizontal scale.

034

3 - Range of scales

Scale consists of a range of scales.

Second Indicator - Type of ring

Type of ring for digital cartographic items.

- Not applicable

Type of ring is not applicable, such as when the cartographic item is not digitally encoded data.

0 - Outer ring

Coordinate information represents the closed non-intersecting boundary of the area covered.

1 - Exclusion ring

Coordinate information represents the closed non-intersecting boundary of an area within the G-polygon outer ring that is excluded.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Category of scale

One-character alphabetic code indicating the type of scale of the item.

Used even when a specific scale is not recorded (first indicator position contains value 0). The codes used in subfield ‡a are:

a - Linear scale

034 1#‡a‡b100000

b - Angular scale

Used for celestial charts.

z - Other type of scale

Any other type of scale, for example, a time scale, quantitative statistical scale, etc.

If the scale statement is the only subfield given in field 255 and if the scale statement does not contain a representative fraction, field 034 will contain only subfield ‡a.

034 0#‡a

‡b - Constant ratio linear horizontal scale

Denominator of the representative fraction for the horizontal scale.

The larger scale (smaller number) is generally given first.

034 1#‡a‡b1000000

034 3#‡a‡b18000‡b28000

‡c - Constant ratio linear vertical scale

Denominator of the representative fraction for the vertical scale of relief models and other three-dimensional items.

The larger scale (smaller number) is generally given first.

034 1#‡a‡b744000‡c96000

‡d - Coordinates - westernmost longitude

⌘e - Coordinates - easternmost longitude**⌘f - Coordinates - northernmost latitude****⌘g - Coordinates - southernmost latitude**

Subfields ⌘d, ⌘e, ⌘f, and ⌘g individually identify the four coordinates of the item. Subfield ⌘d represents the westernmost extent of the item; subfield ⌘e, the easternmost extent; subfield ⌘f, the northernmost extent; and subfield ⌘g, the southernmost extent. The abbreviations for the hemispheres are: *N = North, S = South, E = East, W = West*.

Subfields ⌘d, ⌘e, ⌘f, and ⌘g always appear together. The coordinates may be recorded in the form *hddmmss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds), however, other forms are also allowed, such as decimal degrees. The subelements are each right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

Examples in **degrees/minutes/seconds**: *hddmmss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds):

034 1#⌘a⌘b22000000⌘dW1800000⌘eE1800000⌘fN0840000⌘gS0700000

034 1#⌘a⌘b253440⌘dE0790000⌘eE0860000⌘fN0200000⌘gN0120000

[The above two examples illustrate records for flat maps or flat maps in atlases.]

Example in **decimal degrees**: *hddd.ddddd* (hemisphere-degrees.decimal degrees):

034 1#⌘a⌘dE079.533265⌘eE086.216635⌘fS012.583377⌘gS020.419532

Example in **decimal degrees**: *+ddd.ddddd* (hemisphere[+/-]-degrees.decimal degrees) (“+” for N and E, “-” for S and W; the plus sign is optional):

034 1#⌘a⌘d+079.533265⌘e+086.216635⌘f-012.583377⌘g-020.419532

Example without the optional plus sign:

034 1#⌘a⌘d079.533265⌘e086.216635⌘f-012.583377⌘g-020.419532

Example in **decimal minutes**: *hddmm.mmmm* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes.decimal minutes):

034 1#⌘a⌘dE07932.5332⌘eE08607.4478⌘fS01235.5421⌘gS02028.9704

Example in **decimal seconds**: *hddmms.sss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds.decimal seconds):

034 1#⌘a⌘dE0793235.575⌘eE0860727.350⌘fS0123536.895⌘gS0202858.125

If the coordinates for a map or plan are given in terms of a center point rather than outside limits, the longitude and latitude which form the central axis are recorded twice (in subfields ⌘d and ⌘e and in ⌘f and ⌘g, respectively).

034 1#⌘a⌘b75000⌘dW0950500⌘eW0950500⌘fN0303000⌘gN0303000

034 1#⌘a⌘dW119.697222⌘eW119.697222⌘fN034.420833⌘gN034.420833

034 1#⌘a⌘d-119.697222⌘e-119.697222⌘f+034.420833⌘g+034.420833

034 1#⌘a⌘dW11941.833333⌘eW11941.833333⌘fN03425.250000⌘gN03425.250000

⌘h - Angular scale

Scale, if known, for celestial charts.

⌘j - Declination - northern limit**⌘k - Declination - southern limit****⌘m - Right ascension - eastern limit**

034

‡n - Right ascension - western limit

Subfields ‡j, ‡k, ‡m, and ‡n are used with celestial charts or celestial charts in atlases and contain the limits of the declination and the right ascension.

Subfields ‡j and ‡k are each eight characters in length and record the declination in the form *hdddmss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds). The degree, minute and second elements are each right justified and the unused positions contain zeros. (If declination of center is known, it is repeated in both subfields).

Subfield ‡m and ‡n are each six characters in length and record the right ascension in the form *hhmmss* (hour-minute-seconds). The hour, minute and second elements are each right justified and the unused positions contain zeros. (If the right ascension of center is known, it is repeated in both subfields).

034 0#‡ab‡jN0300000‡kN0300000‡m021800‡n021800

‡p - Equinox

Equinox or epoch for a celestial chart. Usually recorded in the form *yyyy* (year) according to the Gregorian calendar, but may include a decimal including the month in the form *yyyy.mm* (year-month).

034 0#‡ab‡p1950

‡r - Distance from earth

Distance of celestial bodies, such as planets or stars, from the Earth in light-years in star atlases.

‡s - G-ring latitude

Latitude of a point of the g-ring.

‡t - G-ring longitude

Longitude of a point of the g-ring.

‡x - Beginning date

Beginning of the date period of the data in which the coordinates describe. The date is structured in the form of *YYYYMMDD*. When no date is recorded, it is assumed that the coordinate information is current.

‡y - Ending date

Ending of the date period of the data in which the coordinates describe. The date is structured in the form of *YYYYMMDD*. When no date is recorded, it is assumed that the coordinate information is current.

034 ##‡dE0110000‡eE0320000‡fN0690000‡gN0550000‡x17210000‡y19171200

034 ##‡dE0110000‡eE0240000‡fN0690000‡gN0550000‡x19171200

‡z - Name of extraterrestrial body

Name of a planet or other extraterrestrial body specified when the coordinate data recorded in subfields ‡d, ‡e, ‡f and ‡g do not describe an entity on Earth.

034 ##‡dW2450000‡eE2570000‡fN0160000‡gN0190000‡zMars‡z2gpn

‡2 - Source

MARC code that identifies the source of the data recorded in field 034. If different sources are recorded, separate fields should be used. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡3 - Materials specified

Information that specifies the part of the entity to which the field applies.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Field 034 does not end with a mark of punctuation.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 1 - Type of scale

2 - *Two or more scales [OBSOLETE] (BK MP SE)*

Value 2 was made obsolete when field 034 was made repeatable in 1982.

‡a - Category of scale

Code c (Other type of scale) was made obsolete in 1997. *[CAN/MARC only]*

‡r - Distance from earth [NEW, 2006]

‡x - Beginning date [NEW, 2006]

‡y - Ending date [NEW, 2006]

‡z - Name of extraterrestrial body [NEW, 2006]

‡2 - Source [NEW, 2006]

‡3 - Materials specified [NEW, 2010]

[blank page]

040 Cataloging Source

(NR)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Original cataloging agency (NR)	|‡e Description conventions (R)
‡b Language of cataloging (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡c Transcribing agency (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡d Modifying agency (R)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

MARC code for or the name of the organization(s) that created the original bibliographic record, assigned MARC content designation and transcribed the record into machine-readable form, or modified (except for the addition of holdings symbols) an existing MARC record. These data and the code in 008/39 (Cataloging source) specify the parties responsible for the bibliographic record. See Appendix I: *Organization Code Sources* for a listing of sources used in MARC 21 records.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Original cataloging agency**

MARC code or the name of the organization that created the original record.

008/39 d
[other sources]

040 ##‡aMt‡cMt
[Cataloging produced and input by the Montana State Library.]

008/39 #
[national bibliographic agency]

040 ##‡aDLC‡cDLC
[Cataloging produced and input by the Library of Congress.]

008/39 d
[other sources]

040 ##‡aCaOTY‡beng‡cCaOTY
[Cataloging produced and input by York University.]

040

- 008/39** #
[national bibliographic agency]
- 040** ##**‡a**DLC/**‡c**ICU**‡c**ICU
[LC non-MARC record upgraded and input via online input/update to LC by the University of Chicago.]
- 008/39** c
[cooperative cataloging program]
- 040** ##**‡a**MH**‡c**MH
[Harvard University Library cataloging input online as part of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging.]

‡b - Language of cataloging

MARC code for the language of cataloging in the record. Code from: *MARC Code List for Languages*.

- 040** ##**‡a**CaQQLA**‡b**fre**‡c**CaOONL
[Record created by Laval University in French and transcribed by the Library and Archives Canada.]
- 040** ##**‡a**CaOONL**‡b**eng**‡c**CaOONL
[Cataloging produced in English and input by the Library and Archives Canada.]

‡c - Transcribing agency

MARC code or the name of the organization that transcribed the record into machine-readable form.

- 040** ##**‡a**Brown Univ Lib**‡c**CtY
[LC cooperative cataloging by Brown University, transcribed by Yale University, with no subsequent modification.]
- 040** ##**‡a**CtY**‡c**CtY
[Yale cataloging transcribed by Yale University with no subsequent modification.]
- 040** ##**‡a**CtY**‡c**MH
[Yale University cataloging transcribed by Harvard University with no subsequent modification.]
- 040** ##**‡a**CaNSHD**‡b**eng**‡c**CaOONL
[Record input by Dalhousie University and transcribed by the Library and Archives Canada.]

‡d - Modifying agency

MARC code or the name of the organization responsible for modifying a MARC record. A modification is defined as any correction to a record, including cataloging, content designation, or keying changes, but excluding the addition of holdings symbols. The MARC code or name of each organization that modifies a record is contained in a separate subfield **‡d**. Subfield **‡d** is not repeated when the same MARC code or name would occur in **adjacent** **‡d** subfields. If the same agency transcribing the record also modifies the cataloging record in the process of transcribing it, the agency's name or MARC code is also recorded in subfield **‡d**.

- 040** ##**‡a**DLC**‡c**DLC**‡d**CtY
[LC cataloging transcribed by LC, subsequently modified by Yale University.]
- 040** ##**‡a**DLC**‡c**CtY**‡d**CtY
[LC cataloging transcribed and modified by Yale University.]
- 040** ##**‡a**DLC**‡c**CtY**‡d**MH
[LC cataloging transcribed by Yale University, subsequently modified by Harvard University.]
- 040** ##**‡a**DNAL**‡c**DLC**‡d**MH
[NAL cataloging transcribed by LC, subsequently modified by Harvard University.]

040 ##†aDNLM†cDLC†dMH
[NLM cataloging transcribed by LC, subsequently modified by Harvard University.]

040 ##†aDCE-C†cDNTIS†dWU-D†dMiAnI
[Cataloged by the U.S. Bureau of the Census, Customer Services Branch; transcribed by the National Technical Information Service; modified by the University of Wisconsin Data Program and Library Service and by the Inter-University Consortium for Political and Social Research.]

†e - Description conventions

MARC code for or the title of the description rules used in creating the record. The subfield may also be used to record the use of AACR 2-based manuals. Subfield †e may contain either the name of the rules or a MARC code designating the rules

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions.*

Leader/18 a
[code indicates AACR 2]

040 ##†aCSt-H†cCSt-H†eappm
[Hoover Institution cataloging, transcribed by Hoover and illustrating the optional use of subfield †e citing cataloging based on Archives, Personal Papers, and Manuscripts]

040 ##†aDNA†cCtY†dCtY†eNARS Staff Bulletin No. 16
[National Archives and Records Service cataloging, transcribed and modified by Yale University, following description conventions in NARS Staff Bulletin No. 16.]

Leader/18 i
[code indicates ISBD]

040 ##†aDLC†cDLC†erda†edcrmb

†6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

†8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Codes - For Canadian organizations, the code is preceded by the letters "Ca."

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

†e - *Description conventions [CHANGED, 2010]*
 In 2010, subfield was made repeatable.

[blank page]

080 Universal Decimal Classification Number (R)

First Indicator

Type of edition
 # No information provided
 0 Full
 1 Abridged

Second Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Universal Decimal Classification number (NR)	‡2 Edition identifier (NR)
‡b Item number (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡x Common auxiliary subdivision (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Number taken from the Universal Decimal Classification scheme.

The Universal Decimal Classification was developed from the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) scheme beginning in 1895. In the intervening years, the two systems have become very different in arrangement and philosophy. The UDC may be distinguished from the DDC by its extensive expansions, especially in classes 5 and 6 (science and technology), and by its use of various symbols in addition to Arabic numbers and a single decimal point. Field 080 is repeated to record multiple UDC numbers assigned to an item.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of edition

Whether the classification number is from the full or the abridged edition of the classification schedules. The actual edition number is contained in subfield ‡2.

- No information provided

0 - Full

Class number is from a full edition.

1 - Abridged

Class number is from an abridged edition.

Second Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

080

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Universal Decimal Classification number

- 080 ##‡a001.81‡2[edition information]
- 080 ##‡a971.1/.2
- 080 ##‡a631.321:631.411.3‡2[edition information]

‡b - Item number

Item number portion of the UDC number. An item number is a Cutter, date, term, etc. added to a classification number to distinguish one item from any other assigned the same classification number.

‡x - Common auxiliary subdivision

Number that qualifies the concept represented by the main UDC number.

Common auxiliary subdivisions, such as those for form (e.g., dictionaries), are attached to a main UDC number preceded or delimited by some kind of facet indicator. Examples of commonly used subdivision delimiters are parentheses, brackets, an apostrophe, or a hyphen.

- 080 ##‡a821.113.1‡x(494)‡2[edition information]
- 080 ##‡a94‡x(474)‡x"19"‡x(075)‡2[edition information]

‡2 - Edition identifier

Edition number, date, or other textual designation of the edition of UDC used to compose the classification number.

- 080 ##‡a82:111.852‡21993
- 080 ##‡a821.113.4-14‡21998

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

- Indicator 1 - Type of edition [NEW, 2009]
 - # - No information provided [NEW, 2009]
 - 0 - Full [NEW, 2009]
 - 1 - Abridged [NEW, 2009]
- Prior to 2009, indicator 1 was undefined.

X00 Personal Names-General Information

- 100** Heading - Personal Name (NR)
600 Subject Added Entry - Personal Name (R)
700 Added Entry - Personal Name (R)
800 Series Added Entry - Personal Name (R)

First Indicator

Type of personal name entry element

- 0 Forename
- 1 Surname
- 3 Family name

Second Indicator

- 100** Undefined
- # Undefined

Second Indicator

- 600** Thesaurus
 - 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 - 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 - 2 Medical Subject Headings
 - 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 - 4 Source not specified
 - 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 - 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 - 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2
- 700** Type of added entry
 - # No information provided
 - 2 Analytical entry
- 800** Undefined
 - # Undefined

Subfield Codes

Name portion

- ‡a Personal name (NR)
- ‡q Fuller form of name (NR)
- ‡b Numeration (NR)
- ‡c Titles and words associated with a name (R)
- ‡d Dates associated with a name (NR)
- ‡e Relator term (R)
- ‡j Attribution qualifier (R)
- ‡u Affiliation (NR)
- ‡4 Relator code (R)

Title portion

- ‡t Title of a work (NR)
- ‡f Date of a work (NR)
- ‡h Medium (NR) [600/700/800]
- |‡i Relationship information (R) [700]
- ‡k Form subheading (R)
- ‡l Language of a work (NR)
- ‡m Medium of performance for music (R) [600/700/800]
- ‡n Number of part/section of a work (R)
- ‡o Arranged statement for music (NR) [600/700/800]
- ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)

- ‡r Key for music (NR) [600/700/800]
- ‡s Version (NR) [600/700/800]
- ‡v Volume/sequential designation (NR) [800]
- ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) [700/800]

Name and title portions

- ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)

Subject subdivision portion

- ‡v Form subdivision (R) [600]
- ‡x General subdivision (R) [600]
- ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) [600]
- ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) [600]

Control subfields

- ‡w Bibliographic record control number (R) [800]
- ‡0 Authority record control number (R)
- ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [600]
- ‡3 Materials specified (NR) [600/700/800]
- |‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR) [700/800]
- ‡6 Linkage (NR)
- ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

X00

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in personal name fields constructed according to generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)). Personal names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., John, the Baptist, Saint, in the Koran) are contained in field 650 (Subject Added Entry-Topical Term).

Guidelines for applying all content designators except the second indicator position are given in this section. A field-specific list of content designators and guidelines for applying the second indicator position are provided under the description for each specific X00 field.

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

Value that identifies the form of the entry element of the field. The values distinguish among forenames, surnames, and family names used as the entry element.

0 - Forename

Heading begins with a forename or is a name consisting of words, phrases, initials, separate letters, or numerals that are formatted in direct order. Names consisting of phrases that do not lend themselves to inversion and treatment as if a surname were involved are treated as forename headings.

- 100 0#**1**aJohn,**1**cthe Baptist, Saint.
- 700 0#**1**aFather Divine.
- 100 0#**1**a"BB",**1**d1905-
- 100 0#**1**a110908.
- 100 0#**1**aA. de O.
- 100 0#**1**aDr. X.
- 100 0#**1**aAuthor of The diary of a physician,**1**d1807-1877.
[Phrase name is formatted in direct order.]
- 700 0#**1**aR. M. B.
[Initials representing name are in direct order]
- 600 00**1**aNorodom Sihanouk,**1**cPrince,**1**d1922-
- 100 0#**1**aClaude,**1**cd'Abbeville, père,**1**dd. 1632.
- 100 0#**1**aHoward.
[Uncertain whether name is a forename or surname]
- 100 0#**1**aFarmer, (and once a grand juror) of Grange County.
[Phrase name in direct order]

1 - Surname

Heading is a surname formatted in inverted order (*surname, forename*) or a name without forename(s) which is known to be a surname. If there is uncertainty that a name without forename(s) is a surname, the first indicator position contains value 0. Phrases, when formulated with inversion and an entry element similar to a surname are treated as a surname.

- 100 1#**1**aFitzgerald, David.
- 100 1#**1**aChiang, Kai-shek,**1**d1887-1975.
- 100 1#**1**aWatson,**1**cRev.
- 600 10**1**aSmith,**1**dfl. 1813.
[Name without forename known to be a surname]
- 100 1#**1**aQ., Mike.
- 100 1#**1**aBlackbeard, Author of,**1**d1777-1852.
[Phrase name in inverted order]
- 100 1#**1**aLe Conte, John Eatton,**1**d1784-1860.

- 100 1#‡aEl-Abiad, Ahmed H.,‡d1926-
 100 1#‡aBen Omar, Saidali Bacar,‡d1931-
 700 1#‡aVérez Peraza, Elena,‡d1919-
 100 1#‡aSaint-Germain, Herve de.
 100 1#‡aP-Orridge, Genesis,‡d1950-
 700 1#‡aSalamín C., Marcel A.
 100 1#‡aEl Saffar, Ruth S.,‡d1941-
 100 1#‡aLover's opera, Author of The,‡d1766-

3 - Family name

Heading is the name of a family, clan, dynasty, house, or other such group. The name may be constructed in direct or inverted order.

- 600 30‡aPremyslid dynasty.
 600 30‡aNorfolk, Dukes of.

Second Indicator

Second indicator position is unique to the function of the personal name field. It is described under the following fields: 100 (Main Entry-Personal Name); 600 (Subject Added Entry-Personal Name); 700 (Added Entry-Personal Name); and 800 (Series Added Entry-Personal Name).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Personal name

Name may be a surname and/or forename; letters, initials, abbreviations, phrases, or numbers used in place of a name; or a family name. A parenthetical qualifying term associated with the name is contained in subfield ‡c, and a fuller form of name added as a qualifier is contained in subfield ‡q.

- 100 1#‡aWilliams, Martha E.
 100 0#‡aMarcelle,‡cTante, pseud.
 600 30‡aMorton family.
 700 1#‡albn al-Mu`tazz, `Abd Allah,‡d861-908.
 700 0#‡aSpagna‡c(Artist),‡dca. 1450-1528.

‡b - Numeration

Roman numeral or a roman numeral and a subsequent part of a forename. It is used only in a forename heading (first indicator, value 0).

- 100 0#‡aJohn Paul‡bII,‡cPope,‡d1920-
 100 0#‡aJohn‡bII Comnenus,‡cEmperor of the East,‡d1088-1143.

‡c - Titles and words associated with a name

Includes qualifying information such as:

- titles designating rank, office, or nobility, e.g., Sir
- terms of address, e.g., Mrs.
- initials of an academic degree or denoting membership in an organization, e.g., F.L.A.
- a roman numeral used with a surname
- other words or phrases associated with the name, e.g., clockmaker, Saint.

Fuller forms of names given in parentheses are given in subfield ‡q.

- 100 1#‡aRussell, John,‡cmap maker.
 100 1#‡aSeuss,‡cDr.
 700 1#‡aQueen, Ellery.
 600 00‡aMoses‡c(Biblical leader)

X00

- 100 1#**‡a**Masséna, André,**‡c**prince d'Essling,**‡d**1758-1817.
- 700 0#**‡a**Vivekananda,**‡c**Swami,**‡d**1863-1902.
- 700 1#**‡a**Evans, Montgomery,**‡c**ll.
- 100 1#**‡a**Appleton, Victor,**‡c**ll.
- 100 1#**‡a**Byron, George Gordon Byron,**‡c**Baron,**‡d**1788-1824.
- 100 1#**‡a**Beethoven, Ludwig van,**‡d**1770-1827**‡c**(Spirit)
- 100 1#**‡a**Munro, Jean,**‡c**Ph. D.
- 600 10**‡a**Drake, Francis,**‡c**Sir,**‡d**1540?-1596.
- 100 1#**‡a**Churchill, Winston,**‡c**Sir,**‡d**1874-1965.
- 100 1#**‡a**Ward, Humphrey,**‡c**Mrs.,**‡d**1851-1920.

If the heading is a surname followed directly by a prefix without intervening forenames or forename initials, the prefix is contained in subfield **‡c** to prevent its being processed as a forename in searching and sorting.

- 100 1#**‡a**Walle-Lissnijder,**‡c**van de.

Multiple adjacent titles or words associated with a name are contained in a single subfield **‡c**. Subfield **‡c** is repeated only when words associated with a name are separated by subelements contained in other subfields.

- 700 0#**‡a**Charles Edward,**‡c**Prince, grandson of James II, King of England,**‡d**1720-1788.
- 100 0#**‡a**Thomas,**‡c**Aquinas, Saint,**‡d**1225?-1274.
- 100 0#**‡a**Black Foot,**‡c**Chief,**‡d**1877**‡c**(Spirit)
*[Subfield **‡c** is repeated due to intervening subelements.]*

‡d - Dates associated with a name

Dates of birth, death, or flourishing or any other date used with a name. A qualifier used with the date (e.g., b., d., ca., fl., ?, cent.) is also contained in subfield **‡d**.

- 100 1#**‡a**Rodgers, Martha Lucile,**‡d**1947-
- 100 1#**‡a**Luckombe, Philip,**‡d**1803.
- 100 1#**‡a**Malalas, John,**‡d**ca. 491-ca. 578.
- 100 1#**‡a**Levi, James,**‡d**fl. 1706-1739.
- 100 1#**‡a**Joannes Aegidius, Zamorensis,**‡d**1240 or 41-ca. 1316.
- 100 0#**‡a**Joannes,**‡c**Actuarius,**‡d**13th/14th cent.
- 100 0#**‡a**Piri Reis,**‡d**1554?
- 800 1#**‡a**Dangerfield, Rodney,**‡d**1921-
- 100 1#**‡a**Smith, John,**‡d**1882 Aug. 5-

‡e - Relator term

Designation of function that describes the relationship between a name and a work, e.g., ed., comp., ill., tr., collector, joint author.

- 700 1#**‡a**Smith, Elsie,**‡d**1900-1945,**‡e**illustrator.
- 700 1#**‡a**Hecht, Ben,**‡d**1893-1964,**‡e**writing,**‡e**direction,**‡e**production.

Relator codes, which also specify the relationship of a person to a work, are contained in subfield **‡4**.

‡f - Date of a work

Date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

- 700 12**‡a**Freud, Sigmund,**‡d**1856-1939.**‡t**Selections.**‡f**1978.
- 700 12**‡a**Hills, John,**‡c**surveyor.**‡t**Sketch of Allens Town, June 1778.**‡f**1976.

Dates added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name are not separately subfield coded. Exception: For music, see subfield ¶n.

¶g - Miscellaneous information

Data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield. This subfield is defined for consistency in the heading fields. *Subfield ¶g is unlikely to be used in an X00 field.*

¶h - Medium [600/700/800]

Media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title field.

¶i - Relationship information [700]

Designation of a relationship between the resource described in the 7XX field and the resource described in the 1XX/245 of the record. This may be an uncontrolled textual phrase or a controlled textual value from a list of relationships between bibliographic resources.

245 00¶aTriumph :¶bfor concert band /¶cby Michael Tippett.

700 1#¶iparaphrase of (work)¶aTippett, Michael,¶d1905-1998.¶tMask of time.

User display

Triumph : for concert band / by Michael Tippett.

Paraphrase of Tippett, Michael, 1905-1998. Mask of time.

245 00¶aAlice in Wonderland, or, What's a nice kid like you doing in a place like this?
/¶cHanna-Barbera Productions.

700 1#¶iparody of (work)¶aCarroll, Lewis,¶d1832-1898.¶tAlice's adventures in Wonderland.

User display

Alice in Wonderland, or, What's a nice kid like you doing in a place like this? / Hanna-Barbera Productions.

Parody of Carroll, Lewis, 1832-1898. Alice's adventures in Wonderland.

¶j - Attribution qualifier

Attribution information for names when the responsibility is unknown, uncertain, fictitious, or pseudonymous. Qualifiers should be used that follow the name of a known artist for the work.

100 0#¶aE.S.,¶cMeister,¶d15th cent.,¶jFollower of

100 1#¶aReynolds, Joshua,¶cSir,¶d1723-1792,¶jPupil of

¶k - Form subheading

Form subheading that occurs in the title portion of an X00 field. Form subheadings used with personal names include *Selections*.

700 12¶aRibeiro, Tomás,¶d1831-1901.¶tPoems.¶kSelections.¶f1984.

700 12¶aMelville, Herman,¶d1819-1891.¶tSelections.¶f1981.

[The word Selections is used as a uniform title and is contained in subfield ¶t.]

700 1#¶aBizet, Georges,¶d1869-1951.¶tCarmen.¶kSelections.¶f1983.

¶l - Language of a work

Name of a language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work in a name/title field.

700 12¶aShakespeare, William,¶d1564-1616.¶tSelections.¶lGerman.¶f1982.

700 1#¶aJacobs, Una.¶tSonnen-Uhr.¶lEnglish.

X00

700 1#**†a**Brezina, Otokar,**†d**1868-1929.**†t**Poems.**†i**Polyglot.

†m - Medium of performance for music [600/700/800]

Term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title field.

700 1#**†a**Beethoven, Ludwig van,**†d**1770-1827.**†t**Sonatas,**†m**piano.**†k**Selections.

700 12**†a**Debussy, Claude,**†d**1862-1918.**†t**Sonatas,**†m**flute, viola, harp.**†f**1986.

700 1#**†a**Ries, Ferdinand,**†d**1784-1838.**†t**Octets,**†m**piano, winds, strings,**†n**op. 128,**†r**A& major.

Multiple adjacent elements in a single medium statement are contained in a single subfield **†m**. Subfield **†m** is repeated only when medium of performance statements are separated by subelements contained in other subfields.

700 1#**†a**Arne, Thomas Augustine,**†d**1710-1778.**†t**Concertos,**†m**keyboard instrument, orchestra.**†n**No. 3.**†p**Con Spirito,**†m**keyboard instrument.

[Subfield †m is repeated due to intervening subelements.]

If the uniform title includes as part of the medium the abbreviation “acc.” or “unacc.,” the abbreviation is recorded in subfield **†m**. The abbreviation “unacc.” is recorded in subfield **†t** when it is not an addition to a statement of medium. When a phrase such as “pianos (2),” “4 hands,” etc., follows a collective uniform title for a specific medium of performance, it is included in subfield **†t**.

†n - Number of part/section of a work

Number designation for a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title field.

In music uniform titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number, or a date used to distinguish one work from another, is contained in subfield **†n**.

Multiple alternative numberings (often separated by a comma) are contained in a single subfield **†n**. Multiple numberings that are hierarchical (often separated by a period) are contained in separate occurrences of subfield **†n**.

700 0#**†a**Homer.**†t**Iliad.**†n**Book 16-19.**†i**English.

700 12**†a**Lucretius Carus, Titus.**†t**De rerum natura.**†n**Liber 4.**†f**1987.

700 1#**†a**Tolkien, J. R. R.**†q**(John Roland Reuel),**†d**1892-1973.**†t**Lord of the rings.**†n**2,**†p**Two towers.

[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

700 12**†a**Mendelssohn-Bartholdy, Felix,**†d**1809-1847.**†t**Quartets,**†m**piano, strings,**†n**no.2, op. 2,**†r**F minor.**†f**1972.

700 12**†a**Schubert, Franz,**†d**1797-1828.**†t**Impromptus,**†m**piano,**†n**D. 935.**†n**No. 2.**†f**1985.

†o - Arranged statement for music [600/700/800]

Abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title field.

700 12**†a**Schubert, Franz,**†d**1797-1828.**†t**Songs.**†k**Selections;**†o**arr.**†f**1985.

700 12**†a**Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,**†d**1756-1791.**†t**Zauberflöte.**†k**Selections;**†o**arr.**†f**1985.

†p - Name of part/section of a work

Name designation of a part/section of a work in a name/title field.

700 12**†a**Hindemith, Paul,**†d**1895-1963.**†t**Nobilissima visione.**†p**Meditation;**†o**arr.**†f**1977.

700 12**†a**Praetorius, Hieronymus,**†d**1560-1629.**†t**Opus musicum.**†p**Cantiones sacrae.**†p**O vos omnes.**†f**1974.

700 12**†a**Debussy, Claude,**†d**1862-1918.**†t**Preludes,**†m**piano,**†n**book 1.**†p**Collines d'Anacapri.**†f**1980.

‡q - Fuller form of name

More complete form of part of the name that is in subfield ‡a.

- 100 0#‡aH. D.‡q(Hilda Doolittle),‡d1886-1961.
- 100 1#‡aGresham, G. A.‡q(Geoffrey Austin)
- 100 1#‡aSmith, Elizabeth‡q(Ann Elizabeth)
- 700 1#‡aE., Sheila‡q(Escovedo),‡d1959-
- 100 1#‡aBeeton,‡cMrs.‡q(Isabella Mary),‡d1836-1865.
- 100 1#‡a`Atthawimonbandit (To),‡cPhra,‡d1883-1973.
[Thai name, given in parentheses as part of entry element.]

‡r - Key for music [600/700/800]

Statement of key in which the music is written used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title field.

- 700 12‡aBeethoven, Ludwig van,‡d1770-1827.‡tSonatas,‡mpiano,‡nno. 13, op. 27, no. 1,‡rE major.‡f1986.

‡s - Version [600/700/800]

Version, edition, etc., information used with a title of a work in a name/title field.

- 700 1#‡aHarrison, Tinsley Randolph,‡d1900-‡tPrinciples of internal medicine.‡s9th ed.
- 800 1#‡aShakespeare, William,‡d1564-1616.‡tWorks.‡f1981.‡sMethuen.

‡t - Title of a work

Uniform title, a title page title of a work, or a series title used in a name/title field.

- 600 10‡aShakespeare, William,‡d1564-1616.‡tHamlet.
- 700 12‡aCendrars, Blaise, 1887-1961.‡tSelections.‡f1987.
- 700 12‡aVoltaire,‡d1694-1778.‡tCorrespondence.‡kSelections.‡f1777.
- 700 12‡aKelly, Michael,‡d1762-1826.‡tLove laughs at locksmiths.‡lEnglish.‡f1979.
- 700 12‡aPoulenc, Francis,‡d1899-1963.‡tPiano music, pianos (2)

‡u - Affiliation

Affiliation or address of the name.

- 100 1#‡aBrown, B. F.‡uChemistry Dept., American University.

‡v - Volume/sequential designation [800]

Volume number or other sequential designation used in conjunction with a series added entry in field 800.

- 800 1#‡aFernando, A. Denis N.‡tResource maps of Sri Lanka ;‡vpt. 2.

‡v - Form subdivision [600]

Form subdivision that designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a personal or family name to form an extended subject heading. Subfield ‡v is used for form terms when they function as indicated above. Subfield ‡x may be used if the terms function as general subdivisions. A form subdivision in subfield ‡v is generally the last subfield in the field. The subfield may be repeated if more than one form subdivision is used.

- 600 30‡aClark family‡vFiction.
- 600 00‡aGautama Buddha‡vEarly works to 1800.

‡w - Bibliographic record control number [800]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

X00

‡x - International Standard Serial Number [700/800]

ISSN for a serial title given in the title portion of a name/title field. The ISSN is an agency-assigned data element. ISSNs are assigned to serial publications by national centers under the auspices of the ISSN Network.

‡x - General subdivision [600]

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision), or subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate only when a general subdivision topical is added to a name or a name/title.

- 600 10‡aBrunhoff, Jean de,‡d1899-1937‡xCharacters‡xBabar.
600 00‡aNapoleon‡bl,‡cEmperor of the French,‡d1769-1821‡xAssassination attempt, 1800
(December 24)

‡y - Chronological subdivision [600]

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title.

- 600 10‡aShakespeare, William,‡d1564-1616‡xCriticism and interpretation‡xHistory‡y18th century.
600 10‡aReagan, Ronald‡xAssassination attempt, 1981.
[Date is part of the general subdivision.]

‡z - Geographic subdivision [600]

Appropriate only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title.

- 600 00‡aFrederick‡bl,‡cHoly Roman Emperor,‡d1194-1250‡xHomes and haunts‡zItaly.
600 10‡aFord, Gerald R.,‡d1913-‡xMuseums‡zMichigan.

‡0 - Authority record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [600]

MARC code that identifies the source list from which the heading in a 600 subject added entry field was assigned. It is used only when the second indicator position contains value 7 (Source specified in subfield ‡2). Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

- 600 17‡aNixon, Richard M.,‡d1913-‡2henn

‡3 - Materials specified [600/700/800]

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

‡4 - Relator code

MARC code that specifies the relationship between a name and a work. More than one relator code may be used if the person has more than one function. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*. The code is given after the name portion in name/title fields.

- 700 1#‡aHerrman, Egbert.‡4org
700 1#‡aGalway, James.‡4prf‡4cnd

Relator terms, which also specify the relationship of a person to a work, are contained in subfield ‡e.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [700/800]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix E: *Ambiguous Headings*.

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. Fields 100, 600, 700, and 800 end with a mark of punctuation or a closing parenthesis. If the final subfields are subfield ‡0, ‡2, ‡3, ‡4, or ‡5, the mark of punctuation or closing parenthesis precedes those subfields.

- 600 10‡aCapote, Truman,‡d1924-‡xCriticism and interpretation.
 700 1#‡aEllington, Duke,‡d1899-1974.‡tSelections;‡oarr.‡f1986.
 700 0#‡aThomas‡c(Anglo-Norman poet).‡tRoman de Tristan.‡lEnglish.
 100 1#‡aGrozelier, Leopold.‡4art

Name portion of a name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark. A name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initial/letter, or open date.

- 600 10‡aSavos'kin, A.N.‡q(Anatolii Nikolaevich)‡vBibliography.
 600 10‡aTatlin, Vladimir Evgrafovich,‡d1885-1953.‡tMonument to the Third International‡xCopying.
 600 00‡aAlexander,‡cthe Great,‡d356-323 B.C.‡xArt.

Spacing - Adjacent personal name initials/letters or an abbreviation for a name and an adjacent name or initial/letter are separated by one space.

- 100 1#‡aHyatt, J. B.
 100 1#‡aFlam, F. A.‡q(Floyd A.)
 700 1#‡aEnschedé, Ch. J.
 100 1#‡aGorbanev, R. V.‡q(Rostislav Vasil'evich)

No spaces are used in initials/letters that do not represent personal names.

- 100 0#‡aCuthbert,‡cFather, O.S.F.C.,‡d1866-1939.
 100 1#‡aSharma, S. K.,‡cM.P.H.

Initial Articles - Initial articles (e.g., La) occurring at the beginning of name heading fields are sometimes omitted (except when the intent is to file on the article). Initial articles occurring at the beginning of the title and/or part portion of a name/title added entry (i.e., 600, 700, 800) may also be omitted. Any diacritics and/or special characters occurring at the beginning of fields are retained. Note that such characters are usually ignored for purposes of sorting or filing.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 1 - Type of personal name entry element

- 1 - Single surname [REDEFINED, 1996]
- 2 - Multiple surname [OBSOLETE, 1996]

Indicator 2 - Main entry/subject relationship [100] [OBSOLETE, 1990] (BK MU SE)

Indicator 2 - Type of added entry [700]

- 0 - Alternative entry [OBSOLETE, 1993] (BK AM CF MP MU SE)
- 1 - Secondary entry [OBSOLETE, 1993] (BK AM CF MP MU SE)
- 1 - Printed on card [OBSOLETE, 1993] (VM)
- 3 - Not printed on card [OBSOLETE, 1993] (VM)

X00

‡i - Relationship information [NEW, 2009]

‡j - Attribution qualifier [NEW, 2000]

‡n - Number of part/section of a work [NEW, 1979]

‡p - Part [REDEFINED, 1979]

In 1979, subfield ‡n was defined for numbers of parts/sections and subfield ‡p (Part) was redefined to include only names of parts/sections. Prior to that change, both the number and the name of a part were contained in one subfield ‡p.

‡w - Bibliographic record control number [NEW, 2007]

‡x - International Standard Serial Number [800] [NEW, 2008]

‡0 - Authority record control number [NEW, 2007]

‡3 - Materials specified [800] [NEW, 2008]

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [800] [NEW, 2010]

X10 Corporate Names-General Information

- 110 Main Entry - Corporate Name (NR)**
610 Subject Added Entry - Corporate Name (R)
710 Added Entry - Corporate Name (R)
810 Series Added Entry - Corporate Name (R)

First Indicator

Type of corporate name entry element

- 0 Inverted name
- 1 Jurisdiction name
- 2 Name in direct order

Second indicator

- 110** Undefined
- # Undefined

Second Indicator

- 610** Thesaurus
 - 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 - 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 - 2 Medical Subject Headings
 - 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 - 4 Source not specified
 - 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 - 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 - 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2
- 710** Type of added entry
 - # No information provided
 - 2 Analytical entry
- 810** Undefined
 - # Undefined

Subfield Codes

Name portion

- ‡a Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
- ‡b Subordinate unit (R)
- ‡c Location of meeting (NR)
- ‡e Relator term (R)
- ‡u Affiliation (NR)
- ‡4 Relator code (R)

Title portion

- ‡t Title of a work (NR)
- ‡f Date of a work (NR)
- ‡h Medium (NR) [610/710/810]
- ‡i Relationship information (R) [710]
- ‡k Form subheading (R)
- ‡l Language of a work (NR)
- ‡m Medium of performance for music (R) [610/710/810]
- ‡o Arranged statement for music (NR) [610/710/810]
- ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
- ‡r Key for music (NR) [610/710/810]
- ‡s Version (NR) [610/710/810]
- ‡v Volume/sequential designation (NR) [810]
- ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) [710/810]

Name and title portions

- ‡d Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)
- ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
- ‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

Subject subdivision portion

- ‡v Form subdivision (R) [610]
- ‡x General subdivision (R) [610]
- ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) [610]
- ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) [610]

Control subfields

- ‡w Bibliographic record control number (R) [810]
- ‡0 Authority record control number (R)
- ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [610]
- ‡3 Materials specified (NR) [610/710/810]
- ‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR) [710/810]
- ‡6 Linkage (NR)
- ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

X10

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Defined content designators identify the subelements occurring in corporate name fields constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR 2)*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)*). A corporate name, a form subheading, a title of a work, and/or a city section name entered under the name of a jurisdiction are X10 corporate names. A name of a jurisdiction that represents an ecclesiastical entity is an X10 corporate name. For subject purposes, other names of jurisdictions used alone or followed by subject subdivisions are geographic names and are contained in field 651 (Subject Added Entry-Geographic Name). For non-subject purposes, other names used alone are contained in 110 and 710 fields. A named meeting that is entered under a corporate name is contained in the X10 fields. A meeting entered directly under its own name is contained in the X11 fields. Corporate names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Catholic Church in art) are contained in field 650 (Subject Added Entry-Topical Term).

Guidelines for applying all content designators except the second indicator position are given in this section. A field-specific list of content designators and guidelines for applying the second indicator position are provided under the description for each specific X10 field.

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of corporate name entry element

Value that identifies the form of the entry element of the field. The values distinguish among an inverted name, a jurisdiction name, and a corporate name in direct order used as the entry element.

0 - Inverted name

Corporate name begins with a personal name in inverted order (*surname, forename*).

110 0#~~1~~aNewman (Jean and Dorothy) Industrial Relations Library.

Corporate names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

110 2#~~1~~aJ.C. Penney Co.

1 - Jurisdiction name

Name of a jurisdiction that is also an ecclesiastical entity or is a jurisdiction name under which a corporate name, a city section, or a title of a work is entered.

110 1#~~1~~aCyprus (Archdiocese)

110 1#~~1~~aPennsylvania.~~1~~bState Board of Examiners of Nursing Home Administrators.

110 1#~~1~~aJalisco (Mexico).~~1~~tLey que aprueba el plan regional urbano de Guadalajara, 1979-1983.

110 1#~~1~~aFairfax County (Va.).~~1~~bDivision of Mapping.

110 1#~~1~~aUnited States.~~1~~bPresident (1981-1989 : Reagan)

Corporate names containing a name of a jurisdiction as an integral part of the name or qualified by a jurisdiction name are identified by value 2.

110 2#~~1~~aUniversity of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign.~~1~~bExperimental Music Studios.

110 2#~~1~~aArizona Family Planning Council.

2 - Name in direct order

Heading may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

110 2#~~1~~aHarvard University.

110 2#~~1~~aNational Gardening Association (U.S.)

110 2#~~1~~aPRONAPADE (Firm)

Second Indicator

Second indicator position is unique to the function of the corporate name field. It is described under the following fields: 110 (Main Entry Corporate Name); 610 (Subject Added Entry Corporate Name); 710 (Added Entry Corporate Name); and 810 (Series Added Entry Corporate Name).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element**

Name of a corporate body or the first entity when subordinate units are present; a jurisdiction name under which a corporate body, city section, or a title of a work is entered; or a jurisdiction name that is also an ecclesiastical entity. A parenthetical qualifying term, jurisdiction name, or date (other than the date of a meeting) is not separately subfield coded.

- 110 2#‡aUniversity of Denver.
- 110 1#‡aCanada.‡bDept of Agriculture.
- 110 2#‡aBell & Howell Co.
- 110 1#‡aBirmingham (Ala.)
- 110 2#‡aFriedrich Witte (Firm)
- 110 2#‡aScientific Society of San Antonio (1892-1894)
- 610 20‡aTitanic (Steamship)
- 110 2#‡aSt. James Church (Bronx, New York, N.Y.)
- 610 20‡aHusum-Schwesing (Germany : Concentration camp)

‡b - Subordinate unit

Name of a subordinate corporate unit, a name of a city section, or a name of a meeting entered under a corporate or a jurisdiction name.

- 110 1#‡aUnited States.‡bCongress.‡bJoint Committee on the Library.
- 110 2#‡aAmerican Veterinary Medical Association.‡bMeeting.
- 110 2#‡aFreemasons.‡bConcordia Lodge, No. 13 (Baltimore, Md.)
- 110 1#‡aParis.‡bMontmartre.

‡c - Location of meeting

Place name or a name of an institution where a meeting was held. Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield ‡c.

- 110 2#‡aCatholic Church.‡bConcilium Plenarium Americae Latinae‡d(1899 :‡cRome, Italy)
- 110 2#‡aDemocratic Party (Tex.).‡bState Convention‡d(1857 :‡cWaco, Tex.)
- 110 1#‡aBotswana.‡bDelegation to the Commonwealth Parliamentary Conference, 28th, 1982, Nassau, Bahamas.
- 110 2#‡aAmerican Library Association.‡bConference‡c(Washington, D.C. and London, England)

Place name added parenthetically to a corporate name as a qualifier is not separately subfield coded.

- 610 20‡aEmpire State Building (New York, N.Y.)

‡d - Date of meeting or treaty signing

- 110 2#‡aCatholic Church.‡bPlenary Council of Baltimore‡n(2nd :‡d1866)
- 110 2#‡aInternational Labour Organisation.‡bEuropean Regional Conference‡n(2nd :‡d1968 :‡cGeneva, Switzerland)

In a name/title X10 field, subfield ‡d also contains the date a treaty was signed.

- 710 1#‡aAlgeria.‡tTreaties, etc.‡gEngland and Wales,‡d1682 Apr. 20.

X10

‡e - Relator term

Designation of function that describes the relationship between a name and a work.

110 2#‡aEastman Kodak Company,‡edefendant-appellant.

Relator codes, which specify the relationship of of corporate body to a work, are contained in subfield ‡4.

‡f - Date of a work

A date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title field.

710 22‡aCatholic Church.‡tMass, 33rd Sunday of ordinary time (Chant).‡f1979.

710 22‡aRand McNally and Company.‡tCentral America.‡f1979.

Date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded. Exception: for music see subfield ‡n.

610 10‡aFrance.‡tConstitution (1946)

‡g - Miscellaneous information

Data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield. In a heading for a meeting entered under a corporate body, subfield ‡g also contains a subelement that is not more appropriately contained in subfields ‡c, ‡d, or ‡n.

110 1#‡aMinnesota.‡bConstitutional Convention‡d(1857 :‡gRepublican)

In a name/title X10 field, subfield ‡g contains the name of the *other party* to treaties, intergovernmental agreements, etc.

610 10‡aGreat Britain.‡tTreaties, etc.‡gIreland,‡d1985 Nov. 15.

‡h - Medium [610/710/810]

Media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title field.

710 2#‡aPearls Before Swine (Musical group).‡tOne nation underground.‡hSound recording.

‡i - Relationship information [710]

Designation of a relationship between the resource described in the 7XX field and the resource described in the 1XX/245 of the record. This may be an uncontrolled textual phrase or a controlled textual value from a list of relationships between bibliographic resources.

‡k - Form subheading

Form subheading that occurs in the title portion of an X10 field. Form subheadings used with corporate names include: *Manuscript, Protocols, etc.; Selections; Charters and regulations.*

610 20‡aBritish Library.‡kManuscript.‡nArundel 384.

610 10‡aUruguay.‡tTreaties, etc.‡gArgentina,‡d1974 Aug. 20.‡kProtocols, etc.‡d1982 Dec. 20.

710 22‡aCatholic Church.‡bPope (1958-1963 : John XXIII).‡tMater et magistra.‡fFrench.‡kSelections.‡f1963.

610 20‡aDaughters of the American Revolution.‡bMary Tyler Chapter (Tyler, Tex.).‡kCharters and regulations.

‡l - Language of a work

Name of a language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work in a name/title field.

710 2#1aBanco Central de Venezuela.**1t**Procedimiento para la obtención de divisas del mercado controlado para el pago de importaciones a través de cartas de crédito.**1l**English & Spanish.

1m - Medium of performance for music [610/710/810]

Term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title field. Subfield *1m* is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.

1n - Number of part/section/meeting

Number of a meeting that is entered under a corporate name.

In music uniform titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number, or a date used to distinguish one work from another, is contained in subfield *1n*.

Multiple alternative numberings (often separated by a comma) are contained in a single subfield *1n*. Multiple numberings that are hierarchical (often separated by a period) are contained in separate occurrences of subfield *1n*.

Contains a number designation following the form subdivision *Manuscript*.

110 1#1aUnited States.**1b**Congress**1n**(97th, 2nd session :**1d**1982).**1b**House.

710 2#1aCorpus Christi College (University of Cambridge).**1b**Library.**1k**Manuscript.**1n**57.

710 121aPhilippines.**1t**Labor Code of the Philippines.**1n**Book 5,**1p**Labor Relations.**1f**1981.

710 2#1aMontevergine (Abbey).**1b**Biblioteca.**1k**Manuscript.**1n**Scaffale XXIII, 171.

110 1#1aUnited States.**1b**Congress**1n**(87th, 2nd session :**1d**1962)

1o - Arranged statement for music [610/710/810]

Abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title field. Subfield *1o* is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.

1p - Name of part/section of a work

Name designation of a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title field.

710 1#1aUnited States.**1t**Constitution.**1p**13th Amendment.

610 201aUnited States Strategic Bombing Survey.**1t**Reports.**1p**Pacific war**1v**Indexes.

710 1#1aEcuador.**1t**Plan Nacional de Desarrollo, 1980-1984.**1n**Parte 1,**1p**Grandes objetivos nacionales.**1l**English.

Also contains a name designation following the form subdivision *Manuscript*.

110 2#1aNew York Public Library.**1k**Manuscript**1p**Aulendorf Codex.

1r - Key for music [610/710/810]

Statement of key in which the music is written used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title field. Subfield *1r* is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.

1s - Version [610/710/810]

Version, edition, etc., information used with a title of a work in a name/title field.

1t - Title of a work

Uniform title, a title page title of a work, or a series title used in a name/title field.

710 121aVenezuela.**1t**Control de cambio no. 3.**1l**English & Spanish.**1f**1984.

610 101aUnited States.**1t**Treaties, etc.**1g**Great Britain,**1d**1794 Nov. 19.

710 221aGeneral Drafting Company, inc.**1t**Colonization of America.**1f**1976.

Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields 1f, 1g, 1h, 1k, 1l, 1n, 1p, and 1v.

X10

‡u - Affiliation

Affiliation or address of the name.

110 1#‡aUnited States.‡bNational Technical Information Service.‡u5205 Port Royal Road,
Springfield, VA 22161.

‡v - Volume/sequential designation [810]

Volume number or other sequential designation used in conjunction with a series added entry in field 810.

810 2#‡aJohn Bartholomew and Son.‡tBartholomew world travel series ;‡v10.

810 2#‡aUniversitätsbibliothek Freiburg im Breisgau.‡tKataloge der Universitätsbibliothek
Freiburg im Breisgau ;‡vBd. 2.

‡v - Form subdivision [610]

Form subdivision that designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a corporate name or name/title to form an extended subject heading. Subfield ‡v is used for form terms when they function as indicated above. Subfield ‡x may be used if the terms function as general subdivisions. A form subdivision in subfield ‡v is generally the last subfield in the field. The subfield may be repeated if more than one form subdivision is used.

610 10‡aFrance.‡bBibliothèque nationale‡vCatalogs.

610 20‡aUnited Nations‡xEconomic assistance‡vPeriodicals.

‡w - Bibliographic record control number [810]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡x - International Standard Serial Number [710/810]

ISSN for a serial contained in the title portion of a name/title field. The ISSN is an agency-assigned data element. ISSNs are assigned to serial publications by national centers under the auspices of the ISSN Network.

‡x - General subdivision [610]

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision), or subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate only when a general topical subdivision is added to a name or a name/title.

610 20‡aLutheran Church‡xDoctrines‡yEarly works to 1800.

610 20‡aAmerican Red Cross‡xHistory.

‡y - Chronological subdivision [610]

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title.

610 10‡aUnited States.‡bArmy.‡bCavalry‡xHistory‡yCivil War, 1861-1865‡vMaps.

610 10‡aGreat Britain.‡bRoyal Navy‡xHistory‡y20th century‡vMaps.

‡z - Geographic subdivision [610]

Appropriate only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title.

610 20‡aCatholic Church‡zGermany‡xHistory‡y1933-1945.

610 20‡aUnited Methodist Church (U.S.)‡zPennsylvania‡xHistory‡vMaps.

‡0 - Authority record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [610]

MARC code that identifies the source list from which the heading in a 610 subject added entry field was assigned. It is used only when the second indicator position contains value 7 (Source specified in subfield ‡2). Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡3 - Materials specified [610/710/810]

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

‡4 - Relator code

MARC code that specifies the relationship between a name and a work. More than one relator code may be used if the corporate name has more than one function. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*. The code is given after the name portion in name/title fields.

110 1#‡aUnited States.**‡b**Energy Research and Development Administration.**‡4**fn

110 2#‡aJ.H. Bufford & Co.**‡4**pop

Relator terms, which also specify the relationship of a corporate body to a work, are contained in subfield ‡e.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [710/810]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix E: *Ambiguous Headings*.

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. Fields 110, 610, 710, and 810 end with a mark of punctuation or a closing parenthesis. If the final subfields are subfield ‡0, ‡2, ‡3, ‡4, or ‡5, the mark of punctuation or closing parenthesis precedes those subfields.

110 2#‡aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency.

110 2#‡aMartin Marietta Corporation.**‡b**Space Systems Division.

110 2#‡aWestern Map and Publishing Co.

110 1#‡aUnited States.**‡b**Congress**‡n**(87th :**‡d**1961-1962)

Name portion of a name/subordinate body or name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

710 1#‡aBoston (Mass.).**‡t**Laws, etc.

710 2#‡aCasa de la Cultura Ecuatoriana "Benjamín Carrión."**‡b**Núcleo de Imbabura.

710 22‡aCatholic Church.**‡b**Pope (1978- : John Paul II).**‡t**Aperite portas Redemptori.**‡f**1983.

Name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initial/letter, or open date.

610 20‡aUnited Methodist Church (U.S.)**‡z**Pennsylvania**‡x**History.

X10

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials/letters.

- 110 2#‡aBrotherhood of Railway Trainmen (U.S.).‡bMinnesota State Legislative Board.
- 110 2#‡aMetallurgical Society of AIME.‡bNew Jersey Chapter.
- 110 2#‡aConföderation Iranischer Studenten (N.U.)
- 610 20‡aD.B. Lister & Associates.

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

- 110 2#‡aMonongalia Historical Society, Morgantown, W. Va.

Initial Articles - Initial articles (e.g., Der) occurring at the beginning of name heading fields are usually omitted in most languages (except when the intent is to file on the article).

- 110 2#‡aLos Angeles County Bar Association.

Initial articles occurring at the beginning of the title and/or part portion of a name/title added entry (i.e., 610, 710, 810) are also omitted.

Any diacritics and/or special characters occurring at the beginning of fields are retained. Note that such characters are usually ignored for purposes of sorting or filing.

- 710 2#‡aÖsterreichischer Rundfunk.‡bChor.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Main entry/subject relationship [110] [OBSOLETE, 1990] (BK MU SE)

Values were: 0 (Main entry/subject relationship irrelevant), 1 (Main entry is subject).

Indicator 2 - Type of added entry [710]

0 - Alternative entry [OBSOLETE, 1993] (BK AM CF MP MU SE)

1 - Secondary entry [OBSOLETE, 1993] (BK AM CF MP MU SE)

1 - Printed on card [OBSOLETE, 1993] (VM)

3 - Not printed on card [OBSOLETE, 1993] (VM)

‡c - Location of meeting [NEW, 1980]

‡d - Date of meeting or treaty signing [NEW, 1980]

Location and date of a meeting and the date of signing of a treaty entered under a corporate body/jurisdiction were not separately subfield coded but included in subfield ‡p prior to the definition of subfields ‡c and ‡d.

‡i - Relationship information [NEW, 2009]

‡k - Form subheading

Prior to 1981, the title "Treaties, etc." was considered a form subheading and coded subfield ‡k.

‡n - Number of part/section/meeting [NEW, 1979]

‡p - Part [REDEFINED, 1979]

In 1979, subfield ‡n was defined for numbers of parts/sections and subfield ‡p (Part) was redefined to include only names of parts/sections.

Prior to that change, both the number and the name of a part were contained in one subfield ‡p.

‡w - Bibliographic record control number [NEW, 2007]

‡x - International Standard Serial Number [810] [NEW, 2008]

‡0 - Authority record control number [NEW, 2007]

‡3 - Materials specified [810] [NEW, 2008]

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [810] [NEW, 2010]

X11 Meeting Names-General Information

- 111 Main Entry - Meeting Name (NR)**
611 Subject Added Entry - Meeting Name (R)
711 Added Entry - Meeting Name (R)
811 Series Added Entry - Meeting Name (R)

First Indicator

Type of Meeting name entry element

- 0 Inverted name
 1 Jurisdiction name
 2 Name in direct order

Second indicator

- 111** Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

- 611** Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2
711 Type of added entry
No information provided
 2 Analytical entry
811 Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

Name portion

- ‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name (NR)
 ‡c Location of meeting (NR)
 ‡d Date of meeting (NR)
 ‡e Subordinate unit (R)
 ‡j Relator term (R)
 ‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name (NR)
 ‡u Affiliation (NR)
 ‡4 Relator code (R)

Title portion

- ‡t Title of a work (NR)
 ‡f Date of a work (NR)
 ‡h Medium (NR) [611/711/811]
 ‡i Relationship information (R) [711]
 ‡k Form subheading (R)
 ‡l Language of a work (NR)
 ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
 ‡s Version (NR) [611/711/811]
 ‡v Volume/sequential designation (NR) [811]
 ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) [711/811]

Name and title portions

- ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
 ‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

Subject subdivision portion

- ‡v Form subdivision (R) [611]
 ‡x General subdivision (R) [611]
 ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) [611]
 ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) [611]

Control subfields

- ‡w Bibliographic record control number (R) [811]
 ‡0 Authority record control number (R)
 ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [611]
 ‡3 Materials specified (NR) [611/711/811]
 ‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR) [711/811]
 ‡6 Linkage (NR)
 ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

X11

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Subelements occurring in meeting name fields constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloging Rules (AACR 2)*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)*). A named meeting that is entered under a corporate name is contained in the X10 fields. Corporate names that include such words as *conference* or *congress* are also contained in the X10 fields. For example, the Congress of Neurological Surgeons, a professional group, is a corporate name.

Guidelines for applying all content designators except the second indicator position are given in this section. A field-specific list of content designators and guidelines for applying the second indicator position are provided under the description for each specific X11 field.

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of meeting name entry element

Value that identifies the form of the entry element of the field. The values distinguish among an inverted personal name, a jurisdiction name, and a meeting name in direct order used as the entry element.

0 - Inverted name

Meeting name begins with a personal name in inverted order (*surname, forename*).

711 0#Smith (David Nichol) Memorial Seminar.

Meeting names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

111 2#Symposium Internacional "Manuel Pedroso" In Memoriam (1976 : Guanajuato, Mexico)

1 - Jurisdiction name

Jurisdiction name under which a meeting name is entered.

111 1#Bayreuth, Ger. (City). Festspiele.

111 1#Chicago. Cartography Conference.

Meeting names containing a jurisdiction name as an integral part of the name or qualified by a place name are identified by value 2.

111 2#Nation-wide Conference of the Women of Afghanistan (1980 : Kabul, Afghanistan)

111 2#Brussels Hemoglobin Symposium (1st : 1983)

2 - Name in direct order

Meeting name is in direct order although it may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

111 2#ASTED International Symposium (1982 : Davos, Switzerland)

111 2#Symposium (International) on Combustion.

111 2#Governor's Conference on Aging (N.Y.) (1982 : Albany, N.Y.)

711 2#Theatertreffen Berlin (Festival)

111 2#Esto '84 (1984 : Toronto, Ont). Raamatunäituse Komitee.

811 2#International Congress of Romance Linguistics and Philology (17th : 1983 : Aix-en-Provence, France). Actes du XVIIème Congrès international de linguistique et philologie romanes ; vol. no. 5.

111 2#Congresso Brasileiro de Publicações (1st : 1981 : São Paulo, Brazil)

Second Indicator

Second indicator position is unique to the function of the meeting name field. It is described under 111 (Main Entry-Meeting Name); 611 (Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name); 711 (Added Entry-Meeting Name); and 811 (Series Added Entry-Meeting Name).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element**

Name of a meeting or a jurisdiction name under which a meeting is entered. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded. Meeting names are not entered under jurisdiction names in AACR 2 formulated X11 fields.

- 111 2#‡aInternational Conference on Numerical Methods in Geomechanics.
- 111 2#‡aMilitary History Symposium (U.S.)‡n(9th :‡d1980 :‡cUnited States Air Force Academy)
- 111 1#‡aSeville.‡qExposición Ibero-Americana,‡d1929-1930.

‡c - Location of meeting

Place name or a name of an institution where a meeting was held. Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield ‡c.

- 111 2#‡aWorkshop on Primary Health Care‡d(1983 :‡cKavieng, Papua New Guinea)
- 711 2#‡aConference on Philosophy and Its History‡d(1983 :‡cUniversity of Lancaster)
- 111 2#‡aWinter Olympic Games‡n(14th :‡d1984 :‡cSarajevo, Bosnia and Hercegovina)
- 111 2#‡aWorld Peace Conference‡n(1st :‡d1949 :‡cParis, France and Prague, Czechoslovakia)

Place name added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

- 111 2#‡aGovernor's Conference on Aging (N.Y.)

‡d - Date of meeting

- 111 2#‡aColloquio franco-italiano di Aosta‡d(1982)
- 111 2#‡aSymposium on Finite Element Methods in Geotechnical Engineering‡d(1972 :‡cVicksburg, Miss.)
- 111 2#‡aInternational Institute on the Prevention and Treatment of Alcoholism‡n(26th :‡d1980 :‡cCardiff, South Glamorgan)

‡e - Subordinate unit

Name of a subordinate unit entered under a meeting name.

- 111 2#‡aInternational Congress of Gerontology.‡eSatellite Conference‡d(1978 :‡cSydney, N.S.W.)
- 711 2#‡aStour Music Festival.‡eOrchestra.
- 111 2#‡aWhite House Conference on Library and Information Services‡d(1979 :‡cWashington, D.C.).‡eOhio Conference Delegation.
- 711 2#‡aOlympic Games‡n(21st :‡d1976 :‡cMontréal, Québec).‡eOrganizing Committee.‡eArts and Culture Program.‡eVisual Arts Section.

‡f - Date of a work

Date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title field.

- 711 22‡aInternational Symposium on Standardization of Hematological Methods‡d(1968 :‡cMilan, Italy).‡tProceedings.‡f1970.

Date added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

X11

111 2#‡aInternational Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)

‡g - Miscellaneous information

Data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield.

111 2#‡aNational Conference on Physical Measurement of the Disabled,‡n2nd,‡cMayo Clinic,‡d1981,‡gProjected, not held.

‡h - Medium [611/711/811]

Media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title field.

‡i - Relationship information [711]

Designation of a relationship between the resource described in the 7XX field and the resource described in the 1XX/245 of the record. This may be an uncontrolled textual phrase or a controlled textual value from a list of relationships between bibliographic resources.

‡j - Relator term

Describes the relationship between a name and a work.

611 20‡aStour Music Festival.‡bOrchestra,‡jdepicted.

‡k - Form subheading

Form subheading used with a title of a work in a title field. The term *Selections* is a form subheading used with meeting names.

711 22‡aCouncil of Trent‡d(1545-1563).‡tCanones et decreta.‡lEnglish.‡kSelections.‡f1912.

‡l - Language of a work

Name of a language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work in a name/title field.

711 22‡aConferencia General del Episcopado Latinoamericano‡n(3rd :‡d1979 :‡cPueblo, Mexico).‡tEvangelizaci3n en el presente y en el futuro de Am3rica Latina.‡lEnglish.‡f1979.

‡n - Number of part/section/meeting

Number of a meeting.

In music uniform titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number, or a date used to distinguish one work from another, is contained in subfield ‡n.

Multiple alternative numberings (often separated by a comma) are contained in a single subfield ‡n. Multiple numberings that are hierarchical (often separated by a period) are contained in separate occurrences of subfield ‡n.

711 2#‡aAsian Games‡n(9th :‡d1982 :‡cDelhi, India)

‡p - Name of part/section of a work

Name designation of a part/section of a work in a name/title field.

711 2#‡aInternational Conference on Gnosticism‡d(1978 :‡cNew Haven, Conn.).‡tRediscovery of Gnosticism.‡pModern writers.

711 2#‡aConference on the Limitation of Armament‡d(1921-1922 :‡cWashington, D.C.).‡tWashington Kaigi keika.‡n1.‡pGunbi seigen ni kansuru mondai.

‡q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element

Meeting name that is entered under a jurisdiction name contained in subfield ‡a.

111 1#‡aParis.‡qSalon (Société des artistes français)

111 1#‡aParis.‡qPeace Conference,‡d1919.

‡s - Version [611/711/811]

Version, edition, etc., information added to a title of a work in a name/title field. This subfield code is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield ‡s is unlikely to be used in an X11 field.*

‡t - Title of a work

Uniform title, a title page title of a work, or a series title used in a name/title field.

611 20‡aVatican Council‡n(2nd :‡d1962-1965).‡tDecretum de presbyterorum ministerio et vita.

Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields ‡f, ‡k, ‡l, ‡p, and ‡v.

‡u - Affiliation

Affiliation or address of the name in subfield ‡a.

‡v - Volume/sequential designation [811]

Volume number or other sequential designation used in conjunction with an 811 series added entry.

811 2#‡aConference of Latin Americanist Geographers.‡tPublication series ;‡vv. 1.

‡v - Form subdivision [611]

Form subdivision that designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a meeting name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading. Subfield ‡v is used for form terms when they function as indicated above. Subfield ‡x may be used if the terms function as general subdivisions. A form subdivision in subfield ‡v is generally the last subfield in the field. The subfield may be repeated if more than one form subdivision is used.

611 20‡aPurdue Pest Control Conference‡vPeriodicals.

611 20‡aInternational Congress of Writers for the Defence of Culture‡n(1st :‡d1935 :‡cParis, France)‡vFiction.

‡w - Bibliographic record control number [811]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡x - International Standard Serial Number [711/811]

ISSN for a serial contained in the title portion of a name/title field. The ISSN is an agency-assigned data element. ISSNs are assigned to serial publications by national centers under the auspices of the ISSN Network.

‡x - General subdivision [611]

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision), or subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate only when a general topical subdivision is added to a meeting name or a name/title heading.

611 20‡aOlympics‡xHistory‡vJuvenile literature.

611 20‡aTour de France (Bicycle race)‡xHistory.

‡y - Chronological subdivision [611]

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a meeting name or name/title.

611 20‡aDerby (Horse race)‡xHistory‡y20th century.

‡z - Geographic subdivision [611]

Appropriate only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a meeting name or name/title.

X11

‡0 - Authority record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [611]

MARC code that identifies the source list from which the heading in a 611 subject added entry field was assigned. It is used only when the second indicator position contains value 7 (Source specified in subfield ‡2). Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡3 - Materials specified [611/711/811]

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

‡4 - Relator code

MARC code that specifies the relationship between a name and a work. More than one relator code may be used if the meeting has more than one function. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*. The code is given after the name portion in name/title fields.

111 2#‡aSymposium on the Underground Disposal of Radioactive Wastes‡d(1979:‡cOtaniemi, Finland)‡4fnd

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [711/811]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix E: *Ambiguous Headings*.

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. Fields 111, 611, 711, and 811 end with a mark of punctuation or a closing parenthesis. If the final subfields are subfield ‡0, ‡2, ‡3, ‡4, or ‡5, the mark of punctuation or closing parenthesis precedes those subfields.

711 2#‡aConvegno Santa Caterina in Finalborgo‡n(1980 :‡cCivico museo del Finale)
111 2#‡aSymposium on the Underground Disposal of Radioactive Wastes‡d(1979 :‡cOtaniemi, Finland)‡4fnd

Name portion of a name/subordinate body or name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

711 2#‡aInternational Congress of the History of Art‡n(24th :‡d1979 :‡cBologna, Italy).‡tAtti del XXIV Congresso internazionale di storia dell'arte.

Name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initial/letter, or open date.

611 20‡aVatican Council‡n(2nd :‡d1962-1965).‡tActa synodalia Sacrosancti Concilii Oecumenici Vaticani II‡vIndexes.
611 20‡aCouncil of Constantinople‡n(1st :‡d381)‡xHistory.

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials/letters.

- 111 2#**†a**J.J. Sylvester Symposium on Algebraic Geometry**†d**(1976 :**†c**Johns Hopkins University)
 111 2#**†a**Woman's Rights Convention**†n**(1st :**†d**1848 :**†c**Seneca Falls, N.Y.)
 111 2#**†a**Olympic Games**†n**(22nd :**†d**1980 :**†c**Moscow, R.S.F.S.R.)
 711 2#**†a**International SEG Meeting.

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

- 111 2#**†a**Ph. D. in Music Symposium**†d**(1985 :**†c**Boulder, Colo.)

Initial Articles - Initial articles (e.g., Het) occurring at the beginning of name heading fields are usually omitted in most languages (except when the intent is to file on the article).

- 111 2#**†a**Las Vegas Conference of Casino Owners**†d**(1985 :**†c**Las Vegas, Nev.)

Initial articles occurring at the beginning of the title and/or part portion of a name/title added entry (i.e. 611, 711, 811) are also omitted. Any diacritics and/or special characters occurring at the beginning of a field are retained. Note that such characters are usually ignored for purposes of sorting and filing.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Main entry/subject relationship [111] [OBSOLETE, 1990] (BK MU SE)

Values were: 0 (Main entry/subject relationship irrelevant), 1 (Main entry is subject).

Indicator 2 - Type of added entry [711]

0 - Alternative entry [OBSOLETE, 1993] (BK AM CF MP MU SE)

1 - Secondary entry [OBSOLETE, 1993] (BK AM CF MP MU SE)

1 - Printed on card [OBSOLETE, 1993] (VM)

3 - Not printed on card [OBSOLETE, 1993] (VM)

†a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element [REDEFINED, 1972]

†b - Number [OBSOLETE, 1980]

Definition of subfield **†n** was expanded to include meeting numbers and subfield **†b** was made obsolete.

†i - Relationship information [NEW, 2009]

†j - Relator term [NEW, 2006]

†n - Number of part/section/meeting [NEW, 1979]

†p - Part [REDEFINED, 1979]

In 1979, subfield **†n** was defined for numbers of parts/sections and subfield **†p** (Part) was redefined to include only names of parts/sections. Prior to that change, both the number and the name of a part were contained in one subfield **†p**.

†q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element [NEW, 1972]

Name of a meeting entered under a jurisdiction name was not separately subfield coded prior to the definition of subfield **†q** in 1972. At the same time, subfield **†a** was expanded to include a jurisdiction name as entry element.

†w - Bibliographic record control number [NEW, 2007]

†x - International Standard Serial Number [811] [NEW, 2008]

†0 - Authority record control number [NEW, 2007]

†3 - Materials specified [811] [NEW, 2008]

†5 - Institution to which field applies [811] [NEW, 2010]

[blank page]

X30 Uniform Titles-General Information

- 130 Main Entry - Uniform Title (NR)**
630 Subject Added Entry - Uniform Title (R)
730 Added Entry - Uniform Title (R)
830 Series Added Entry - Uniform Title (R)

First Indicator

- 830** Undefined
 # Undefined
130/630/730 Nonfiling characters
 0 No nonfiling characters
 1-9 Number of nonfiling characters

Second indicator

- 130** Undefined
 # Undefined

Second Indicator

- 630** Thesaurus
 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings
 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
 2 Medical Subject Headings
 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
 4 Source not specified
 5 Canadian Subject Headings
 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2
730 Type of added entry
 # No information provided
 2 Analytical entry
830 Nonfiling characters
 0-9 Number of nonfiling characters

Subfield Codes

Title portion

- ‡a Uniform title (NR)
 ‡d Date of a treaty signing (R)
 ‡e Relator term (R) [630]
 ‡f Date of a work (NR)
 ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
 ‡h Medium (NR)
 ‡i Relationship information (R) [730]
 ‡k Form subheading (R)
 ‡l Language of a work (NR)
 ‡m Medium of performance for music (R)
 ‡n Number of part/section of a work (R)
 ‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)
 ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
 ‡r Key for music (NR)
 ‡s Version (NR)
 ‡t Title of a work (NR)
 ‡v Volume/sequential designation (NR) [830]
 ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) [730/830]

- ‡4 Relator code (R) [630]

Subject subdivision portion

- ‡v Form subdivision (R) [630]
 ‡x General subdivision (R) [630]
 ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) [630]
 ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) [630]

Control subfields

- ‡w Bibliographic record control number (R) [830]
 ‡0 Authority record control number (R)
 ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) [630]
 ‡3 Materials specified (NR) [630/730/830]
 ‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR) [730/830]
 ‡6 Linkage (NR)
 ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Subelements occurring in uniform or conventional title, title page title, or series title headings that are not entered under a name in a name/title heading and that are constructed according to the generally

X30

accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR 2)*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)*). A uniform title heading is used to bring together bibliographic entries for a work when various issues have appeared under different titles and to provide identification for a work when the title by which it is known differs from the title proper of a particular issue or when different publications have identical titles. A uniform title entered under a name is contained in field 240 or in subfield ‡t (Title of a work) in the field appropriate for the author's name (X00, X10, X11). Uniform titles used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Bible in atheism) are contained in field 650 (Subject Added Entry-Topical Term).

There is no field 430 which corresponds to fields 130, 630, 730, and 830. See the description of field 490 for series statements consisting only of titles.

Guidelines for applying all content designators except the second indicator position are given in this section. A field-specific list of content designators and guidelines for applying the second indicator position are provided under the description for each specific X30 field.

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined [830]

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

First Indicator - Nonfiling characters [130/630/730]

Value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., Le, An) at the beginning of a uniform title field that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

0 - No nonfiling characters

No initial article character positions are disregarded. Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a uniform title field that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

130 0#‡a"Hsüan lai hsi kan" hsi lieh.

Initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the uniform title field. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

130 0#‡aLos Angeles times.

1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters

Title begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. Any diacritical mark, space or mark of punctuation associated with the article and any space or mark of punctuation preceding the first filing character after the article is included in the count of nonfiling characters. Any diacritic, however, associated with the first filing character is not included in the count of nonfiling characters.

Second Indicator

Second indicator position is unique to the function of the uniform title field. It is described under the following fields: 130 (Main Entry-Uniform Title); 630 (Subject Added Entry-Uniform Title); 730 (Added Entry-Uniform Title); and 830 (Series Added Entry-Uniform Title).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Uniform title

Parenthetical information added to make a title distinctive is not separately subfield coded except in the case of the date of signing added to a uniform title of a treaty (see description of subfield ‡d).

- 630 00#aDead Sea scrolls.
 730 0#aNew York times.
 130 0#aSiège d'Orléans (Mystery play)
 830 #0#aMarch of time.
 130 0#aBeowulf.
 730 0#a60 minutes (Television program)
 830 #0#aResources information series.
 830 #0#almago (Series)
 630 00#aFour seasons (Motion picture : 1981)
 130 0#aDialogue (Montréal, Québec : 1962).#IEnglish.
 630 00#aInter-American Treaty of Reciprocal Assistance#d(1947)
[Parenthetical date of treaty signing is contained in subfield #d.]

#d - Date of treaty signing

Date of signing used in a uniform title field for a treaty or other intergovernmental agreement.

- 730 02#aBonn Convention#d(1952).#f1980.
 630 00#aTreaty of Utrecht#d(1713)

#e - Relator term [630]

Designation of a relationship between a uniform title and the described materials, e.g., depicted.

#f - Date of a work

Date of publication used in a uniform title field.

- 730 0#aBible.#I#sLatin.#sVulgate.#f1454?
 130 0#aTosefta.#IEnglish.#f1977.

Date added parenthetically to distinguish between identical uniform titles is not separately subfield coded.

- 130 0#aKing Kong (1933)
 130 0#aKing Kong (1976)

#g - Miscellaneous information

Data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield.

- 130 0#aBible.#gManuscripts, Latin.#pN.T.#pGospels (Lindisfarne gospels)

#h - Medium

Media qualifier used in a uniform title field.

- 130 0#aGone with the wind (Motion picture).#hSound recording.

#i - Relationship information [730]

Designation of a relationship between the resource described in the 7XX field and the resource described in the 1XX/245 of the record. This may be an uncontrolled textual phrase or a controlled textual value from a list of relationships between bibliographic resources.

#k - Form subheading

Form subheading used in a uniform title field. Form subheadings used with uniform titles include *Manuscript*, *Protocols*, etc. and *Selections*.

- 130 0#aBible.#pO.T.#pFive Scrolls.#IHebrew.#sBiblioteca apostolica vaticana.#kManuscript.#nUrbiniti Hebraicus 1.

X30

- 130 0#‡aConvention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms‡d(1950).‡kProtocols, etc.,‡d1963 Sept. 16.
- 130 0#‡aPortrait and biographical album of Isabella County, Mich.‡kSelections.
- 130 0#‡aVedas.‡pRgveda.‡lItalian & Sanskrit.‡kSelections.

‡l - Language of a work

Name of the language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) used in a uniform title field.

- 130 0#‡aKhimifà i tekhnologifà vody.‡lEnglish.
- 130 0#‡aLord's prayer.‡lPolyglot.
- 730 02‡aTreaty on the Non-proliferation of Nuclear Weapons‡d(1968).‡lSpanish.‡f1977.

‡m - Medium of performance for music

Term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title field. If the uniform title includes as part of the medium the abbreviation "acc." or "unacc.," the abbreviation is recorded in subfield ‡m. The abbreviation, "unacc." is recorded in subfield ‡a when it is not an addition to a statement of medium. When a phrase such as "pianos (2)," "4 hands," etc., follows a collective uniform title for a specific medium of performance, it is included in subfield ‡a.

- 130 0#‡aDuets,‡mviolin, viola,‡nop. 10.‡nNo. 3.
[Uniform title heading for a work of unknown authorship.]
- 130 0#‡aSongs, unacc.

‡n - Number of part/section of a work

Number designation for a part/section of a work used in a uniform title field.

In music uniform titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number, or a date used to distinguish one work from another, is contained in subfield ‡n.

Multiple alternative numberings (often separated by a comma) are contained in a single subfield ‡n. Multiple numberings that are hierarchical (often separated by a period) are contained in separate occurrences of subfield ‡n.

- 730 0#‡aSouthern reporter.‡nSecond series.
- 130 0#‡aAnnale Universiteit van Stellenbosch.‡nSerie A2,‡pSöologie.
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]
- 730 0#‡aEconomics library selections.‡nSeries I,‡pNew books in economics.

‡o - Arranged statement for music

Abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title field.

- 730 02‡aGod save the king;‡oarr.‡f1982.

‡p - Name of part/section of a work

Name designation of a part/section of a work used in a uniform title field.

- 130 0#‡aRecherches morales.‡pDocuments.
- 130 0#‡aStatistics of income.‡pPartnership returns (1977)
- 130 0#‡aStatistical bulletin (Bamako, Mali).‡pSupplement.
- 730 02‡aAmerican Convention on Human Rights‡d(1969).‡nPart 2,‡pMeans of Protection.‡lSpanish.‡f1979.

Named part that indicates a subpart to the first noted part/section is contained in a separate subfield ‡p.

130 0#**†a**Bible.**†p**N.T.**†p**Philippians.**†l**English.**†s**Revised Standard.**†f**1980.

130 0#**†a**Bible.**†p**N.T.**†p**Corinthians, 1st.

†r - Key for music

Statement of key in which the music is written used in a uniform title field.

130 0#**†a**Concertos.**†m**violin, string orchestra,**†r**D major.

†s - Version

Version, edition, etc., information used in a uniform title field.

730 0#**†a**Bible.**†p**N.T.**†p**Luke.**†l**Greek.**†s**Codex Sinaiticus.

†t - Title of a work

Title page title of a work. *Subfield †t is unlikely to be used in an X30 field.*

†v - Volume/sequential designation [830]

Volume number or other sequential designation used in an 830 series added entry.

830 #0**†a**Serie Mariano Azvela ;**†v**2.

†v - Form subdivision [630]

Form subdivision that designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield †v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading. Subfield †v is used for form terms when they function as indicated above. Subfield †x may be used if the terms function as general subdivisions. A form subdivision in subfield †v is generally the last subfield in the field. The subfield may be repeated if more than one form subdivision is used.

630 00**†a**New York times**†v**Indexes.

630 00**†a**Triple Alliance, 1882**†v**Caricatures and cartoons.

†w - Bibliographic record control number [830]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

†x - International Standard Serial Number [730/830]

ISSN for a serial title given in the title portion of a uniform title field. The ISSN is an agency-assigned data element. ISSNs are assigned to serial publications by national centers under the auspices of the ISSN Network.

†x - General subdivision [630]

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield †v (Form subdivision), subfield †y (Chronological subdivision), or subfield †z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield †x is appropriate only when a general topical subdivision is added to a uniform title.

630 00**†a**Beowulf**†x**Language**†v**Glossaries, etc.

630 00**†a**Talmud**†x**Theology.

†y - Chronological subdivision [630]

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield †y is appropriate only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a uniform title.

630 00**†a**Koran**†x**Criticism, interpretation, etc.**†x**History**†y**19th century.

630 00**†a**Berliner Revue**†x**History**†y**20th century.

†z - Geographic subdivision [630]

Appropriate only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a uniform title.

X30

630 00‡aBible‡zGermany.

630 00‡aBible‡xStudy and teaching‡zGermany‡xHistory‡y20th century.

‡0 - Authority record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of heading or term [630]

MARC code that identifies the source list from which the heading in a 630 subject added entry field was assigned. It is used only when the second indicator position contains value 7 (Source specified in subfield ‡2). Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡3 - Materials specified [630/730/830]

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

830 #0‡31980:‡aDHEW publication,‡x0090-0206.

‡4 - Relator code [630]

MARC code that specifies the relationship between a uniform title and the described materials. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [730/830]

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix E: *Ambiguous Headings*.

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. Fields 130, 630, 730, and 830 end with a mark of punctuation or a closing parenthesis. If the final subfields are subfield ‡0, ‡2, ‡3, or ‡5, the mark of punctuation or closing parenthesis precedes those subfields.

130 0#‡aTen commandments.‡lEnglish & Hebrew.

730 02‡aGod save the king;‡oarr.‡f1982.

630 00‡aTalmud‡vGlossaries, vocabularies, etc.‡fICU

830 #0‡aPublicación miscelánea (Inter-American Institute for Cooperation on Agriculture) ;‡vno. 391.

130 0#‡aBible.‡lEnglish.‡sRevised Standard.‡f1961?

Mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

830 #0‡aPublicaciones del Archivo Histórico de la Provincia de Buenos Aires "Ricardo

Uniform title heading followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the title ends with an abbreviation or an initialism.

630 00‡aUnited Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods‡d(1980)‡vCongresses.

- 630 00‡a**Book of Mormon‡xAntiquities.
630 00‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡xCriticism, interpretation, etc.

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms.

- 830 #0‡a**Special publication of the IEEE Power Engineering Society ;‡vno. 19.
130 0#‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡pMatthew.

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

- 830 #0‡a**Mineral resources series (Morgantown, W. Va.) ;‡vMRS-7B.

Initial Articles - Initial articles (e.g., The) occurring at the beginning of uniform title heading fields are usually omitted in most languages (except when the intent is to file on the article).

- 730 0#‡a**Los Angeles times.

Any diacritics and/or special characters occurring at the beginning of field are retained. Note that such characters are usually ignored for purposes of sorting and filing.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 1 - Nonfiling characters [130/630/730]

- # - Undefined [OBSOLETE, 1979]
- # - Nonfiling characters not specified [OBSOLETE, 1980]

Indicator 2 - Main entry/subject relationship [130] [OBSOLETE, 1990] (BK MU SE)

Values were: 0 (Main entry/subject relationship irrelevant), 1 (Main entry is subject).

Indicator 2 - Type of added entry [730]

- 0 - Alternative entry [OBSOLETE, 1993] (BK AM CF MP MU SE)
- 1 - Secondary entry [OBSOLETE, 1993] (BK AM CF MP MU SE)
- 1 - Printed on card [OBSOLETE, 1993] (VM)
- 3 - Not printed on card [OBSOLETE, 1993] (VM)

‡d - Date of treaty signing [NEW, 1980]

‡e - Relator term [NEW, 2005]

‡i - Relationship information [NEW, 2009]

‡n - Number of part/section of a work [NEW, 1979]

‡p - Part [REDEFINED, 1979]

In 1979, subfield ‡n was defined for numbers of parts/sections and subfield ‡p (Part) was redefined to include only names of parts/sections. Prior to that change, both the number and the name of a part were contained in one subfield ‡p.

‡w - Bibliographic record control number [NEW, 2007]

‡x - International Standard Serial Number [830] [NEW, 2008]

‡0 - Authority record control number [NEW, 2007]

‡3 - Materials specified [830] [NEW, 2008]

‡4 - Relator code [NEW, 2005]

‡5 - Institution to which field applies [NEW, 2010]

X30

[blank page]

25X-28X Edition, Imprint, Etc. Fields-General Information

- 250 Edition Statement (NR)
- 254 Musical Presentation Statement (NR)
- 255 Cartographic Mathematical Data (R)
- 256 Computer File Characteristics (NR)
- 257 Country of Producing Entity (R)
- 258 Philatelic Issue Data (R)
- 260 Publication, Distribution, etc. (Imprint) (R)
- 263 Projected Publication Date (NR)
- 270 Address (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Descriptive information concerning the item described in a bibliographic record other than title related data. Data recorded includes the edition statement, imprint and other publication source information, addresses, descriptive data related to specific forms of material, and addresses. Together with the other 2XX and the 3XX fields, this data constitutes what is referred to as the *body* of the bibliographic record.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

- 257 *Country of Producing Entity for Archival Films* [RENAMED, 2009]
- 258 *Philatelic Issue Data* [NEW, 2004]
- 261 *Imprint Statement for Films (Pre-AACR 1 Revised)* [USMARC only]
- 262 *Imprint Statement for Sound Recordings (Pre-AACR 2)* [USMARC only]
- 265 *Source for Acquisition/Subscription Address* [OBSOLETE, 1983] [AM], [MC]

265 *Source for Acquisition/Subscription Address* [OBSOLETE, 1993] [BK], [CF], [MP], [MU], [VM], [SE]
 Both indicator positions were undefined. The subfield codes were: ‡a (Source for acquisition/subscription address) and ‡6 (Linkage). Source information may be contained in subfield ‡b (Source of stock number/acquisition) of field 037 (Source of Acquisition).

[blank page]

257 Country of Producing Entity

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Country of producing entity (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡2 Source (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Name or abbreviation of the name of the country(s) where the principal offices of the producing entity(s) of an archival resource are located.

Entity(s) in this instance is the production company(s) or individual that is named in the statement of responsibility (subfield ‡c) of field 245 (Title Statement).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Country of producing entity**

Name or abbreviation of the name of the country(s) where the principal offices of the producing entity(s) are located.

May contain the abbreviation *[S.I.]* when the country is unknown.

257 ##‡aU.S.

257 ##‡a[S.I.]

257 ##‡altaly ; France.

500 ##‡aAvers Film has separate offices in Italy and France.

257 ##‡aFrance‡aGermany‡altaly‡2naf

257 ##‡aUnited States‡2naf

257 ##‡altaly‡2naf

‡2 - Source

MARC code that identifies the source of the term in subfield ‡a.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

257

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields* .

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Field 257 ends with a mark of punctuation unless the last word in the field is an abbreviation, initial/letter, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation. No punctuation is recorded between subfields.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

257 - *Country of Producing Entity* [RENAMED, 2009]

Prior to 2010 was named "Country of Producing Entity for Archival Films" and was (NR)

‡a - *Country of producing entity* [RENAMED, 2009]

Prior to 2010 was named "Country of Producing Entity for Archival Films" and was (NR)

‡2 - *Source* (NR) [NEW, 2009]

3XX Physical Description, Etc. Fields - General Information

- 300 Physical Description (R)
- 306 Playing Time (NR)
- 307 Hours, etc. (R)
- 310 Current Publication Frequency (NR)
- 321 Former Publication Frequency (R)
- 336 Content Type (R)
- 337 Media Type (R)
- 338 Carrier Type (R)
- 340 Physical Medium (R)
- 342 Geospatial Reference Data (R)
- 343 Planar Coordinate Data (R)
- 351 Organization and Arrangement of Materials (R)
- 352 Digital Graphic Representation (R)
- 355 Security Classification Control (R)
- 357 Originator Dissemination Control (NR)
- 362 Dates of Publication and/or Sequential Designation (R)
- 363 Normalized Date and Sequential Designation (R)
- 365 Trade Price (R)
- 366 Trade Availability Information (R)
- 380 Form of Work (R)
- 381 Other Distinguishing Characteristics of Work or Expression (R)
- 382 Medium of Performance (R)
- 383 Numeric Designation of Musical Work (R)
- 384 Key (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information pertaining to physical characteristics, graphic representation, physical arrangement, publication frequency, and security information. For digital items, fields are provided for recording reference and coordinate data.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

- 301 *Physical Description for Films (Pre-AACR 2) (VM) [OBSOLETE, 1983] [USMARC only]*
- 302 *Page Count (BK) [OBSOLETE, 1990]*
- 303 *Unit Count (AM) [OBSOLETE, 1983] [USMARC only]*
- 304 *Linear Footage (AM) [OBSOLETE, 1983] [USMARC only]*
- 305 *Physical Description for Sound Recordings (Pre-AACR 2) (MU) [OBSOLETE, 1993]*
- 308 *Physical Description for Films (Archival) (VM) [OBSOLETE, 1990]*
- 315 *Frequency (CF, MP) [OBSOLETE, 1993]*

3XX

- | 336 *Content Type* [NEW, 2009]
- | 337 *Media Type* [NEW, 2009]
- | 338 *Carrier Type* [NEW, 2009]
- 350 *Price (BK, AM, MU, VM)* [OBSOLETE, 1983]
- 350 *Price (CF, SE)* [OBSOLETE, 1993]
- 359 *Rental Price (VM)* [OBSOLETE, 1983]
- 363 *Normalized Date and Sequential Designation* [NEW, 2007]
- 365 *Trade Price* [NEW, 2003]
- 366 *Trade Availability Information* [NEW, 2003]
- | 380 *Form of Work* [NEW, 2010]
- | 381 *Other Distinguishing Characteristics of Work or Expression* [NEW, 2010]
- | 382 *Medium of Performance* [NEW, 2010]
- | 383 *Numeric Designation of Musical Work* [NEW, 2010]
- | 384 *Key* [NEW, 2010]

336 Content Type

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Content type term (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡b Content type code (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡2 Source (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The form of communication through which a work is expressed. Used in conjunction with Leader /06 (Type of record), which indicates the general type of content of the resource. Field 336 information enables expression of more specific content types and content types from various lists.

Multiple content types from the same source vocabulary or code list may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Content type term) and subfield ‡b (Content type code). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Content type term**

Content type of the work being described.

336 ##‡a‡performed music‡2marccontent

336 ##‡a‡two-dimensional moving image‡b‡tdi‡2marccontent

‡b - Content type code

Code representing the content type of the work being described.

336 ##‡b‡prm‡2marccontent

336 ##‡b‡txt‡2marccontent‡3‡liner notes

‡2 - Source

MARC code that identifies the source of the term or code used to record the content type information.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

336 ##‡b‡dm‡2marccontent

336

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

336 ##‡1text‡2marccontent‡3liner notes

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

337 Media Type

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Media type term (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡b Media type code (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡2 Source (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Media type reflects the general type of intermediation device required to view, play, run, etc., the content of a resource. Used as an alternative to or in addition to the coded expression of Media type in field 007/00 (Category of material). Field 337 information enables indication of more specific media types and media types from various lists.

Multiple media types from the same source vocabulary or code list may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Media type term) and subfield ‡b (Media type code). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Media type term**

Term for the category of media used to convey the content of the resource.

337 ##‡aaudio‡2marcmedia

337 ##‡avideo‡bv‡2marcmedia

‡b - Media type code

Code for the category of media used to convey the content of the resource.

337 ##‡bs‡2marcmedia

337 ##‡bn‡2marcmedia‡3liner notes

‡2 - Source

MARC code that identifies the source of the term or code used to record the media type information.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

337 ##‡bv‡2marcmedia

337

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

337 ~~##~~‡aunmediated‡2marcmedia‡3liner notes

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

338 Carrier Type

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Carrier type term (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡b Carrier type code (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡2 Source (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Carrier type reflects the format of the storage medium and housing of a carrier in combination with the media type (which indicates the intermediation device required to view, play, run, etc., the content of a resource). Used as an alternative to or in addition to the coded expression of carrier type in field 007/01 (Specific material designation). Field 338 information enables indication of more specific carrier types and carrier types from various lists.

Multiple media types from the same source vocabulary or code list may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Carrier type term) and subfield ‡b (Carrier type code). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Carrier type term**

Term for the category of carrier used to convey the content of the resource.

338 ##‡aaudio disc‡2marccarrier

338 ##‡avideo disc‡bvd‡2marccarrier

‡b - Carrier type code

Code for the category of carrier used to convey the content of the resource.

338 ##‡bsd‡2marccarrier

338 ##‡bvd‡2marccarrier

‡2 - Source

MARC code that identifies the source of the term or code used to record the carrier type information.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

338 ##‡bnb‡2marccarrier‡3liner notes

338

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

338 ##‡asheet‡2marccarrier‡3liner notes

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

380 Form of Work

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Form of work (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡0 Record control number (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡2 Source of term (NR)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A class or genre to which a work belongs. May be used to differentiate a work from another work with the same title.

Multiple forms of work from the same source vocabulary may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Form of work). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Form of work**

A term expressing the class or genre of the work.

100 1#‡aWilder, Thornton, ‡d1897-1975. ‡tOur town.

380 ##‡aPlay

130 #0‡aCinderella (Choreographic work)

380 ##‡aChoreographic work

130 #0‡aWar of the worlds (Television program)

380 ##‡aTelevision program

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

MARC code that identifies the source of the term in subfield ‡a when it is from a controlled list.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

380

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

381 Other Distinguishing Characteristics of Work or Expression (R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

<p>‡a Other distinguishing characteristic (R) ‡u Uniform Resource Identifier (R) ‡v Source of information (R) ‡0 Record control number (R)</p>	<p>‡2 Source of term (NR) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)</p>
--	---

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Any characteristic that is not accommodated in a special field that serves to characterize a work or expression. Examples are an issuing body, arranged statement of music, version, or a geographic term. May be used to differentiate a work from another work with the same title.

Multiple characteristics from the same source vocabulary may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Other distinguishing characteristic). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Other distinguishing characteristic

A term that specifies a characteristic that differentiates a work or expression from another one.

130 **0#‡a**Research paper (South African Law Commission)

381 **##‡a**South African Law Commission
[Attributes of a work]

130 **0#‡a**Harlow (Motion picture : 1965 : Douglas)

381 **##‡a**Douglas

380 **##‡a**Motion picture

046 **##‡k**1965
[Attributes of a work]

130 **0#‡a**1 + 1 = 3 (Choreographic work : D'Amboise)

381 **##‡a**D'Amboise

380 **##‡a**Choreographic work
[Attributes of an expression]

381

- 130 0#‡aBible.‡IEnglish.‡sAuthorized.‡f2004
381 ##‡aAuthorized
046 ##‡k2004
[Attributes of an expression]
- 100 1#‡aDebussy, Claude,‡d1862-1918.
240 10‡aChansons de Bilitis (Songs).‡pChevelure;‡oarranged
380 ##‡aSongs
381 ##‡aArranged
[Attributes of an expression]
- 100 1#‡aGibbon, Edward,‡d1737-1794.
240 10‡aHistory of the decline and fall of the Roman Empire.‡kSelections
381 ##‡aSelections
[Attributes of an expression]

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols.

In field 381, subfield ‡u is used to record the location of electronically accessible source information.

‡v - Source of information

Source where the information recorded in field 381 was found if not through a URI.

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

MARC code that identifies the source of the term in subfield ‡a when it is from a controlled list.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

382 Medium of Performance

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Medium of performance (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡0 Record control number (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡2 Source of term (NR)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The instrumental, vocal, and/or other medium of performance for which a musical work was originally conceived or for which a musical expression is written or performed. May be used to differentiate a musical work or expression from another with the same title.

Multiple mediums from the same source vocabulary may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Medium of performance). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Medium of performance**

A term that indicates the instrumental, vocal, and/or other medium of performance.

100 1#‡aStravinsky, Igor,‡d1882-1971.

240 10‡aSymphonie de Psaumes

382 ##‡amixed voices‡aorchestra

100 1#‡aBeethoven, Ludwig van,‡d1770-1827.

240 10‡aSonatas,‡mpiano,‡nno. 14, op. 27, no. 2,‡rC# minor

382 ##‡apiano

383 ##‡ano. 14,‡bp. 27, no. 2

384 ##‡aC# minor

‡0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡2 - Source of term

MARC code that identifies the source of the term in subfield ‡a when it is from a controlled list.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

382

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

383	Numeric Designation of Musical Work	(R)
------------	--	------------

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Serial number (R) ‡b Opus number (R) ‡c Thematic index number (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
--	--

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A serial number, opus number, or thematic index number assigned to a musical work by the composer, publisher, or a musicologist. May be used to differentiate a musical work from another with the same title.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Serial number**

A number used if works with the same title and the same medium of performance are consecutively numbered in music reference sources.

100 1#‡aBeethoven, Ludwig van,‡d1770-1827.
240 10‡aSonatas,‡mpiano,‡mno. 14, op. 27, no. 2,‡rC# minor
382 ##‡apiano
383 ##‡ano. 14,‡bop. 27, no. 2
384 ##‡aC# minor

‡b - Opus number

An identifying number of a musical composition sometimes followed by a number within the opus.

‡c - Thematic index number

A number assigned to a work in a recognized thematic index in the case of certain composers.

100 1#‡aBach, Johann Sebastian,‡d1685-1750.
240 10‡bKaffee-Kantate
383 ##‡cBWV 211

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

[blank page]

384 Key

(NR)

First Indicator

Key type
 # Relationship to original unknown
 0 Original key
 1 Transposed key

Second Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Key (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
 ‡6 Linkage (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The set of pitch relationships that establishes a single pitch class as a tonal centre for a musical work or expression. May be used to differentiate a musical work or expression from another with the same title.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Key type****# - Relationship to original unknown**

The relationship of the specified key to the original key in which the musical composition was written.

0 - Original key**1 - Transposed key**

A different key from that of the original work.

Second Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Key**

The pitch name and the mode (e.g., major or minor).

100 1#‡aGodowsky, Leopold,‡d1870-1938.

240 10‡aEtude macabre

382 ##‡apiano

384 ##‡aD minor

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

[blank page]

490 Series Statement

(R)

First Indicator

Series tracing policy
 0 Series not traced
 1 Series traced

Second Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Series statement (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡l Library of Congress call number (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡v Volume/sequential designation (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡x International Standard Serial Number (R)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Series statement for a series title.

Field 490 does not serve as a series added entry. When field 490 is used and a series added entry is desired, both the series statement (field 490) and a corresponding series added entry (fields 800-830) are recorded in the bibliographic record.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Series tracing policy**

Whether the series has no corresponding added entry (not traced) or has a corresponding 800-830 series added entry field (traced differently).

0 - Series not traced

No series added entry is desired for the series.

490 0#‡aPelican books
[No 800-830 field in record.]

1 - Series traced

When value 1 is used, the appropriate field 800-830 is included in the bibliographic record to provide the series added entry.

490 1#‡aUniform crime reports
830 #0‡aUniform crime reports (Washington, D.C.)
[The established form of entry for the series includes a parenthetical qualifier.]

490 1#‡aDepartment of the Army pamphlet ;‡v27-50
830 #00‡aDA pam ;‡v27-50.
[The established form of the series is different from the series statement appearing on the item.]

830 1#‡3<1981->:‡aReference works
830 #0‡aReference works.
[The series statement includes information that is not included in the added entry.]

490

- 490 1#~~1~~aDepartment of State publication ;~~1~~v7846.~~1~~aDepartment and Foreign Service series ;~~1~~v128
- 830 #0~~1~~aDepartment of State publication ;~~1~~v7846.
- 830 #0~~1~~aDepartment of State publication.~~1~~pDepartment and Foreign Service series ;~~1~~v128.
[The series statement contains a numbered series and a subseries, and both are to be traced separately.]
- 490 1#~~1~~aPediatric clinics of North America ;~~1~~v. 2, no. 4
- 830 #0~~1~~aPediatric clinics of North America ;~~1~~v. 2, no. 4.

Second Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

~~1~~a - Series statement

Series title that may also contain a statement of responsibility or other title information.

Note that in field 490 the names and numbers of parts and sections of a title are not separately subfield coded.

- 490 1#~~1~~aBulletin / U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics
- 830 #0~~1~~aBulletin (United States. Bureau of Labor Statistics)
- 490 1#~~1~~3v. 9-<10>:~~1~~aMPCHT art and anthropological monographs ;~~1~~vno. 35
- 490 1#~~1~~aDetroit area study, 1971 : social problems and social change in Detroit ;~~1~~vno. 19
- 490 1#~~1~~aPolicy series / CES ;~~1~~v1
- 490 1#~~1~~31972/73-1975-76:~~1~~aResearch report / National Education Association Research

Repeatable when a subseries is separated from the main series by the numbering of the main series in subfield ~~1~~v or by the ISSN in subfield ~~1~~x, or when a series has a parallel title.

- 490 1#~~1~~aDepartment of State publication ;~~1~~v7846.~~1~~aDepartment and Foreign Service series ;~~1~~v128
- 490 1#~~1~~aAnnual census of manufactures =~~1~~aRecensement des manufactures,~~1~~x0315-5587
- 490 1#~~1~~aPapers and documents of the I.C.I. Series C, Bibliographies ;~~1~~vno. 3 =~~1~~aTravaux et documents de l'I.C.I. Série C, Bibliographies ;~~1~~vno 3

~~1~~l - Library of Congress call number

LC series call number when it is given as part of the series statement.

Occurs when an item is issued as part of a series during a period of time and has been classified under the Library of Congress call number of that series for that period. The call number is assigned using the *Library of Congress Classification* or *LC Classification-Additions and Change*; two publications that are maintained by the Library of Congress.

- 490 1#~~1~~31973- :~~1~~aNEA research memo~~1~~l(LB2842.N18)
- 490 1#~~1~~aBulletin / Engineering Experiment Station ;~~1~~vno. 50~~1~~l(TA7.O74)

~~1~~v - Volume/sequential designation

Volume number or other sequential designation used in a series statement. Alternate numbering systems, preceded by an equal sign (=), are not placed in separate subfields.

- 490 1#~~1~~aMap / Geological Survey of Alabama ;~~1~~v158, plate 3
- 490 1#~~1~~aWest Virginia University bulletin ;~~1~~vser. 74, no. 11-3.~~1~~aBulletin / Experiment Station, West Virginia University ;~~1~~v111
- 490 0#~~1~~aForschungen zur Geschichte Vorarlbergs ;~~1~~v6. Bd. = der ganzen Reihe 13 Bd.

‡x - International Standard Serial Number

International Standard Serial Number (ISSN) for a series title given in a series statement. The ISSN is an authoritative-agency data element. ISSNs are assigned to serial publications (including series) by national centers under the auspices of the ISSN Network.

- 490 0#‡aLife series ‡x0023-6721
490 1#‡aMémoire du BRGM,‡x0071-8246 ;‡vno 123

Repeatable when the ISSNs for both the series and the subseries are recorded.

- 490 1#‡aLund studies in geography,‡x1400-1144 ;‡v101‡aSer. B, Human geography, ‡x0076-1478 ;‡v48
830 #0‡aLund studies in geography,‡nSer. B.‡pHuman geography,‡x0076-1478 ;‡v5
830 #0‡aLund studies in geography,‡x1400-1144 ;‡v101

Note: When a record contains an ISSN for the series but lacks a series statement, the ISSN is recorded in a 500 General Note field.

- 500 ##‡a"ISSN 0399-3388."

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

- 490 1#‡3<1981->: ‡aReference works
830 #0‡aReference works.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Punctuation of subelements of a series statement field is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging rules. Field 490 does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initial/letter, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials/letters that appear as part of the series title.

- 490 0#‡aEducation U.S.A. special report
490 1#‡aMémoire du BRGM,‡x0071-8246 ;‡vno 123

Temporary Data - When an item has been issued within a series during part of its lifetime or has been issued in different series during different periods, or in a series whose title has changed and the exact beginning and/or ending data is unknown, angle brackets (<...>) are customarily used in subfield ‡a to record the date or volume information which is subject to change.

- 490 1#‡3<1984->:‡aMiscellaneous publication / United States Department of Agriculture

If any portion of the volume/sequential (subfield ‡v) information is subject to change (e.g., in a record for a multipart item), angle brackets are customarily used to record that part of the volume/sequential designation information which is subject to change. As parts are added, the information is updated.

490

490 1#†aCollection analyses ;†vvol. 1, <3, 5-7>

Display Constants - Parentheses that customarily enclose the series statement are not carried in the machine-readable record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the field tag.

Content designated field:

490 1#†aTeachings of the feathered serpent ;†vbk. 1

Display example:

(Teachings of the feathered serpent ; bk. 1)

Initialism *ISSN* that precedes the International Standard Serial Number in subfield †x is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated in a series statement as a display constant associated with the content of subfield †x.

Content designated field:

490 1#†aBibliographies of modern authors,†x0749-470X ;†vno. 27

Display example:

(Bibliographies of modern authors, ISSN: 0749-470X; no. 27)

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 1 - Series tracing policy

1 - Series traced [REDEFINED, 2008] Prior to 2009, series for which the transcribed form and the traced form were the same were in field 440, and field 490 was not used. If the transcribed form and the traced form were different, the transcribed form was in field 490 and Indicator 1 had value "1" (Series traced differently) The traced form was in an 8XX field. Beginning in 2009, field 440 is not used and the transcribed form of the series name is in field 490 with the traced form in 8XX, even if the names are the same.

†v - Volume/sequential designation [NEW, 1980]

Prior to 1980, volume numbers or sequential designations were not separately subfield coded.

†x - ISSN [CHANGED, 2009]

In 2009, subfield was made repeatable.

†3 - Materials specified [NEW, 2008]

Prior to 2008, designations for part of the resource were not separately subfield coded.

5XX Note Fields - General Information

- 500 General Note (R)
- 501 With Note (R)
- 502 Dissertation Note (R)
- 504 Bibliography, etc. Note (R)
- 505 Formatted Contents Note (R)
- 506 Restrictions on Access Note (R)
- 507 Scale Note for Graphic Material (NR)
- 508 Creation/Production Credits Note (R)
- 510 Citation/References Note (R)
- 511 Participant or Performer Note (R)
- 513 Type of Report and Period Covered Note (R)
- 514 Data Quality Note (NR)
- 515 Numbering Peculiarities Note (R)
- 516 Type of Computer File or Data Note (R)
- 518 Date/Time and Place of an Event Note (R)
- 520 Summary, etc. (R)
- 521 Target Audience Note (R)
- 522 Geographic Coverage Note (R)
- 524 Preferred Citation of Described Materials Note (R)
- 525 Supplement Note (R)
- 526 Study Program Information Note (R)
- 530 Additional Physical Form available Note (R)
- 533 Reproduction Note (R)
- 534 Original Version Note (R)
- 535 Location of Originals/Duplicates Note (R)
- 536 Funding Information Note (R)
- 538 System Details Note (R)
- 540 Terms Governing Use and Reproduction Note (R)
- 541 Immediate Source of Acquisition Note (R)
- 542 Information Relating to Copyright Status (R)
- 544 Location of Other Archival Materials Note (R)
- 545 Biographical or Historical Data (R)
- 546 Language Note (R)
- 547 Former Title Complexity Note (R)
- 550 Issuing Body Note (R)
- 552 Entity and Attribute Information Note (R)
- 555 Cumulative Index/Finding Aids Note (R)
- 556 Information About Documentation Note (R)
- 561 Ownership and Custodial History (R)
- 562 Copy and Version Identification Note (R)
- 563 Binding Information (R)
- 565 Case File Characteristics Note (R)
- 567 Methodology Note (R)
- 580 Linking Entry Complexity Note (R)
- 581 Publications About Described Materials Note (R)
- 583 Action Note (R)
- 584 Accumulation and Frequency of Use Note (R)
- 585 Exhibitions Note (R)
- 586 Awards Note (R)

5XX

588 Source of Description, Etc. Note (R)

59X Local Notes

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Fields 500-59X contain bibliographic notes. Each note is entered as a separate 5XX field. General notes are recorded in field 500 (General Note). Specialized notes are contained in fields 501-586. Prefer a specific note field if there is one when inputting specialized note information in the 5XX notes area. Otherwise, use a 500 General Note.

Information that appears in the notes area on printed output or machine displays is not always recorded in a specially defined 5XX note field. Data is sometimes carried in a structured or coded form in another field (e.g., field 086 (Government Document Classification Number) or field 310 (Current Publication Frequency)). Some of the fields that contain information that is grouped with 5XX note fields in displays and on printed products are listed below.

- 086 - Government Document Classification Number
- 246 - Varying Form of Title
- 247 - Former Title or Title Variations
- 310 - Current Publication Frequency
- 321 - Former Publication Frequency
- 362 - Dates of Publication and/or Sequential Designation
- 76X-78X - Linking Entry Fields

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

503 *Bibliographic History Note* [OBSOLETE, 1993] [BK], [CF], [MU]

Both indicators were undefined. The subfield codes were: ‡a Bibliographic history note, ‡6 Linkage. Bibliographic history information may be contained in field 500 (General Note).

512 *Earlier or Later Volumes Separately Cataloged Note* [OBSOLETE, 1990] [SE]

Both indicator positions were undefined. The subfield codes were: ‡a (Earlier or later volumes separately cataloged note), ‡6 (Linkage). Earlier or later volumes separately cataloged information may be contained in field 500 (General Note).

517 *Categories of Films Note (Archival)* [OBSOLETE, 1985] [VM]

The first indicator was defined as Specifies whether fiction or nonfiction (0 = Nonfiction, 1 = Fiction). The second indicator position was undefined. The subfield codes were: ‡a (Different formats), ‡b (Content descriptors), ‡c (Additional animation techniques). Genre information may be contained in field 655 (Index Term–Genre/Form).

523 *Time Period of Content Note* [OBSOLETE, 1993] [CF]

Both indicator positions were undefined. The subfield codes were: ‡a (Time period of content note), ‡b (Dates of data collection note), ‡6 (Linkage). Data previously recorded in this field is now recorded in field 500 (General Note), field 513 (Type of Report and Period Covered Note), subfield ‡b (Period covered), or field 518 (Date/Time and Place of an Event Note).

527 *Censorship Note* [OBSOLETE, 1990] [VM]

Both indicator positions were undefined. The subfield codes were: ‡a (Censorship note), ‡6 (Linkage). Censorship information may be contained in field 500 (General Note).

537 *Source of Data Note* [OBSOLETE, 1993] [CF]

The first indicator was defined as Display constant controller (= Publications, 8 = No display constant generated). The second indicator was undefined. The subfield codes were: ‡a (Source of data note), ‡6 (Linkage). Source of data information may be contained in field 500 (General Note) or included in field 567 (Methodology Note).

542 *Information Relating to Copyright Status* [NEW, 2008]

543 *Solicitation Information Note* [OBSOLETE, 1983] [USMARC only], [AM]

The indicators were undefined. The subfield code was: ‡a (Solicitation information note). Solicitation information may be contained in field 583 (Action Note).

563 *Binding Information* [NEW, 2002]

570 *Editor Note* [OBSOLETE, 1990] [SE]

Both indicator positions were undefined. The subfield codes were: ‡a (Editor note), ‡z (Source of note information), ‡6 (Linkage). Editor information may be contained in field 500 (General Note).

582 *Related Computer Files Note* [OBSOLETE, 1993] [CF]

The first indicator was defined as Display constant controller (= Related files, 8 = No display constant generated). The second indicator was undefined. The subfield codes were: ‡a (Related computer files note), ‡6 (Linkage). Related computer files information may be contained in fields 580 (Linking Entry Complexity Note) and 787 (Nonspecific Relationship Entry).

588 *Source of Description Note* [NEW, 2009]

5XX

[blank page]

510 Citation/References Note

(R)

First Indicator

Coverage/location in source

- 0 Coverage unknown
- 1 Coverage complete
- 2 Coverage is selective
- 3 Location in source not given
- 4 Location in source given

Second Indicator

Undefined

Undefined

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| ‡a Name of source (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡b Coverage of source (NR) | ‡3 Materials specified (NR) |
| ‡c Location within source (NR) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡u Uniform Resource Identifier (R) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Citations or references to published bibliographic descriptions, reviews, abstracts, or indexes of the content of the described item.

Used to specify where an item has been cited or reviewed. Citations or references may be given in a brief form (i.e., using generally recognizable abbreviations, etc.). The actual text of a published description is not recorded in field 510 but rather in field 520 (Summary, Etc. Note).

For **books** and **music**, this field contains references to published descriptions of the item (e.g., descriptions of rare materials recorded in a brief, standardized format) or reviews (e.g., reviews in professional literature).

For **continuing resources**, this field is used to specify publications in which a continuing resource has been indexed and/or abstracted and the dates of coverage, if known. The indexing and abstracting services referenced are primarily those issued as continuing resources. Certain monographic titles, particularly those that are standard reference tools in a subject area or that cover periods of time not included in continuing publications, may also be given in this field.

For unpublished **visual materials** or graphic items collectively controlled, this field contains references to published descriptions of the work or collection. Citations to reviews of projected **visual materials** are also recorded in this field.

For **mixed materials**, this field contains references to publications in which abstracts, citations, descriptions, or indexes of the described materials have appeared.

Note that field 510 is used when the indexing and/or review is external to the item represented by the bibliographic record. Field 555 (Cumulative Index/Finding Aids Note) is used when an index is an integral part of the item. When the title of the source of the index, abstract, review, etc. changes, a separate field 510 is used for each title. When coverage changes, thus requiring a different value in the first indicator, a new field 510 with appropriate dates is added to the record.

Field 510 is repeatable for multiple source citations.

Citation/references notes are usually displayed and/or printed with an introductory term or phrase that is generated as a display constant based on the first indicator value.

510

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Coverage/location in source

Whether or not the field contains the specific location in the source cited. For **continuing resources**, indicates the type of coverage given the item by the abstracting and indexing service. The value also controls the generation of a display constant preceding the note.

0 - Coverage unknown

Abstracting and indexing coverage is not specified. *Indexed by:* may be generated for display.

1 - Coverage complete

Abstracting and indexing coverage includes references to all articles in a journal and/or all issues within each volume and is considered to provide complete coverage. *Indexed in its entirety by:* may be generated for display.

510 1#~~†~~aEducation index,~~†~~x0013-1385,~~†~~b1966-
[A serial that is indexed in its entirety.]

2 - Coverage is selective

Abstracting and indexing service does not include references to all articles in the periodical. *Indexed selectively by:* may be generated for display.

510 2#~~†~~aMoving picture world,~~†~~b1975-

3 - Location in source not given

Specific location (e.g., volume, page number) of a citation within the source is not given.

References: may be generated for display.

510 3#~~†~~aLC Civil War maps

4 - Location in source given

Specific location (e.g., volume, page number) of a citation within the source is given in field 510.

References: may be generated for display.

510 4#~~†~~aAlgae abstracts,~~†~~cv. 3, W73-11952

510 4#~~†~~aCase, A.E. Poetical miscellanies,~~†~~c440, 1b, 2c, 3b, 4-6
[A rare serial that has been cited in a bibliography.]

Second Indicator

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

~~†~~a - Name of source

Name of the source in which the reference or citation appears. The name of the source may be given in either full cataloging form or as a conventionalized abbreviation, for example *Evans* for *Evans, Charles. American bibliography*.

Established forms of citations for bibliographies and catalogs used in cataloging rare materials are found in *Standard Citation Forms for Published Bibliographies and Catalogs Used in Rare Book Cataloging*.

- 510 3#**†a**Bibliographie cartographique internationale
 510 3#**†a**Hiler, H. Bibl. of costume
 510 4#**†a**TV guide (Philadelphia),**†c**112181, p. 48

Title of a source (e.g., *Index Medicus*) but not the name of an organization or company (e.g., National Library of Medicine). The key title is used when available. If there is no print publication, the commonly used form of name for the online database is used. In cases where both a print publication and an online database exist, the name from the print form of the publication is preferred.

- 510 0#**†a**Industrial arts index
 510 3#**†a**School library journal, June 1994
 [Reference to a review of a bibliographic item]

†b - Coverage of source

Dates and/or volume designations of the serial with which the service began and ended coverage.

- 510 1#**†a**Nexis,**†b**Jan. 13, 1975-
 510 1#**†a**Index Medicus,**†x**0019-3879,**†bv**1n1, 1984-

†c - Location within source

Specific location of the citation or reference within the source (e.g., page number, item number, etc.). Note that the first indicator position contains value 4 (Location in source given) when subfield **†c** is present.

- 510 4#**†a**Goff,**†c**A-970
 510 4#**†a**BM XV cent.,**†cl**l, p. 346 (IB.5874)
 510 4#**†a**Schramm,**†cv**. 4, p. 10, 50, and iii
 510 4#**†a**LC Treasure maps (2nd ed.),**†c**13

†u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) that provides electronic access data in a standard syntax to an electronic bibliography. If the former, subfield **†u** follows subfield **†a** (Name of source); if the latter, **†u** follows subfield **†c** (Location within source).

- 245 03**†a**An abstract of the remarkable passages in the life of a private gentleman.
 510 4#**†a**Evans**†u**<http://lccn.loc.gov/67004309>**†c**5375
 [The 510 †u contains the URI for the record describing Charles Evans's American bibliography.]
- 100 0#**†a**Abraham a Sancta Clara,**†d**1644-1709.
 245 13**†a**Judas der Ertz-Schelm, für ehrliche Leuth, ...
 510 4#**†a**VD 17**†c**12:196157F**†u**http://gso.gbv.de/DB=1.28/SET=5/TTL=11/COLMODE=1/CMD?ACT=SRCHA&IKT=8002&SRT=YOP&TRM=12%3A196157F&REC=*
 [The 510 †u contains a persistent URL to the record for Abraham's Judas der Ertz-Schelm in the Verzeichnis der im deutschen Sprachraum erschienenen Drucke des 17. Jahrhunderts (VD 17) database.]
- 245 00**†a**JAMA :**†b**the journal of the American Medical Association.
 510 1#**†a**PubMed**†u**<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed>**†bv**187n13,Mar.28, 1964-
 [The 510 †u contains the URL for the bibliographic information where the serial is cited.]

†x - International Standard Serial Number

- 510 2#**†a**Chemical abstracts,**†x**0009-2258

510

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described material to which the field applies.

510 4#‡331911 Arctic field notebook‡aDay, Harold. "Statistical Methods for Population Transport Estimation," Journal of Ecological Studies,‡cvol. 7, 1974, p. 187

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - A comma is placed usually at the end of subfield ‡a, ‡b, ‡c, and/or ‡x if another subfield follows. Field 510 ends with a hyphen if one is present at the end of subfield ‡b; otherwise the field does not end with a mark of punctuation, unless the field ends with an abbreviation, initial/letter, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation. The system may supply a period at the end of the field if desired. When multiple 510 fields occur with the same indicator value the data may be reformatted into one note with semicolons as separators for display.

Content designated field:

510 4#‡aCopinger,‡c5747

510 4#‡aGoff,‡cT-90

Display example:

References: Copinger, 5747; Goff, T-90.

When the reference note consists of a name/title citation, a period and space follow the author's name.

510 4#‡aStreeter, T.W. Texas,‡c997

Initial Articles - Initial articles are generally omitted in the title and author/title citations.

Display Constants - Introductory terms or phrases such as *References;* *Indexed by;* etc. are not carried in the MARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the first indicator value.

<u>First indicator</u>	<u>Display constant</u>
0	Indexed by:
1	Indexed in its entirety by:
2	Indexed selectively by:
3	References:
4	References:

The initialism *ISSN* followed by a space may also be system generated as a display constant associated with the presence of subfield ‡x.

Content designated field:

510 1#‡aEducation index,‡x0013-1385

Display example:

Indexed in its entirety by: Education index, ISSN 0013-1385

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

|*‡u* - *Uniform Resource Identifier [NEW, 2009]*

[blank page]

518 Date/Time and Place of an Event Note	(R)
---	------------

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Date/time and place of an event note (NR) ‡d Date of event (R) ‡o Other event information (NR) ‡p Place of event (R) ‡0 Record control number (R)	‡2 Source of term (R) ‡3 Materials specified (NR) ‡6 Linkage (NR) ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
--	--

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Note on the date/time and/or place of creation, capture, recording, filming, execution, or broadcast associated with an event or the finding of a naturally occurring object. Field 033 (Date/Time and Place of an Event) contains the same information in coded form.

Date/time and place of an event note information may be encoded as a note in subfield ‡a or parsed into specific subfields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Date/time and place of an event note**

Entire contents of the note.

- 518 ##‡a**Recorded in Vienna in 1961, previously released as WST 17035.
- 518 ##‡a**Found on March 5, 1975, in Richmond, Tex.
- 518 ##‡a**Filmed on location in Rome and Venice from January through June 1976.
- 518 ##‡a**Works on accompanying sound disc recorded 1955-1963 in various places.
[Note related to accompanying material]
- 518 ##‡a**Photos printed by Cole Weston, ca. 1971, from negatives made by Edward Weston, ca. 1928.
- 518 ##‡a**Recorded in Santa Monica, Calif., Los Angeles, Calif., and New York, N.Y., July 1970-Jan. 1971.
- 033 20‡a**197007-‡a197101-‡b4364‡cS7‡b4364‡cL8‡b3804‡cN4
- 518 ##‡a**Recorded Apr. 9-10, 1975.
- 033 10‡a**19750409‡a19750410

518

518 **##****†a**Recorded Aug. 29-31, 1977, Smetana Hall, Prague (the 1st work) and Nov. 21-23, 1966, "Stadion" Studio, Brno (the 2nd).

033 **20****†a**19770829**†a**19770831**†b**6514**†c**P7

033 **20****†a**19661121**†a**19661123**†b**6514**†c**B8

518 **##****†a**Recorded Mar. 19-21 and Nov. 16-18, 1979, Kirche der Karlshöhe, Ludwigsburg.

033 **20****†a**19790319**†a**19791118**†b**6299**†c**L6

518 **##****†a**Sermons, delivered from the pulpit of Marble Collegiate Church, New York City.

033 **#0****†b**3804**†c**N4

518 **##****†a**Broadcast October 17, 1954 at 7:30 p.m. (PST).

033 **01****†a**195410171930-0700

[A television program.]

Notes giving information about countries of production and release are recorded in field 500 (General Note).

518 **##****†a**Filmed on location in Barcelona.

500 **##****†a**Opened in Madrid in Sept. 1966, released later in Italy in 1966, and in Austria in 1967 according to the AFI catalog F6, 1961-1970, p. 1064.

†d - Date of event

Date/time of event. May be in a controlled or uncontrolled form.

518 **##****†d**1997 April 22-23**†p**Paradise Studios, Sydney.

†o - Other event information

Other information that is related to the date or place of event.

518 **##****†o**Broadcast**†d**1954 October 17 at 7:30 p.m. (PST).

518 **##****†o**Filmed on location**†p**Rome and Venice**†d**1976 January through June.

†p - Place of event

Place of event. May be in a controlled or uncontrolled form.

518 **##****†d**2002 September 13**†p**Coolidge Auditorium, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C.

†0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

†2 - Source of term

MARC code that identifies the source of the term in **†p** (Place of event) when it is from a controlled list.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

†3 - Materials specified

Part of the described material to which the field applies.

518 **##****†3**Horse**†a**Cast in 1925.

[Data pertaining to a horse that is part of a group sculpture]

518 **##****†3**3rd work**†d**1981 November 25**†p**Neues Gewandhaus, Leipzig.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Field 518 ends with a period unless another mark of punctuation is present.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

|‡d - Date of event [NEW, 2010]

|‡o - Other event information [NEW, 2010]

|‡p - Place of event [NEW, 2010]

|‡0 - Record control number [NEW, 2010]

|‡2 - Source of term [NEW, 2010]

[blank page]

534 Original Version Note

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a	Main entry of original (NR)	‡o	Other resource identifier (R)
‡b	Edition statement of original (NR)	‡p	Introductory phrase (NR)
‡c	Publication, distribution, etc. of original (NR)	‡t	Title statement of original (NR)
‡e	Physical description, etc. of original (NR)	‡x	International Standard Serial Number (R)
‡f	Series statement of original (R)	‡z	International Standard Book Number (R)
‡k	Key title of original (R)	|‡3	Materials specified (NR)
‡l	Location of original (NR)	‡6	Linkage (NR)
‡m	Material specific details (NR)	‡8	Field link and sequence number (R)
‡n	Note about original (R)		

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Descriptive data for an original item when the main portion of the bibliographic record describes a reproduction of that item and the data differ. Details relevant to the original are given in field 534.

The resource being cataloged may either be a reproduction (e.g., scanned image, or PDF), or an edition that is similar enough that it could serve as a surrogate for the original (e.g., HTML).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Elements within subfields of field 534 may be separated by ISBD punctuation (e.g., series statement is enclosed in parentheses), but such punctuation is not necessarily needed at subfield boundaries.

■ INDICATORS

Both indicators are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Main entry of original**

534 ##‡pOriginally issued:‡aFrederick, John.‡tLuck.‡nPublished in: Argosy, 1919.

‡b - Edition statement of original

534 ##‡pOriginally published:‡cNew York : Harper & Row, 1972,‡b1st ed.

‡c - Publication, distribution, etc. of original

534 ##‡pOriginally published:‡cEnglewood Cliffs, N.J. : Prentice Hall, 1974.

534 ##‡pOriginal version:‡cMorrisville, Pa.? : T.M. Fowler, 1886 (s.l. : A.E. Downs, lith.).

534

‡e - Physical description, etc. of original

- 534 ##‡pReproduction of:‡tFemme nue en plein air,‡c1876.‡e1 art original : oil, col. ; 79 x 64 cm.‡lIn Louvre Museum, Paris.

‡f - Series statement of original

- 534 ##‡pReprint. Originally published:‡cOxford ; New York : Pergamon Press, 1963.‡f(International series of monographs on electromagnetic waves ; v. 4).

‡k - Key title of original

- 534 ##‡pOriginally published in serial form beginning 1981:‡kAmerican journal of theology & philosophy,‡x0194-3448.

‡l - Location of original

- 534 ##‡pOriginal:‡nWatercolor in the‡lPicture Division, Public Archives of Canada, Ottawa,‡emeasures 29.344 x 32.5 cm. (sheet).

‡m - Material specific details

Material specific data such as frequency or date/chronological designations. For **maps**, subfield ‡m contains the mathematical data information for the original.

- 534 ##‡pOriginally issued:‡cLondon, 1920,‡mat scale 1:50,000.

‡n - Note about original

If more than one note is needed, subfield ‡n is repeated.

- 534 ##‡pOriginal version:‡tA map of Virginia and Maryland.‡c[London] : Sold by Thomas Basset in Fleetstreet and Richard Criswell in St. Pauls Church yard, [1676?].‡nF. Lamb Sculp.‡nAppears in John Speed's atlas: The theatre of the Empire of Great Britain.
- 534 ##‡pOriginal version:‡nPrinted by "Vincent Brooks, Day & Son, Lith. London, W.C."‡nIssued in "Geographical Fun: being Humorous Outlines from Various Countries, by Aleph. London, 1869."

‡o - Other resource identifier

Numbers, codes, etc. used to identify an item when these identifiers are not appropriate in more specific subfields (e.g., subfield ‡x (ISSN) or subfield ‡z (ISBN)).

- 534 ##‡cp1987‡oFinlandia Records FACD357.

‡p - Introductory phrase

Introductory phrase that introduces the citation of the original version.

This subfield should always be present.

- 534 ##‡pOriginally published:‡cNew York : Garland, 1987.
- 534 ##‡pOriginal version:‡c[S.l. : s.n., 1832?] (New York : Mesier's Lith.).

‡t - Title statement of original

Entire title statement of the original.

- 534 ##‡pOriginally published:‡cBerlin :Eulenspiegel, c1978,‡tLieder zu Stücken.

‡x - International Standard Serial Number

- 534 ##‡pOriginally published as a section of:‡kNeology,‡x0228-913X.

‡z - International Standard Book Number

534 ##‡pOriginally published in English:‡cGarden City, N.Y. : Anchor Books, 1974-1978,‡nunder title:‡tAnchor atlas of world history.‡z0385061781 (v. 1)‡z0385133553 (v. 2).

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described material to which the field applies.

534 ##‡3vol. 2‡pReproducción de la edición de: ‡cMadrid : Casa Editorial Hernando, 1924.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Field 534 ends with a period unless another mark of punctuation is present.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 1 - Specifies presence of series statement on original [OBSOLETE, 1984] (BK MP MU VM SE)

This first indicator definition was made obsolete when AACR 2 changes no longer required a separate series of the original note for reproductions. The defined values were: 0 (Note exclude series of original); 1 (Note includes series of original). Records created since that change contain a # meaning *undefined* in this position.

‡o - Other resource identifier [NEW, 2008]

‡3 - Materials specified [NEW, 2009]

[blank page]

588 Source of Description Note

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Source of description note (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information used for tracking and controlling the metadata contained in the record. It includes general and specific source of description notes that are especially of interest to other catalogers.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Source of description note**

Note containing administrative information about the record, such as source of description or latest issue consulted.

- 588 ##‡a**Cannot determine the relationship to Bowling illustrated, also published in New York, 1952-58.‡5DLC
- 588 ##‡a**Publication to be resumed by F&W Publications, Inc.in Oct. 2009.‡5EZB
- 588 ##‡a**Description based on: Vol. 2, no. 2 (Feb. 1984); title from cover.
- 588 ##‡a**Latest issue consulted: 2001.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: Control Subfields.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: Control Subfields.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: Control Subfields.

[blank page]

700 Added Entry-Personal Name

(R)

First Indicator

- Type of personal name entry element
- 0 Forename
 - 1 Surname
 - 3 Family name

Second Indicator

- Type of added entry
- # No information provided
 - 2 Analytical entry

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|--|--|
| ‡a Personal name (NR) | ‡o Arranged statement for music (NR) |
| ‡b Numeration (NR) | ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R) |
| ‡c Titles and other words associated with a name (R) | ‡q Fuller form of name (NR) |
| ‡d Dates associated with a name (NR) | ‡r Key for music (NR) |
| ‡e Relator term (R) | ‡s Version (NR) |
| ‡f Date of a work (NR) | ‡t Title of a work (NR) |
| ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR) | ‡u Affiliation (NR) |
| ‡h Medium (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡0 Authority record control number (R) |
| ‡j Attribution qualifier (R) | ‡3 Materials specified (NR) |
| ‡k Form subheading (R) | ‡4 Relator code (R) |
| ‡l Language of a work (NR) | ‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR) |
| ‡m Medium of performance for music (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡n Number of part/section of a work (R) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Added entry in which the entry element is a personal name.

Added entries are assigned according to various cataloging rules to give access to the bibliographic record from personal name headings which may not be more appropriately assigned as 600 (Subject Added Entry-Personal Name) or 800 (Series Added Entry-Personal Name) fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 700 field are given in the *X00 Personal Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Type of added entry**

Distinguishes between an analytical entry and no information provided.

- No information provided

Used when the added entry is not for an analytic or when no information is provided as to whether the added entry is for an analytic.

- 100 1#**†a**Shlapentokh, Vladimir.
 245 10**†a**Soviet ideologies in the period of glasnot :**†b**responses to Brezhnev's stagnation /**†c**Vladimir Shlapentokh with the participation of Dmitry Shlapentokh.
 700 1#**†a**Shlapentokh, Dmitry.
 245 00**†a**Lorser Feitelson and Helen Lundeberg:**†b**a retrospective exhibition.
 700 1#**†a**Feitelson, Lorser,**†d**1898-
 700 1#**†a**Lundeberg, Helen,**†d**1908-
 100 10**†a**Gershkoff, Ira.
 245 14**†a**The Boston driver's handbook :**†b**the big dig edition /**†c**Ira Gershkoff and Richard Trachtman.
 500 ##**†a**Rev. ed. of: Wild in the streets, c1982.
 700 1#**†a**Gershkoff, Ira.**†t**Wild in the streets.

2 - Analytical entry

Item in hand contains the work that is represented by the added entry.

- 100 1#**†a**Bouma, Jelle.
 245 10**†a**Marcus Iunius Nypsus :**†b**Fluminis varatio, Limitis repositio : introduction, text, translation, and commentary /**†c**Jelle Bouma.
 700 12**†a**Nypsus, Marcus Iunius.**†t**Fluminis varatio.**†f**1993.
 700 12**†a**Nypsus, Marcus Iunius.**†t**Limitis repositio.**†f**1993.

■ EXAMPLES

- 700 1#**†a**Jung, C. G.**†q**(Carl Gustav),**†d**1875-1961.
 700 1#**†a**Walter, Johannes.**†4**prf
 700 1#**†a**Jefferson, Thomas,**†d**1743-1826,**†e**former owner.**†5**MH
 700 1#**†a**Weber, Lucas.**†4**egr
 700 12**†a**Hills, John,**†c**surveyor.**†t**Sketch of Allens town, June 1778.**†f**1976.
 700 12**†a**Rossini, Gioacchino,**†d**1792-1868.**†t**Mosè in Egitto.**†p**Dal tuo stellato soglio.
 700 12**†a**Mendelssohn-Bartholdy, Felix,**†d**1809-1847.**†t**Lieder ohne Worte,**†m**piano,**†n**op.62.**†n**No. 6.**†p**Frühlingslied.**†f**1970.
 700 1#**†a**Bizet, Georges,**†d**1869-1951.**†t**Carmen.**†k**Selections.**†f**1983.
 700 1#**†a**Ford, John,**†d**1894-1973,**†e**direction.
 700 1#**†a**Beethoven, Ludwig van,**†d**1770-1827.**†t**Sonatas,**†m**piano.**†k**Selections.
 700 12**†a**Debussy, Claude,**†d**1862-1918.**†t**Sonatas,**†m**flute, viola, harp.**†f**1986.
 700 1#**†a**Ries, Ferdinand,**†d**1784-1838.**†t**Octets,**†m**piano, winds, strings,**†n**op. 128,**†r**A major.
 700 0#**†a**Father Divine.
 700 0#**†a**R. M. B.
 700 1#**†a**Verez Peraza, Elena,**†d**1919-
 700 1#**†a**Salamin C., Marcel A.
 700 1#**†a**albn al-Mu`tazz, `Abd Allah,**†d**861-908.
 700 0#**†a**Spagna**†c**(Artist),**†d**ca. 1450-1528.
 700 0#**†a**Charles Edward,**†c**Prince, grandson of James II, King of England,**†d**1720-1788.
 700 1#**†a**Hecht, Ben,**†d**1893-1964,**†e**writing,**†e**direction,**†e**production.
 700 1#**†a**E., Sheila**†q**(Escovedo),**†d**1959-**†t**Dawn, the beginning.**†h**Sound recording.
 700 12**†a**Shakespeare, William,**†d**1564-1616.**†t**Selections.**†l**German.**†f**1982.
 700 1#**†a**Harrison, Tinsley Randolph,**†d**1900-**†t**Principles of internal medicine.**†s**9th ed.
 700 1#**†a**Herrman, Egbert.**†4**org
 700 1#**†a**Galway, James.**†4**prf**†4**cnd

710 Added Entry-Corporate Name

(R)

First Indicator

- Type of corporate name entry element
- 0 Inverted name
 - 1 Jurisdiction name
 - 2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator

- Type of added entry
- # No information provided
 - 2 Analytical entry

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|--|--|
| ‡a Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR) | ‡o Arranged statement for music (NR) |
| ‡b Subordinate unit (R) | ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R) |
| ‡c Location of meeting (NR) | ‡r Key for music (NR) |
| ‡d Date of meeting or treaty signing (R) | ‡s Version (NR) |
| ‡e Relator term (R) | ‡t Title of a work (NR) |
| ‡f Date of a work (NR) | ‡u Affiliation (NR) |
| ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡h Medium (NR) | ‡0 Authority record control number (R) |
| ‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡3 Materials specified (NR) |
| ‡k Form subheading (R) | ‡4 Relator code (R) |
| ‡l Language of a work (NR) | ‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR) |
| ‡m Medium of performance for music (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Added entry in which the entry element is a corporate name.

Added entries are assigned according to various cataloging rules to give access to the bibliographic record from corporate name headings which may not be more appropriately assigned as 610 (Subject Added Entry-Corporate Name) or 810 (Series Added Entry-Corporate Name) fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 710 field are given in the *X10 Corporate Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Type of added entry**

Distinguishes between an analytical entry and no information provided.

- No information provided

Used when the added entry is not for an analytic or when no information is provided as to whether the added entry is for an analytic.

- 245 00‡a**Carbohydrate chemistry.
- 260 ##‡a**London :‡bChemical Society.
- 710 2#‡a**Chemical Society (Great Britain)

710

- 100 2#~~1~~aKrishna Moorthy, K.~~1~~q(Krishma),~~1~~d1927-
245 10~~1~~aTechnology transfer :~~1~~bIndia's iron & steel: an ICRIER research study with experts' comments /~~1~~cK. Krishna Moorthy.
710 2#~~1~~aIndian Council for Research on International Economic Relations.
- 100 1#~~1~~aGotshaw, F. Marco.
245 10~~1~~aJourneyman's guide to the National Electrical Code /~~1~~cFurman Marco Gotshaw.
710 2#~~1~~aNational Fire Protection Association.~~1~~tNational electrical code (1993)

2 - Analytical entry

Item in hand contains the work that is represented by the added entry.

- 100 1#~~1~~aFernandex, Perfecto V.
245 10~~1~~aPrimer on labor law, 1982-92/~~1~~cby Perfecto V. Fernandez.
500 ##~~1~~aIncludes text of the Philippines labor relations law.
710 12~~1~~aPhilippines.~~1~~tLabor code of the Philippines.~~1~~nBook 5,~~1~~pLabor relations.~~1~~f1981.

■ EXAMPLES

- 710 1#~~1~~aMinnesota.~~1~~bConstitutional Convention~~1~~d(1857 :~~1~~gRepublican)
710 2#~~1~~aHerbert E. Budek Films and Slides (Firm)
710 1#~~1~~aUnited States.~~1~~bArmy Map Service.~~1~~tEastern United States 1:250,000.
710 1#~~1~~aFrance.~~1~~tTreaties, etc.~~1~~gPoland,~~1~~d1948 Mar. 2.~~1~~kProtocols, etc.,~~1~~d1951 Mar. 6.
710 1#~~1~~aCanada.~~1~~kTreaties, etc.
710 2#~~1~~aNew Orleans Blue Serenaders.~~1~~4prf
710 2#~~1~~aWGBH (Television station : Boston, Mass.)
710 2#~~1~~aHallmark Collection (Library of Congress)~~1~~5DLC
710 2#~~1~~aBridgewater Library,~~1~~eformer owner.~~1~~5NjP
710 1#~~1~~aAlgeria.~~1~~tTreaties, etc.~~1~~gEngland and Wales,~~1~~d1682 Apr. 20.
710 22~~1~~aCatholic Church.~~1~~tMass, 33rd Sunday of ordinary time (Chant).~~1~~f1979.
710 22~~1~~aCatholic Church.~~1~~bPope (1958-1963 : John XXIII).~~1~~tMater et magistra.~~1~~fFrench.~~1~~kSelections.~~1~~f1963.
710 1#~~1~~aUnited States.~~1~~tConstitution.~~1~~p13th Amendment.
710 1#~~1~~aEcuador.~~1~~tPlan Nacional de Desarrollo, 1980-1984.~~1~~nParte 1,~~1~~pGrandes objetivos nacionales.~~1~~fEnglish.

711 Added Entry-Meeting Name

(R)

First Indicator

- Type of meeting name entry element
- 0 Inverted name
 - 1 Jurisdiction name
 - 2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator

- Type of added entry
- # No information provided
 - 2 Analytical entry

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|--|---|
| ‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR) | ‡p Name of part/section of a work (R) |
| ‡c Location of meeting (NR) | ‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR) |
| ‡d Date of meeting (NR) | ‡s Version (NR) |
| ‡e Subordinate unit (R) | ‡t Title of a work (NR) |
| ‡f Date of a work (NR) | ‡u Affiliation (NR) |
| ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡h Medium (NR) | ‡0 Authority record control number (R) |
| ‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡3 Materials specified (NR) |
| ‡j Relator term (R) | ‡4 Relator code (R) |
| ‡k Form subheading (R) | ‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR) |
| ‡l Language of a work (NR) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Added entry in which the entry element is a meeting name.

Added entries are assigned according to various cataloging rules to give access to the bibliographic record from meeting or conference name headings which may not be more appropriately assigned as 611 (Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name) or 811 (Series Added Entry-Meeting Name) fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 711 field, are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Type of added entry**

Distinguishes between an analytical entry and no information provided.

- No information provided

Used when the added entry is not for an analytic or when no information is provided as to whether the added entry is for an analytic.

245 **00‡a**Neoplasm and gnosticism /**‡c**Richard T. Wallis, editor, Jay Bregman, associate editor.

500 **##‡a**Papers presented at the 6th international conference of the International Society for Neoplatonic Studies, entitled International Conference on Neoplatonism and Gnosticism, held at University of Oklahoma, Mar. 18-21, 1984.

- 711 **2#**International Conference on Neoplatonism and Gnosticism**d**(1984 **:c**University of Oklahoma)
- 111 **2#**International Aerospace and Ground Conference on Lightning and Static Electricity**d**(1988 **:c**Oklahoma City, Okla.)
- 245 **00**Addendum to the Proceedings of the 1988 International Aerospace and Ground Conference on Lightning and Static Electricity **:b**April 19-22, 1988, Oklahoma City, Oklahoma, USA.
- 711 **2#**International Aerospace and Ground Conference on Lightning and Static Electricity**d**(1988 **:c**Oklahoma, City, Okla.)**.tt**Proceedings of the 1988 International Aerospace and Ground Conference on Lightning and Static Electricity.

2 - Analytical entry

Item being cataloged contains the work that is represented by the added entry.

- 245 **00**International bilateral dialogues **:b**1965-1991 : list of commissions, meetings, themes, and reports **/c**compiled by Günther Gassman. Report / Fifth Forum on Bilateral Conversations.
- 711 **22**Forum on Bilateral Conversations**n**(5th **:d**1990 **:c**Budapest, Hungary)**.tt**Report**.ff**1991.

■ EXAMPLES

- 711 **2#**Van Cliburn International Piano Competition.
- 711 **2#**Women and National Health Insurance Meeting**d**(1980 **:c**Washington, D.C.)
- 711 **2#**Pan American Games**n**(6th **:d**1971 **:c**Cali, Colombia)
- 711 **22**United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea**n**(1st **:d**1958 **:c**Geneva, Switzerland)**.tt**Proceedings**.tk**Selections**.ff**1960.
- 711 **2#**Mostly Mozart Festival**.te**Orchestra.
- 711 **0#**Smith (David Nichol) Memorial Seminar.
- 711 **2#**Theatertreffen Berlin (Festival)
- 711 **2#**Conference on Philosophy and Its History**d**(1983 **:c**University of Lancaster)
- 711 **2#**Olympic Games**n**(21st **:d**1976 **:c**Montreal, Quebec)**.te**Organizing Committee**.te**Arts and Culture Program**.te**Visual Arts Section.
- 711 **22**Council of Trent**d**(1545-1563)**.tt**Canones et decreta**.tl**English**.tk**Selections**.ff**1912.
- 711 **2#**Asian Games**n**(9th **:d**1982 **:c**Delhi, India)

730 Added Entry-Uniform Title

(R)

First Indicator

Nonfiling characters
0-9 Number of nonfiling characters

Second Indicator

Type of added entry
No information provided
2 Analytical entry

Subfield Codes

‡a Uniform title (NR)	‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
‡d Date of treaty signing (R)	‡r Key for music (NR)
‡f Date of a work (NR)	‡s Version (NR)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)	‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡h Medium (NR)	‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR)
‡i Relationship information (R)	‡0 Authority record control number (R)
‡k Form subheading (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡l Language of a work (NR)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR)
‡m Medium of performance for music (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡n Number of part/section of a work (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Uniform title, a related or an analytical title that is controlled by an authority file or list, used as an added entry.

Added entries are assigned according to various cataloging rules to give access to the bibliographic record from headings which may not be more appropriately assigned as 630 (Subject Added Entry-Uniform Title) or 830 (Series Added Entry-Uniform Title) fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 730 field are given in the *X30 Uniform Titles-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Type of added entry**

Distinguishes between an analytical entry and no information provided.

- No information provided

Added entry is not for an analytic or when no information is provided as to whether the added entry is for an analytic.

- 245** **00‡a**Chemical pricing patterns :**‡b**comparisons of annual high and low prices for 1,250 key chemicals and related process materials for the years of 1952...
- 500** **##‡a**At head of title: Oil, paint and drug reporter.
- 730** **0#‡a**Oil, paint and drug reporter.

2 - Analytical entry

Item in hand contains the work that is represented by the added entry.

- 100 1#~~1~~aBarwise, Jon.
 245 14~~1~~aThe language of first-order logic :~~1~~bincluding the Macintosh program Tarski's world
 4.0 /~~1~~cJon Barwise and John Etchemendy.
 730 02~~1~~aTarski's world.

■ EXAMPLES

- 730 0#~~1~~aBible.~~1~~pO.T.~~1~~pJudges V.~~1~~IGerman~~1~~sGrether.
 730 0#~~1~~aIndex librorum prohibitorum.~~1~~f1570.~~1~~5[NUC symbol]
 730 0#~~1~~aActualités-Service.~~1~~nNo 306 (Supplement 1)
 730 0#~~1~~aCancionero musical de Segovia.~~1~~kSelections.~~1~~f1980.
 730 0#~~1~~aGone with the wind (Motion picture)
 730 0#~~1~~aFrankfurt heute.~~1~~hMotion picture.
 730 0#~~1~~a20/20 (Television program)
 730 0#~~1~~aFabrication of biteplane.~~1~~nPart 1,~~1~~pWaxing on mounted cards.
- 245 00~~1~~aBTL.
 580 ##~~1~~aSuppl. to: Weinwirtschaft, 1981-1982; Weinwirtschaft. Technik, and Weinwirtschaft.
 Markt, 1983; Baubedarf Manager, Farbenfachgeschäft, and Getränke Revue, 1983-
 730 0#~~1~~aWeinwirtschaft.
 730 0#~~1~~aWeinwirtschaft.~~1~~pTechnik.
 730 0#~~1~~aWeinwirtschaft.~~1~~pMarkt.
 730 0#~~1~~aBaubedarf Manager.
 730 0#~~1~~aFarbenfachgeschäft.
 730 0#~~1~~aGetränke Revue.
 772 1#~~1~~tWeinwirtschaft~~1~~w(DLC)###83644948~~1~~w(OCOLC)9345710
 772 1#~~1~~tWeinwirtschaft. Technik~~1~~x0723-1369~~1~~w(DLC)###83644949~~1~~w(OCOLC)9345574
 772 1#~~1~~aWeinwirtschaft. Markt~~1~~w(DLC)###83644950~~1~~w(OCOLC)9345548
[One publication that is a supplement to others.]
 772 0#~~1~~aBaubedarf Manager
 772 1#~~1~~tFarbenfachgeschäft
 772 1#~~1~~aGetränke Revue~~1~~w(DLC)sn#91020150~~1~~w(OCOLC)9345710
- 245 00~~1~~aClient characteristic & population movement report for calendar year ...~~1~~pProbation
 subsidy / State of Washington, Department of Social and Health Services, Bureau of Juvenile
 Rehabilitation.
 580 ##~~1~~aAlso published in a quarterly edition: Client characteristic & population movement report
 for quarter ... Probation subsidy.
 730 0#~~1~~aClient characteristic & population movement report for quarter ...~~1~~pProbation subsidy.
 775 1#~~1~~tClient characteristic & population movement report for quarter ... Probation
 subsidy~~1~~w(OCOLC)1258055
*[A publication is published in more than one edition; an added entry is made for the other
 edition(s).]*
- 245 00~~1~~aForeign affairs bibliography.
 580 ##~~1~~aBased upon the bibliographical notes appearing quarterly in: Foreign affairs.
 730 0#~~1~~aForeign affairs (Council on Foreign Relations)
 787 1#~~1~~tForeign affairs (Council on Foreign Relations)
[A publication is related in a non-specific manner to another publication.]

- 245 00#1aLektüre Magazin.
 580 ##1aIssued Jan.-June 1981 with: Bücherkommentare, v. 30, no. 1-6.
 730 0#1aBücherkommentare.
 777 1#1tBücherkommentare1gJan. 1981-June 1981
[One publication is issued within another.]
- 245 04#1aThe People speak newsletter.
 500 ##1aA summary of a radio program, "People speak."
 730 0#1aPeople speak (Radio program)
[Names of radio or television programs.]
- 130 0#1aDomestic engineering (1889)
 580 ##1aVols. for June 27, 1931-Mar. 1935, Mar. 1941-1966 include the section: Automatic heat and air conditioning (varies); also issued separately Sept. 1933-<June 1940>
 730 02#1aAutomatic heat and air conditioning.
 777 1#1tAutomatic heat and air conditioning
[A regularly issued part with a distinctive title for which an added entry is made.]
- 100 1#1aBarwise, Jon.
 245 14#1aThe language of first-order logic :#bincluding the Macintosh program Tarski's world 4.0 /#cJon Barwise and John Etchemendy.
 730 02#1aTarski's world.#f1993
- 730 0#1a60 minutes (Television program)
 730 02#1aBonn Convention#d(1952).#f1980.
 730 0#1aEconomics library selections.#nSeries I,#pNew books in economics.
 730 02#1aGod save the king;#oarr.#f1982.

[blank page]

76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information

760 Main Series Entry (NR)	775 Other Edition Entry (R)
762 Subseries Entry (R)	776 Additional Physical Form Entry (R)
765 Original Language Entry (R)	777 Issued With Entry (R)
767 Translation Entry (R)	780 Preceding Entry (R)
770 Supplement/Special Issue Entry (R)	785 Succeeding Entry (R)
772 Supplement Parent Entry (R)	786 Date Source Entry (R)
773 Host Item Issue Entry (R)	787 Other Relationship Entry (R)
774 Constituent Unit Entry (R)	

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second indicator

- 780** Type of relationship
- 0 Continues
 - 1 Continues in part
 - 2 Supersedes
 - 3 Supersedes in part
 - 4 Formed by the union of ... and ...
 - 5 Absorbed
 - 6 Absorbed in part
 - 7 Separated from

Second Indicator

760-777, 786-787 Display constant controller

- # *[Field-related phrase]*
- 0 Parent *[772 only]*
- 8 No display constant generated

Second indicator

- 785** Type of relationship
- 0 Continued by
 - 1 Continued in part by
 - 2 Superseded by
 - 3 Superseded in part by
 - 4 Absorbed by
 - 5 Absorbed in part by
 - 6 Split into ... and ...
 - 7 Merged with ... to form ...
 - 8 Changed back to

Subfield Codes

Control subfields

- ‡3 Materials specified (NR) *[773 only]*
- ‡4 Relationship code (R)
- ‡6 Linkage (NR)
- ‡7 Control subfield (NR)
 - /0 Type of main entry heading
 - /1 Form of name
 - /2 Type of record
 - /3 Bibliographic level
- ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

Descriptive information

- ‡a Main entry heading (NR)
- ‡b Edition (NR)
- ‡c Qualifying information (NR) *[all except 773]*
- ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR)
- ‡g Related parts (R)
- ‡h Physical description (NR)
- ‡i Relationship information (R)
- ‡j Period of content (R) *[786 only]*

- ‡k Series data for related item (R) *[all except 760 and 762]*
- ‡m Material specific details (NR)
- ‡n Note (R)
- ‡o Other item identifier (R)
- ‡p Abbreviated title (NR) *[773 and 786 only]*
- ‡q Enumeration and first page (NR) *[773 only]*
- ‡s Uniform title (NR)
- ‡t Title (NR)

Numbers/codes

- ‡e Language code (NR) *[775 only]*
- ‡f Country code (NR) *[775 only]*
- ‡r Report number (R) *[all except 760, 762, and 777]*
- ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) *[all except 760, 762, and 777]*
- ‡v Source contribution (NR) *[786 only]*
- ‡w Record control number (R)
- ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR)
- ‡y CODEN designation (NR)
- ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) *[all except 760, 762, and 777]*

76X-78X

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information that identifies other related bibliographic items. Each of the linking entry fields specifies a different relationship between the **target** item described by the record and a **related item**. These relationships fall into three classes: 1) related items that assist the user in continuing to search but are not physically required to obtain the target item (e.g., former entries for continuing resources, translations of the target item); 2) related items that have to be obtained physically in order to use the target item (e.g., the **host** item for a **component part**: a journal issue containing a specific article); 3) related items that are **constituent units** of a larger whole (e.g., the individual photographs contained in a visual material collection). The linking entry fields are designed to generate a note in a display of the record in which they appear. They can also provide machine linkage between the bibliographic record for the target item and the bibliographic record for the related item, if the related item is covered by a separate record; and/or facilitate indexing.

■ TERMS USED IN LINKING ENTRY FIELDS

Target Item

Bibliographic item that is the principal or primary unit covered by the description for which the record was constructed. The target item is the item to which the information in character positions 06 (Type of record) and 07 (Bibliographic level) of the Leader, and field 245 (Title Statement) apply.

Related Item

Bibliographic item that has a chronological, horizontal (different versions), or vertical (hierarchical) relationship with a target item, and for which the linking entry field is formulated.

Component Part

Bibliographic item that is physically part of another bibliographic item such that the retrieval of the part is dependent on the physical identification and location of the host item (e.g., a chapter in a book, an article in a journal). (Field 774)

Constituent Unit

Bibliographic item that is part of another item. The constituent unit is physically separate from the item of which it is considered a part. (Fields 770, 774)

Host Item

Bibliographic item that either physically contains (as in the case of the component part), or bibliographically includes (as in the case of a constituent unit), the subpart that is the target item for the record. For example, if a record describes a journal article, the host is the journal; if a record describes one digital item in a set, the host is the set. (Fields 772, 773)

Chronological Relationship

Relationship in time between bibliographic items (e.g., the relation of a serial to its predecessors and successors).

Horizontal Relationship

Relationship between versions of a bibliographic item in different languages, formats, media, etc.

Vertical Relationship

Hierarchical relationship of the whole to its parts and the parts to the whole (e.g., a journal article to the journal, collective title of conference proceedings to individual titles of contributions, subseries to main entry series).

■ RECORD LINKS AND NOTES

Linking Entry Fields (fields 760-787)

Fields carry descriptive data concerning the related item, the control number for the record of the related item, or both. Minimal content designation is provided for the data concerning the related item that is used in the linking entry fields. For data operations requiring fuller content designation such as indexing and sorting, subfield ‡w (control number for the related item) allows the system to follow that link to the related record to obtain fully content-designated data. Moreover, when present, the coded data in control subfield ‡7 allows some types of indexing without reference to the actual related record. The value used in the first indicator position of a linking entry field determines whether a note is to be generated from the the linking entry field or from field 580.

In fields 76X-78X the general resource to resource relationship is indicated by the choice of tag with some more specific relationships indicated by indicators in fields 772, 780, and 785. Subfield ‡i is used to indicate relationships not expressed in the tag or indicator, thus is appropriate for more specific relationship designations. If it is desirable to make the specific relationship information available in a coded form, subfield ‡4 is used.

Linking Entry Complexity Note (field 580)

Linking Entry Fields are designed to support generation of a note concerning the related item in a display of the record for the target item. When the relationship is too complex to be expressed using relationship information expressed by the tag indicator, or ‡i or ‡4 subfields, and the data from the linking entry field or the linked record, the note is recorded in the Linking Entry Complexity Note field. When used, this field appears in addition to any relevant 760-787 linking entry field, and no note is generated from the linking entry field.

Added Entries (fields 700-730)

When an added entry is desired for a title used in a linking field, the added entry is recorded in the appropriate 700-730 field. Linking fields are not intended to take the place of added entries. Likewise, an added entry in field 700-730 does not take the place of a linking field, as it cannot cause a note to be generated or carry a record link.

Component Parts/Constituent Units

Linking entry field 773 (Host Item Entry) is used to link the record for a component part that is an integral part of another item to the record for the other item. For example, in records for journal articles, it contains an identification of the journal. The exact location of the article in the journal is recorded in subfield ‡g of field 773. The record for the host item or any larger bibliographic unit may include information about constituent units, recorded in the repeatable field 774 (Constituent Unit Entry). Information about each constituent would be recorded in a separate occurrence of field 774.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Note controller

Whether or not a display note is to be generated from the field.

0 - Display note

Note is to be generated from the data in the linking entry field (or from the related record identified in the field).

780 00‡tAmerican journal of religious psychology and education

76X-78X

1 - Do not display note

Note is not to be generated from the data in the linking entry field (or from the related record). Value 1 is used when the display constant associated with the linking field does not adequately describe the relationship. In this case, a note for display is recorded in field 580. The 760-787 field is recorded to provide the machine linkage and field 580 is used for display.

Second Indicator - Display constant controller [all except 780 and 785]

Controls display constants preceding the data in linking entry fields 760-777 and 786-787. For the print constants, see the description of the second indicator in the sections for each linking entry field.

- [Field-related phrase]

0 - Parent [772 only]

8 - No display constant generated

Second Indicator - Type of relationship [780]

Identifies the type of relationship in field 780 only. See the description under the section for field 780 (Preceding Entry). For that field, the display constants are specified in *Input Conventions*.

0 - Continues

1 - Continues in part

2 - Supersedes

3 - Supersedes in part

4 - Formed by the union of ... and ...

5 - Absorbed

6 - Absorbed in part

7 - Separated from

Second Indicator - Type of relationship [785]

Identifies the type of relationship in field 785. See the description under the section for field 785 (Succeeding Entry). For that field, the display constants are specified in *Input Conventions*.

0 - Continued by

1 - Continued in part by

2 - Superseded by

3 - Superseded in part by

4 - Absorbed by

5 - Absorbed in part by

6 - Split into ... and ...

7 - Merged with ... to form ...

8 - Changed back to

■ SUBFIELD CODES

As a general rule, each subfield defined for the linking entry fields corresponds to a field or field block that would be used to describe the related item in a separate record. A separate bibliographic record for the related item may or may not exist. For example, subfield †a (Main entry heading), corresponds to the 1XX (Main Entries) block; subfield †t (Title) corresponds to field 245 (Title Statement), and so on. The rules and practices applied to formulating the data in the linking entry fields are usually the same as would be followed for formulating the data about a related item in a separate bibliographic record except that the information provided need not be as complete. The fullness of the bibliographic information about the related item recorded in the linking entry fields should be based on the intended use of the links. When the related item is represented by a separate bibliographic record, recording only the basic bibliographic details (e.g., title, and relationship information) is usually sufficient.

‡a - Main entry heading

Main entry heading data (without the content designators) from field 100 (Main Entry-Personal Name), 110 (Main Entry-Corporate Name), or 111 (Main Entry-Meeting Name) in the related record. Individual components of the name or uniform title are not recorded in a separate subfield as they would be in a 1XX field.

Related record

100 1#‡aMellor, Alec.
245 10‡aStrange masonic stories

Linking entry

775 0#‡aMellor, Alec.**‡t**Strange masonic stories**‡e**eng

‡b - Edition

Name of the edition from field 250 (Edition Statement) of the related record.

Related record

245 04‡aThe Wall Street journal.
250 ##‡aSouthwest ed.

Linking entry

775 0#‡tWall Street journal**‡b**Southwest ed.

‡c - Qualifying information [all except 773]

Data needed to distinguish between two titles. This information is generally parenthetical information supplied by the cataloger. In pre-AACR 2 records for **serials**, subfield ‡c contains the information usually taken from subfield ‡b (Qualifying information) of field 222 (Key Title).

‡d - Place, publisher, and date of publication

Publication information from subfields ‡a, ‡b, and/or ‡c of field 260 (Publication, Distribution, etc. (Imprint)) of the related record.

‡e - Language code [775 only]

Language code from field 008/35-37 (Language) of the related record.

Related record

008/35-37 fre

Linking entry

775 1#‡tDiscours du budget**‡e**fre

‡f - Country code [775 only]

Country code from field 008/15-17 (Place of publication, production, or execution) of the related record.

‡g - Related parts

Data that indicates the specific piece or pieces of the related item that are involved in the relationship with the resource described in the 1XX/245 of the record, such as dates and volumes. The related parts information includes the location of a component part in a target item.

772 1#‡tDevelopmental biology**‡x**0012-1606**‡g**1972-1974
773 0#‡tHorizon**‡g**Vol. 17, no. 98 (Feb. 1948), p. 78-159

‡h - Physical description

Physical description of the related item.

‡i - Relationship information

Designation of a relationship between the resource described in the 76X-78X field and the resource described in the 1XX/245 of the record. This may be in the form of uncontrolled text or a controlled text

76X-78X

value. The second indicator contains value 8 (No display constant generated) except in fields 780 and 785 when data in this subfield is intended to be displayed. The data in subfield ‡i can be displayed preceding the other data contained in the field.

- 100** 1#‡aVerdi, Giuseppe, ‡d1813-1901.
245 10‡aOtello :‡bin full score /‡cGiuseppe Verdi.
700 1#‡iLibretto based on (work)‡aShakespeare, William,‡d1564-1616.‡tOtello.
787 08‡ireproduction of (manifestation)‡aVerdi, Giuseppe, ‡d1813-1901.‡tOtello.‡dMilan: Ricordi, c1913

User display

Verdi, Giuseppe, 1813-1901. Otello : in full score / Giuseppe Verdi
Reproduction of Verdi, Giuseppe, 1813-1901. Otello. Milan : Ricordi, c1913
Libretto based on Shakespeare, William, \$d 1564-1616. Othello.

- 245** 00‡a136th Street, southeastern section of the Bronx.
300 ##‡a11 slides.
774 0i‡iComponent item: ‡oNYDA.1993.010.00132.‡n[DIAPimage].‡tView SE from Mill Brook Houses on rooftop on Cypress Ave. between 136th St. and 137th St.,‡d93/05

‡j - Period of content [786 only]

Beginning, and if appropriate, the ending date(s) of the content of the related item. The information is recorded according to *Representation of dates and times* (ISO 8601). The date requires 8 numeric characters in the pattern *yyyymmdd* (4 for the year, 2 for the month, and 2 for the day). The time requires 8 numeric characters in the pattern *hhmmss.f* (2 for the hour, 2 for the minute, 2 for the second, and 2 for a decimal fraction of the second, including the decimal point). The 24-hour clock (00-23) is used. An indication of the basis on which the source time period of content information was determined is also recorded in this subfield.

‡k - Series data for related item [all except 760 and 762]

Series entry from the 4XX (Series Statement) or 8XX (Series Added Entry) of the related record. *Note:* The parentheses that enclose the series statement are not carried in the MARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the presence of subfield ‡k.

‡m - Material specific details

Material specific information (e.g., for maps, the mathematical data information relating to the related item).

‡n - Note

Note about the related bibliographic item.

‡o - Other item identifier

Numbers, codes, etc. used to identify an item when these identifiers are not appropriate for one of the more specific subfields (e.g., subfield ‡z (ISBN)). Examples include item or accession numbers.

- 774** 00‡oNYDA.1993.010.00132‡n[DIAPimage].‡tView SE from Mill Brook Houses on rooftop on Cypress Ave. between 136th St. and 137th St.,‡d93/05

‡p - Abbreviated title [773 and 786 only]

Abbreviated title from field 210 (Abbreviated Title) of the related record.

‡q - Enumeration and first page [773 only]

Enumeration and pagination designations that are formed using the rules for the creation of the Enumeration and Location segments of the SIC1 (Serial Item and Contribution Identifier). These provide reference to the enumeration and first page data elements for the constituent unit of the host item described in the 773 field.

773 0#17nnas1tCalifornia journal.1gVol. 24, pt. B no. 9 (Sept. 1993), p. 235-481q24:B:9<235

1r - Report number [all except 760, 762, and 777]

Report number from field 088 (Report Number) of the related record.

1s - Uniform title

Title from field 240 (Uniform Title) or field 243 (Collective Uniform Title) of the related record. When subfield 1s is used in a linking field for related legal materials or translations, subfield 1t is usually also included in the linking field.

1t - Title

Title information from subfields 1a, 1f, 1g, 1k, 1n, and 1p of fields 130 (Main Entry - Uniform Title) and 245 (Title Statement) of the related record. Individual components of the title are not separately subfield coded. (Prior to 1981, subfield 1t was sometimes derived from subfield 1a of field 222 (Key Title) when the key title was present on the record.)

Related record

245 001aArmy, Navy, Air Force register.

580 ##1aMerged with: Army, Navy, Air Force journal, to form ...

Linking entry

785 171tArmy, Navy, Air Force journal

1u - Standard Technical Report Number [all except 760, 762, and 777]

Standard Technical Report Number from field 027 (Standard Technical Report Number) of the related record. *Note:* The initialism *STRN*: that precedes the number is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the presence of subfield 1u.

1v - Source contribution [786 only]

Brief statement identifying the information contributed by a source to a data set. It is used primarily with linking field 786 (Data Source Entry).

786 0#1aDefense Mapping Agency.1tReno, NV-CA west digital terrain elevation data1vData for reformatting to DEM format

1w - Record control number

System control number of the related record preceded by the MARC code, enclosed in parentheses, for the agency to which the control number applies. See Appendix I: *Organization Code Sources* for a listing of sources used in MARC 21 records.

780 001tTechniques of biochemical and biophysical morphology1w(DLC)###72000153#1w(OCOLC)1021945

780 001tReview of existential psychology & psychiatry1w(DLC)sf#77000170#

785 171tAdult correctional services in Canada1w(CaOONL)840790694E

1x - International Standard Serial Number

ISSN for a serial title from field 022 (International Standard Serial Number) in the related record. (The ISSN is an agency-assigned data element. ISSN's are assigned to serial publications by national centers under the auspices of the ISSN Network.) *Note:* The initialism *ISSN* that precedes the number is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the presence of subfield 1x.

245 001aAnnual law review /1cUniversity of Western Australia.

785 001tUniversity of Western Australia law review1x0042-03281w(OCOLC)1587621

76X-78X

‡y - CODEN designation

CODEN designation, a unique identifier for scientific and technical periodical titles, from field 030 (CODEN Designation) in the related record. *Note:* The acronym *CODEN* that precedes the number is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the presence of subfield ‡y.

780 00‡tIllinois journal of mathematics‡yJMTAW‡w(DLC)###59003745#

‡z - International Standard Book Number [all except 760, 762, and 777]

ISBN from field 020 (International Standard Book Number) in the related record. (The ISBN is an agency-assigned data element.) *Note:* The initialism *ISBN* that precedes the number is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the presence of subfield ‡z.

‡3 - Materials specified [773 only]

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

‡4 - Relationship code

Designation in coded form of a relationship between the resource described in the 76X-78X field and the resource described in the 1XX/245 of the record.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡7 - Control subfield

Up to four character positions (designated 0, 1, etc.) that indicate special characteristics of the linked entry. Because the definitions of the codes in subfield ‡7 are dependent on the character position in which they occur, the coding of any character position mandates that each preceding character position contains a code or the fill character (|); succeeding character positions need not be used. For example, if position 0 and 1 are not applicable but position 2 is applicable, then position 0 and 1 contain code n (Not applicable) or a fill character.

/0 - Type of main entry heading

Code indicating either the type of name contained in subfield ‡a or the uniform title in subfield ‡t. The codes correspond to the 1XX tag in the record for the related item: 100 (Main Entry-Personal Name), 110 (Main Entry-Corporate Name), 111 (Main Entry-Meeting Name), and 130 (Main Entry-Uniform Title). Code n is used when no other codes apply.

p Personal name
c Corporate name
m Meeting name
u Uniform title

/1 - Form of name

Code indicating the form of the name contained in subfield ‡a. The code corresponds to the value of the first indicator in the 1XX field in the record for the related item, and must thus be interpreted in conjunction with the value in position 0.

If position 0 = p (Personal name), position 1 contains one of the following codes:

0 Forename
1 Surname
3 Family name

If position 0 = c (Corporate name) or m (Meeting name), position 1 contains one of the following codes:

- 0 Inverted name
- 1 Jurisdiction name
- 2 Name in direct order

If position 0 = u (Uniform title) or n (Not applicable), position 1 contains:

- n Not applicable

/2 - Type of record

Code indicating the type of record for the related item. The code corresponds to the code in Leader/06 (Type of record) in the record for the related item.

- a Language material
- c Notated music
- d Manuscript notated music
- e Cartographic material
- f Manuscript cartographic material
- g Projected medium
- i Nonmusical sound recording
- j Musical sound recording
- k Two-dimensional nonprojectable graphic
- m Computer file
- o Kit
- p Mixed material
- r Three-dimensional artifact or naturally occurring object
- t Manuscript language material

/3 - Bibliographic level from Leader/07 of related record

Code indicating the bibliographic level of the related item. The code corresponds to that in Leader/07 in the record for the related item.

- a Monographic component part
- c Serial component part
- d Collection
- e Subunit
- i Integrating resource
- m Monograph/item
- s Serial

772 1#17unas11Post boy (London, England)

773 0#17p1am1aDesio, Ardito, 1897-11Geographical features of the Karakorum.1dMilano : ISMEO, 1991

18 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Establishing a link - Links are established reciprocally in related bibliographic records. A linking entry field links to a related item which may be represented in a file by a record. When related records exist, each record may contain a corresponding linking entry. In some cases the reciprocal linking entries use the same field tags, in others they have corresponding field tags. The reciprocal field tags are as shown below:

76X-78X

<u>Record</u>	<u>Related record</u>
760 (Main Series Entry)	762 (Subseries Entry)
765 (Original Language Entry)	767 Translation Entry)
770 Supplement/Spec. Issue Entry)	772 (Supplement Parent Entry)
773 (Host Item Entry)	774 (Constituent Unit Entry)
775 (Other Edition)	775 (Other Edition)
776 (Additional Physical Form)	776 (Additional Physical Form)
777 (Issued With Entry)	777 (Issued With Entry)
780 (Preceding Entry)	785 (Succeeding Entry)
787 (Other Relationship Entry)	787 (Other Relationship Entry)

Definitions of the second indicator values for reciprocal fields 780 and 785 are also reciprocal as shown below:

<u>2nd indicator of 780</u>	<u>2nd indicator of 785</u>
0 Continues	0 Continued by
1 Continues in part	1 Continued in part by
2 Supersedes	2 Superseded by
3 Supersedes in part	3 Superseded in part by
4 Formed by union of... and...	4 Absorbed by
5 Absorbed	5 Absorbed in part by
6 Absorbed in part	6 Split into... and...
7 Separated from	7 Merged with... to form...
-----	8 Changed back to...

Punctuation - Ends with the punctuation contained in the 1XX field of the related record. The linking entry fields do not end in a mark of punctuation unless an abbreviation, initial/letter, or other data that ends with a period is present, or subfield ‡a is the last subfield.

780 00‡tJournal of the Australian Mathematical Society. Series A, Pure mathematics
780 00‡aAssociation of American Library Schools.‡tDirectory of American Library Schools‡w(DLC)sc#84007016#

Order of subfields - Control subfields should be given in the following order when more than one is present: subfield ‡6, then subfield ‡3, and subfield ‡7 recorded last.

Initial articles - Initial articles in the entry of the related record are omitted in linking entry fields *except* in entries where the intent is to file on the initial article.

Related record

245 04‡aThe Journal of microbiology.

Linking entry

780 00‡tJournal of microbiology

Related record

110 1#‡aEl Salvador.‡bDirección General de Estadística.
245 10‡aResumen estadístico de la República de El Salvador.

Linking entry

780 01‡aEl Salvador. Dirección General de Estadística.‡tResumen estadístico de la República de El Salvador

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Fields 760-787 originally were defined only in the serials specifications and contained information describing relationships between bibliographic items that did not necessarily facilitate indexing or provide a machine link to the record for the related item. In 1977, subfield ‡w (Record control number) was defined in these fields to facilitate linkage among records within a given system and across systems.

In 1981, the following fields were validated for the books specifications and subfield ‡r was defined to permit linkage through report numbers of technical report materials: 765, 767, 770, 772, 775, 776, 780, 785, and 787.

When the record-linking technique was fully developed in 1982, field 773 (Host Item Entry) was defined for all MARC specifications to accommodate the cataloging of component parts. The definitions of several other subfields were either broadened or more narrowly defined at that time.

786 Data Source Entry [NEW, 1995]

787 Nonspecific Relationship Entry [RENAMED, 2009]

‡c - Place of publication [REDEFINED, 1976] [SE]

‡d - Dates of publication [OBSOLETE, 1976] [SE]

‡g - Relationship dates [REDEFINED, 1982]

Subfield ‡g was broadened in 1982 as part of the record-linking specifications, specifically to include the location information of a component part in a host item.

‡b - Edition [NEW, 1982]

‡d - Place, publisher, and date of publication [NEW, 1982]

‡g - Relationship information [RENAMED, 2009]

‡i - Display text [REDEFINED, 2009]

‡k - Series data for related item [NEW, 1982]

‡s - Uniform title [NEW, 1982]

‡q - Parallel title [OBSOLETE, 1990]

‡q - Enumeration and first page [NEW, 2003]

‡4 - Relationship code [NEW, 2009]

‡7 - Control subfield [NEW, 1982]

Prior to 1982, edition statements and publication statements were recorded in subfield ‡c, and uniform titles were recorded in subfield ‡t.

‡7/1 - Form of name

2 Multiple surname [OBSOLETE]

Use of the Form of name code 2 (Multiple surname) was made obsolete when code 1 (Single surname) was redefined as *surname* to be used for headings with either single or multiple surnames.

‡7/2 - Type of record

b Archival and manuscripts control [OBSOLETE]

‡7/3 - Bibliographic level from Leader/07 of related record

p Pamphlet [OBSOLETE] [CANMARC only]

[blank page]

760 Main Series Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Main series
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| ‡g Related parts (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡i Relationship information (R) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡n Note (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning the related main series when the target item is a subseries (vertical relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory phrase *Main series: or Subseries of:* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

Recorded *in addition to* any other series information in the record.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 760 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Main series

Used to generate the display constant *Main series: or Subseries of:*.

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

760

■ EXAMPLES

- 110 1#~~1~~aUnited States.~~1~~bGeological Survey.
- 245 10~~1~~aQuality of surface waters of the United States.
- 760 0#~~1~~7c1as~~1~~aUnited States. Geological Survey.~~1~~tWater supply papers
- 760 0#~~1~~aUnited States. Geological Survey.~~1~~tWater supply papers

762 Subseries Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Has subseries
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡n Note (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning a related subseries when the target item is a main series or a parent subseries (vertical relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory phrase *Has subseries:* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

Recorded *in addition to* any other series information in the record.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 762 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Has subseries

Used to generate the display constant *Has subseries:*.

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

■ EXAMPLES

110 1#‡aUnited States.‡bGeological Survey.

245 10‡aGeological Survey water-supply paper.

762

762 0#†tQuality of surface waters of the United States

762 0#†tEvaporation control research

[Serial being described is a main series record.]

765 Original Language Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Translation of
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡n Note (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡r Report number (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning the publication in its original language when the target item is a translation (horizontal relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory phrase *Translation of:* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 765 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Translation of

Used to generate the display constant *Translation of:*

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

■ EXAMPLES

130 0#‡aAstrofizicheskie issledovaniâ.‡iEnglish.

245 10‡aBulletin of the Special Astrophysical Observatory-North Caucasus.

765

- 765 0#†Astrofizicheskie issledovaniã†w(DLC)###78648457#†w(OCOLC)4798581
[Record for a translation linked to the original language version.]
- 130 0#†aMashinovedenie.†|English.
- 580 ##†a"Abridged translation of Mashinovedenie."
- 765 1#†Mashinovedenie†w(DLC)###90646274#†w(OCOLC)6258868
[Record for a translation linked to the original language version; first indicator is set to value 1 to suppress display of note from the link.]

767 Translation Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Translated as
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡n Note (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡r Report number (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning the publication in some other language other than the original when the target item is in the original language or is another translation (horizontal relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory phrase *Translated as:* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 767 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Translated as

Used to generate the display constant *Translated as:*

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

■ EXAMPLES

- 245 00#†aAstrofizicheskie issledovaniâ.
- 767 0#††Astrofizicheskie issledovaniâ. English. Bulletin of the Special Astrophysical Observatory (North Caucasus)†x0190-2709†w(DLC)###86649325#†w(OCOLC)4698159
- 245 00#†aFinance & development.
- 580 ##†aAlso available in the following translations: Arabic: Tamw I wa-al-tanmiyah; French: Finances et développement; German: Finanzierung & Entwicklung; Spanish: Finanzas y desarrollo; Portuguese: Finanças & desenvolvimento.
- 767 1#††Finance & development. Arabic. Tamw I wa-al-tanmiyah†x0250-7455
- 767 1#††Finance & development. French. Finances et développement†x0430-473X
- 767 1#††Finance & development. German. Finanzierung & Entwicklung†x0250-7439
- 767 1#††Finance & development. Spanish. Finanzas y desarrollo†x0250-7447
- 767 1#††Finance & development. Portuguese. Finanças & desenvolvimento†x0250-7404

770 Supplement/Special Issue Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Has supplement
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡n Note (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡r Report number (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning the supplement or special issue associated with the target item but cataloged and/or input as a separate record (vertical relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory phrase *Has supplement:* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 770 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Has supplement

Used to generate the display constant *Has supplement:*.

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

770

■ EXAMPLES

- 245 00†aNews of the Cooperative Health Statistics System.
770 0#†tDirectory: United States, territories, and
Canada†w(DLC)###78646712#†w(OCOLC)4579783
[Record is for the parent title; link gives entry of a supplement.]
- 245 00†aJournal of cellular biochemistry.
770 0#†tJournal of cellular biochemistry. Supplement†x0733-1959
[Record is for the parent title; link gives entry of a supplement.]

772 Supplement Parent Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Supplement to
- 0 Parent
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| ‡g Related parts (R) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| ‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡n Note (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡r Report number (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning the related parent record when the target item is a single issue, supplement or special issue (vertical relationship) of the parent item. When a note is generated from this field, the introductory phrase *Supplement to:* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 772 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Supplement to

Used to generate the display constant *Supplement to:*.

0 - Parent

Used to generate the display constant *Parent:*.

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

■ EXAMPLES

- 245 00#1aAgricultural situation.#pAfrica and the Middle East.
 772 0#1tWorld agricultural situation (Washington, D.C. :
 1970)#x0084-1358#w(DLC)sf#81008035#
- 245 00#1aDonnées statistiques pour la Haute-Normandie.
 580 ##1aSupplement to: Statistiques pour l'économie normande, 1979- ; supplement to: Aval,
 <1982,>
 772 1#1tStatistiques pour l'économie normande#g1979-#w(OCOLC)6260766
 772 1#1tAval#g<1982->
- 245 04#1aThe Post boy.#nNumb. 2436, from Thursday December 21 to Saturday December 23,
 1710.
 772 1#17unas1tPost boy (London, England)#w(OCOLC)1234567
- 245 14#1aThe Foundling hospital for wit :#bintended for the reception and preservation of such
 ...
 772 1#17p1as1aSilence, Timothy.#tFoundling hospital for wit
- 245 04#1aThe toolbox :#bbuyer's directory.
 772 0#1tLubricants world (2000)#w(OCOLC)43290151#w(DLC)##2001203221

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Display constant controller
 1 - Special issue [OBSOLETE] (CANMARC)

773 Host Item Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # In
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡3 Materials specified (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡n Note (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡p Abbreviated title (NR) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡q Enumeration and first page (NR) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡r Report number (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning the host item for the constituent unit described in the record (vertical relationship). In the case of host items that are serial or multi-volume in nature, information in subfields ‡g and ‡q is necessary to point to the exact location of the component part within the bibliographic item.

When a note is generated from this field, the introductory term *In* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

Provided in order to enable the user to locate the physical piece that contains the component part or subunit being described. Thus, only those data elements required to assist in the identification of the host item need to be included in the field, such as links to the bibliographic record describing the item and/or descriptive data that identify the host item.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 773 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- In

Used to generate the display constant *In*.

773

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

■ EXAMPLES

- 773 0#‡tHorizon‡gVol. 17, no. 98 (Feb. 1948), p. 78-159
[Host item is identified by title.]
- 773 0#‡gVol. 2, no. 2 (Feb. 1976), p. 195-230‡w(DLC)###75001234#
[Host item identified by record number.]
- 773 0#‡tNetworks for networkers : critical issues in cooperative library
development‡w(DLC)###79024054#‡w(Uk)8040016
[Host item identified by title and by record numbers.]
- 773 0#‡7p1am‡aDesio, Ardito, 1897-‡tGeographical features of the Karakorum.‡dMilano :
ISMEO, 1991
[Host item identified by author and title.]
- 773 0#‡7p1am‡aHamilton, Milton W. (Milton Wheaton), 1901-‡tSir William Johnson and the
Indians of New York.‡d[Albany] : University of the State of New York, State Education Dept.,
Office of State History, 1967‡w(DLC)###68066801#
[Host item identified by author, title, and record number.]
- 773 0#‡tGilbert H. Grosvenor Collection of Photographs of the Alexander Graham Bell family
[Host item identified by title.]
- 773 0#‡tEntomologists' monthly magazine‡pENTOMOL MON MAG‡dWallingford : Gem
Publishing Company‡x0013-8908‡yFNMMA
- 773 0#‡7c2tc‡aMassachusetts. Commission on Consumer Affairs‡tRecords‡w(MaRG)170
- 773 0#‡7nnas‡tCalifornia journal.‡gVol. 24, pt. B no. 9 (Sept. 1993), p. 235-48‡q24:B:9<235
- 773 0#‡7nnas‡tMetro.‡gVol. 96, no. 4 (May 2000), p. 23-24, 27‡q96:4<23
- 773 0#‡tPacific rail news.‡q279<GM5
[This example contains subfield ‡q with no corresponding subfield ‡g]

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡q - Enumeration and first page [NEW, 2003]

774 Constituent Unit Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Constituent unit
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡n Note (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡r Report number (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning a constituent unit associated with a larger bibliographic unit (vertical relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory term *Constituent unit:* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

Constituent units may be part of a single bibliographic item, a multipart item, or a collection. The constituent item may or may not be described in a separate bibliographic record.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 774 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Constituent unit

Used to generate the display constant *Constituent unit:*.

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

■ EXAMPLES

- 245 10#1a[136th Street, southeastern section of the Bronx]#h[graphic].
- 774 0#181#c#oNYDA.1993.010.00130.#n[DIAPimage].#tMap of area with highlighted street
- 774 0#181#c#oNYDA.1993.010.00130.#n[DIAPimage]##tMap of area with highlighted street
- 774 0#182#c#oNYDA.1993.010.00131.#n[DIAPimage].#tView of Mill Brook Houses from one of the houses.#d89/05
- 774 0#182#c#oNYDA.1993.010.00131.#n[DIAPimage]##tView of Mill Brook Houses from one of the houses.#d89/05
- 774 0#183#c#oNYDA.1993.010.00132.#n[DIAPimage].#tView SE from Mill Brook Houses on rooftop on Cypress Ave. between 136th St. and 137th St.,#d93/05
- 774 0#183#c#oNYDA.1993.010.00132.#n[DIAPimage]##tView SE from Mill Brook Houses on rooftop on Cypress Ave. Between 136th St. and 137th St.,#d93/05
- 774 0#184#c#oNYDA.1993.010.00133.#n[DIAPimage].#tView N from 136th St. roof top of area between Bruckner Expressway and Cypress Ave.,#d93/06
- 774 0#184#c#oNYDA.1993.010.00133.#n[DIAPimage]##tView N from 136th St. roof top area between Bruckner Expressway and Cypress Ave.,#d93/06
- 774 0#185#c#oNYDA.1993.010.00134.#n[DIAPimage].#tView E from rooftop of garden bounded by Bruckner Expressway, 136th St. and 135th St.,#d93/06
- 774 0#185#c#oNYDA.1993.010.00134.#n[DIAPimage]##tView E from rooftop of garden bounded by Bruckner Expressway, 136th St. and 135th St.,#d93/06
- 856 7#181.1#c#uhttp://www.cc.columbia.edu/imaging/photocd/3009-1031-1443/IMG0089.512.gif#2http
- 856 7#181.2#c#uhttp://www.cc.columbia.edu/imaging/diap/jfif00/.mosaic/nyc00217.jpg#2http
- 856 7#182.1#c#uhttp://www.cc.columbia.edu/imaging/photocd/3009-1031-1443/IMP0090.512.gif#2http
- 856 7#182.2#c#uhttp://www.cc.columbia.edu/imaging/diap/jfif00/.mosaic/nyc00345.jpg#2http
- 856 7#183.1#c#uhttp://www.cc.columbia.edu/imaging/photocd/3009-1031-1443/IMP0091.512.gif#2http
- 856 7#183.2#c#uhttp://www.cc.columbia.edu/imaging/diap/jfif00/.mosaic/nyc00346.jpg#2http
- 856 7#184.1#c#uhttp://www.cc.columbia.edu/imaging/photocd/3009-1031-1443/IMP0092.512.gif#2http
- 856 7#184.2#c#uhttp://www.cc.columbia.edu/imaging/diap/jfif00/.mosaic/nyc00347.jpg#2http
- 856 7#185.1#c#uhttp://www.cc.columbia.edu/imaging/photocd/3009-1031-1443/IMP0094.512.gif#2http
- 856 7#185.2#c#uhttp://www.cc.columbia.edu/imaging/diap/jfif00/.mosaic/nyc00349.jpg#2http
- [Record is for a larger bibliographic unit; 774 fields give entries for constituent units with links to URL's in field 856 (Electronic Location and Access) for the images themselves]*

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Display constant controller

0 - Includes [OBSOLETE] (CANMARC)

775 Other Edition Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Other edition available
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡t Title (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡e Language code (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| ‡f Country code (NR) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡n Note (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡r Report number (R) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Entry for another available edition of the target item (horizontal relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory phrase *Other editions available:* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

The following types of editions are recorded in this field:

- *Language editions.* When a serial is issued simultaneously in more than one language (usually by the same publisher, as opposed to a translation that is usually issued by another publisher).
- *Regular-print reprints.* When the serial being cataloged is a regular-print reprint, field 775 is used for the original entry.
- *Other editions.* Other editions of the target item. These will generally bear the same title as the target item but have edition information that distinguishes them.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 775 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Other edition available

Used to generate the display constant *Other edition available:*.

775

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield \ddot{i} (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

■ EXAMPLES

- 130 0# \ddot{a} Cuba economic news. \ddot{i} Spanish.
245 10 \ddot{a} Cuba noticias econ3micas.
580 ## \ddot{a} Issued also in English: Cuba economic news.
775 1# \ddot{t} Cuba economic news \ddot{x} 0590-2932 \ddot{e} eng \ddot{w} (OCoLC)2259984
775 0# \ddot{t} Cuba economic news \ddot{x} 0590-2932 \ddot{e} eng \ddot{w} (OCoLC)2259984
- 130 0# \ddot{a} Modern maturity (NRTA ed.)
245 00 \ddot{a} Modern maturity : \ddot{b} publication of the American Association of Retired Persons.
250 ## \ddot{a} NRTA ed.
775 1# \ddot{t} Modern maturity \ddot{x} 0026-8046 \ddot{w} (DLC)###63047860 \ddot{w} (OCoLC)1758471
775 0# \ddot{t} Modern maturity \ddot{x} 0026-8046 \ddot{w} (DLC)###63047860# \ddot{w} (OCoLC)1758471
- 245 00 \ddot{a} Communist.
260 ## \ddot{a} New York, \ddot{b} Greenwood Reprint Corp., \ddot{c} 1968.
580 ## \ddot{a} Reprint of a periodical published weekly in Chicago by the National Organization Committee of the Communist Party of America.
775 1# \ddot{t} Communist \ddot{f} filu
775 0# \ddot{t} Communist \ddot{f} filu
- 775 1# \ddot{t} Modern maturity \ddot{b} NRTA edition
775 0# \ddot{t} Modern maturity \ddot{b} NRTA edition
- 775 0# \ddot{t} Hospital practice (Office ed.) \ddot{x} 8750-2836

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Edition entry same as main entry and/or title [OBSOLETE, 1978] (SE)

Defined values were: 0 (Entry not the same), 1 (Entry is the same as title), 2 (Entry is the same as main entry and title).

776 Additional Physical Form Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Available in another form
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡n Note (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡r Report number (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning another available physical form of the target item (horizontal relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory phrase *Available in other form:* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

Used to link multiple physical format records for the same title.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 776 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Available in another form

Used to generate the display constant *Available in other form:* (for non-serials) or *Issued in other form:* (for serials).

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

776

■ EXAMPLES

- 245 00\$aCollege English.
530 ##\$aAlso available on microfilm from University Microfilms.
776 1#\$tCollege English\$x0010-0994#w(DLC)sc#84007753#w(OCOLC)3546316
776 0#\$tCollege English\$x0010-0994#w(DLC)sc#84007753#w(OCOLC)3546316
- 245 00\$aCollege English\$h[microform].
776 1#\$tCollege English\$x0010-0994#w(DLC)###41006180#w(OCOLC)1564053
776 0#\$tCollege English\$x0010-0994#w(DLC)###41006180#w(OCOLC)1564053
- 245 04\$aThe Americas.
530 ##\$aAlso available on microfilm from University Microfilms.
776 1#\$tAmericas\$x0003-1615#w(OCOLC)8370205
776 0#\$tAmericas\$x0003-1615#w(OCOLC)8370205
- 776 1#\$cOriginal#w(DLC)###24020326#
[The item in hand is a reproduction. Field 776 gives information as to the original record.]
- 776 0#\$cOriginal#w(DLC)###24020326#

777 Issued With Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Issued with
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡n Note (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning the publication that is separately cataloged but that is issued with or included in the target item (horizontal relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory phrase *Issued with:* may be generated based on the field tag for display.

This field is **not** used for *bound with* notes (field 501 (With Note)) that refer to local binding practices nor for component parts (analytical relationships).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 777 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Issued with

Used to generate the display constant *Issued with:*.

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

777

■ EXAMPLES

- 245** **04**~~†~~**a**Mythlore.
580 **##**~~†~~**a**Includes alternate issues of: Mythprint.
730 **02**~~†~~**a**Mythprint.
777 **1**~~†~~**†**Mythprint~~†~~**x**0146-9347
777 **0**~~†~~**†**Mythprint~~†~~**x**0146-9347
- 245** **04**~~†~~**a**The drug, the nurse, the patient.
580 **##**~~†~~**a**Vols. for 1962-<1966> include alternate biennial revisions of: Current drug handbook, ISSN 0070-1939, also issued separately.
730 **02**~~†~~**a**Current drug handbook.
777 **1**~~†~~**†**Current drug handbook~~†~~**g**1962-~~†~~**x**0070-1939~~†~~**w**(DLC)###58006390~~†~~**w**(OCoLC)1565622
[Record for target item]
777 **0**~~†~~**†**Current drug handbook~~†~~**g**1962-~~†~~**x**0070-1939~~†~~**w**(DLC)###58006390~~†~~**w**(OCoLC)1565622
- 245** **00**~~†~~**a**Current drug handbook.
580 **##**~~†~~**a**Alternate biennial revisions for 1962/64-<1966/68> also included in: The Drug, the nurse, the patient.
777 **1**~~†~~**†**Drug, the nurse, the patient~~†~~**w**(DLC)###66015620~~†~~**w**(OCoLC)3995456
[Related record]
777 **0**~~†~~**†**Drug, the nurse, the patient~~†~~**w**(DLC)###66015620~~†~~**w**(OCoLC)3995456

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Display constant controller

0 - Issued with [OBSOLETE] (CANMARC)

1 - With [OBSOLETE] (CANMARC)

2 - Bound with [OBSOLETE] (CANMARC)

780 Preceding Entry

(R)

First Indicator

- Note controller
- 0 Display note
 - 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

- Type of relationship
- 0 Continues
 - 1 Continues in part
 - 2 Supersedes
 - 3 Supersedes in part
 - 4 Formed by the union of ... and ...
 - 5 Absorbed
 - 6 Absorbed in part
 - 7 Separated from

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡n Note (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡r Report number (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning the immediate predecessor of the target item (chronological relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory term or phrase may be generated based on the value in the second indicator position for display.

If there is more than one predecessor entry, field 780 is repeated.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 780 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Type of relationship**

Relationship between the target item and the preceding entry. The values in this indicator position may be used to generate a display constant for a note.

780

0 - Continues

Target item *continues* the preceding entry.

- 130 00#~~†~~aHospitals (Chicago, Ill. : 1936)
780 00~~†~~aAmerican Hospital Association.~~†~~tBulletin of the American Hospital Association~~†~~w(OCOLC)1777831

Displays as:

Continues: American Hospital Association. Bulletin of the American Hospital Association.

1 - Continues in part

Target item *continues in part* the preceding entry.

- 245 00~~†~~aAnnales scientifiques de l'Université de Besançon.~~†~~pMathématiques.
780 01~~†~~tAnnales scientifiques de l'Université de Besançon~~†~~w(OCOLC)6179013

Displays as:

Continues in part: Annales scientifiques de l'Université de Besançon.

2 - Supersedes

Target item *supersedes* the preceding entry.

- 245 00~~†~~aHespéris tamuda.
780 02~~†~~tHespéris~~†~~w(OCOLC)1752037#

Supersedes:

Supersedes: Hespéris.

3 - Supersedes in part

Target item *supersedes in part* the preceding entry.

- 245 02~~†~~aL'Elevage porcin.
780 03~~†~~tElevage

Displays as:

Supersedes in part: Elevage

4 - Formed by the union of ... and ...

Target item has been formed by the union of one or more titles.

- 245 00~~†~~aAnnales geophysicae.
580 ##~~†~~aMerger of: Annales de géophysique and: Annali de geofisica.
780 14~~†~~tAnnales de géophysique~~†~~x0003-4029~~†~~w(OCOLC)1481255~~†~~w(DLC)###52016346#
780 14~~†~~tAnnali de geofisica~~†~~w(OCOLC)1847060~~†~~w(DLC)gs#49000041#
[Note is displayed from 580 field.]

5 - Absorbed

Title in hand *absorbed* the preceding entry.

- 245 04~~†~~aThe American journal of international law.
780 05~~†~~aAmerican Society of International Law.~~†~~tProceedings~~†~~g1971

Displays as:

Absorbed: American Society of International Law. Proceedings, 1971.

6 - Absorbed in part

Title in hand *absorbed in part* the preceding entry.

245 00 International flight information manual.

780 06 Graphic notices and supplemental data (OCoLC)4276671

Displays as:

Absorbed in part: Graphic notices and supplemental data.

7 - Separated from

Title in hand *separated from* the preceding entry.

110 2# British Columbia Provincial Museum.

245 10 Two-year review.

780 07 British Columbia. Ministry of Provincial Secretary and Government Services. Annual report (OCoLC)6270433 (DLC)###80649039#

Displays as:

Separated from: British Columbia. Ministry of Provincial Secretary and Government Services. Annual report.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Display Constants - Introductory terms or phrases such as *Absorbed in part*: that are displayed in notes with the data recorded in field 780 are not carried in the MARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the second indicator value.

<u>Second indicator</u>	<u>Display constant</u>
0	Continues:
1	Continues in part:
2	Supersedes:
3	Supersedes in part:
4	Formed by the union: ... and: ...
5	Absorbed:
6	Absorbed in part:
7	Separated from:

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Type of relationship

7 - Separated from [NEW, 1980] (SE)

Prior to the definition of code 7, *separated from* and *continues in part* information were both identified by code 1 (Continues in part).

[blank page]

785 Succeeding Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Type of relationship

- 0 Continued by
- 1 Continued in part by
- 2 Superseded by
- 3 Superseded in part by
- 4 Absorbed by
- 5 Absorbed in part by
- 6 Split into ... and ...
- 7 Merged with ... to form ...
- 8 Changed back to

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡n Note (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡r Report number (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning the immediate successor to the target item (chronological relationship). When a note is generated from this field, the introductory phrase may be generated based on the value in the second indicator position for display.

Repeated for more than one succeeding entry.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 785 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Type of relationship**

Relationship between the target item and the succeeding entry. The values in this indicator position may also be used to generate a display constant for a note.

785

0 - Continued by

Target item is *continued by* the succeeding entry.

- 245 00†aPreliminary seismological bulletin.
785 00†tTEIC quarterly seismological bulletin†x0741-1898†w(DLC)sc#83007721#

Displays as:

Continued by: TEIC quarterly seismological bulletin.

If the date of change is included (subfield †g), a field 580 note is required.

- 130 0#†aInside education (Albany, N.Y.)
580 ##†aContinued in 1983 by: Learning in New York (University of the State of New York).
785 10†tLearning in New York (University of the State of New York)†g1983†w(OCOLC)10120612
[Note is displayed from 580 field.]

1 - Continued in part by

Target item is *continued in part by* the succeeding entry.

- 245 04†aThe Southeastern college art review and newsletter.
785 01†aSoutheastern College Art Conference.†tSECAC newsletter†w(OCOLC)4973820

Displays as:

Continued in part by: Southeastern College Art Conference. SECAC newsletter.

2 - Superseded by

Target item is *superseded by* the succeeding entry.

- 245 00†aBulletin of the Vancouver Medical Association.
785 02†tBritish Columbia medical journal.†x0007-0556

Displays as:

Superseded by: British Columbia medical journal. ISSN 0007-0556.

3 - Superseded in part by

Target item is *superseded in part by* the succeeding entry.

4 - Absorbed by

Target item has been *absorbed by* the succeeding entry.

- 245 04†aThe Annalist :†ba magazine of finance, commerce, and economics.
785 04†tBusiness week†gOct. 1940†x0007-7135†w(DLC)###31006225#

Displays as:

Absorbed by: Business week, Oct. 1940.

5 - Absorbed in part by

Target item has been *absorbed in part by* the succeeding entry.

- 245 04†aThe Metal worker, plumber, and steam fitter.
785 05†tSheet metal worker†x0096-9249†w(OCOLC)2054610

Displays as:

Absorbed in part by: Sheet metal worker.

6 - Split into ... and ...

Target item has *split* into two or more succeeding entries.

- 245 00†aHospital practice.
 580 ##†aSplit into: Hospital practice (Hospital ed.) and: Hospital practice (Office ed.).
 785 16†tHospital practice (Hospital ed.)†x8755-4542†w(DLC)sn#84001694#
 785 16†tHospital practice (Office ed.)†x8750-2836†w(OCOLC)10716242
 [Note is displayed from 580 field.]

7 - Merged with ... to form ...

Target item has *merged* with another title to form the succeeding entry.

- 245 10†aCorrectional services in Canada.
 580 ##†aMerged with Services correctionnels au Canada. ISSN 0711-6810 to become Adult correctional services in Canada. ISSN 0715-2973.
 785 17†tServices correctionnels au Canada.†x0711-6810
 785 17†tAdult correctional services in Canada.†x0715-2973
 [Note is displayed from 580 field.]

8 - Changed back to

Target item has *changed back to* an earlier form of entry (i.e., the succeeding entry form is the same as a preceding entry form).

- 245 10†aAnnual report /†cDepartment of City Planning, City of Los Angeles.
 785 08†aLos Angeles (Calif.). Dept. of City Planning.†tAnnual report of the Department of City Planning (1966)†w(DLC)sn#86032686#

Displays as:

Changed back to: Los Angeles (Calif.). Dept. of City Planning. Annual report of the Department of City Planning (1966).

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Display constant - Introductory terms or phrases such as *Absorbed in part by:* that are displayed in notes with the data recorded in field 785 are not carried in the MARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the second indicator value.

<u>Second indicator</u>	<u>Display constant</u>
0	Continued by:
1	Continued in part by:
2	Superseded by:
3	Superseded in part by:
4	Absorbed by:
5	Absorbed in part by:
6	Split into: ... and ...
7	Merged with: ... to form ...
8	Changed back to:

[blank page]

786 Data Source Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Data source
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡v Source Contribution (NR) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| \|‡g Related parts (R) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| \|‡i Relationship information (R) | \|‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| ‡j Period of content (NR) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡n Note (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡p Abbreviated title (NR) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡r Report number (R) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information pertaining to a data source to which the described item is related. It may contain information about other files, printed sources, or collection procedures.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions except for display constants, for field 786 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Data source

Used to generate the display constant *Data source*:

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

786

■ EXAMPLES

786 0#1aUnited States. Defense Mapping Agency. Reno, NV-CA west digital terrain elevation data. Data for reformatting to DEM format

787 Other Relationship Entry

(R)

First Indicator

Note controller

- 0 Display note
- 1 Do not display note

Second Indicator

Display constant controller

- # Related item
- 8 No display constant generated

Subfield Codes

- | | |
|---|--|
| ‡a Main entry heading (NR) | ‡u Standard Technical Report Number (NR) |
| ‡b Edition (NR) | ‡w Record control number (R) |
| ‡c Qualifying information (NR) | ‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) |
| ‡d Place, publisher, and date of publication (NR) | ‡y CODEN designation (NR) |
| ‡g Related parts (R) | ‡z International Standard Book Number (R) |
| ‡h Physical description (NR) | ‡4 Relationship code (R) |
| ‡i Relationship information (R) | ‡6 Linkage (NR) |
| ‡k Series data for related item (R) | ‡7 Control subfield (NR) |
| ‡m Material-specific details (NR) | /0 - Special relationship |
| ‡n Note (R) | /1 - Tracing use restriction |
| ‡o Other item identifier (R) | /2 - Earlier form of heading |
| ‡r Report number (R) | /3 - Reference display |
| ‡s Uniform title (NR) | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ‡t Title (NR) | |

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information concerning the work related to the target item when the relationship does not fit any of those defined in fields 760-785.

In most cases, a note is recorded in field 580 that defines the specific relationship.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions, for field 787 are given in the *76X-78X Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Display constant controller**

Controls the generation of a display constant preceding the data in the linking entry field.

- Related item

Used to generate the display constant *Related item*.

8 - No display constant generated

Information may be provided in subfield ‡i (Relationship information) when special introductory text is needed.

787

■ EXAMPLES

- 245 00#1a Empire State report weekly.
580 ##1a Companion publication to: Empire State report (1982).
787 1#1t Empire State report (1982)#x0747-0711#w(DLC)###84647292#w(OCOLC)8541622
[Record being cataloged; link to related title.]
787 0#1a Empire State report (1982)#x0747-0711#w(DLC)###84647292#w(OCOLC)8541622
130 0#1a Empire State report (1982)
580 ##1a Complemented by: Empire State report weekly.
787 1#1t Empire State report weekly#x0745-8622#w(DLC)###84647299#w(OCOLC)9403759
[Record for related title; link to record being cataloged.]
787 0#1t Empire State report weekly#x0745-8622#w(DLC)###84647299#w(OCOLC)9403759

800 Series Added Entry-Personal Name

(R)

First Indicator

Type of personal name entry element
 0 Forename
 1 Surname
 3 Family name

Second Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Personal name (NR)	‡q Fuller form of name (NR)
‡b Numeration (NR)	‡r Key for music (NR)
‡c Titles and other words associated with a name (R)	‡s Version (NR)
‡d Dates associated with a name (NR)	‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡e Relator term (R)	‡u Affiliation (NR)
‡f Date of a work (NR)	‡v Volume/sequential designation (NR)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)	‡w Bibliographic record control number (R)
‡h Medium (NR)	‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR)
‡j Attribution qualifier (R)	‡0 Authority record control number (R)
‡k Form subheading (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡l Language of a work (NR)	‡4 Relator code (R)
‡m Medium of performance for music (R)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡n Number of part/section of a work (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Author/title series added entry in which the author portion is a personal name.

An 800 field is usually justified by a series statement (field 490) or a general note (field 500) relating to the series. For reproductions, it may be justified by a series statement in subfield ‡f of field 533 (Reproduction Note).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 800 field are given in the *X00 Personal Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Undefined**

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

■ EXAMPLES

490 1#‡aTeachings of the feathered serpent ;‡vbk. 1

800 1#‡aBerenholtz, Jim,‡d1957-‡tTeachings of the feathered serpent ;‡vbk. 1.

800

- 490 1#1aGesammelte Werke / Edgar Allan Poe ;1v1. Bd.
800 1#1aPoe, Edgar Allan,1d1809-1849.1tWorks.1lGerman.1f1922.1sRosl ;1v1. Bd.
- 490 1#1aThe James Joyce archive
800 1#1aJoyce, James,1d1882-1941.1tJames Joyce archive.
- 490 1#1aEdible wild plants of the planet earth
800 1#1aDarnell, Jack.1tEdible wild plants of the planet earth.
- 490 1#1aGellerman effective supervision series
800 1#1aGellerman, Saul W.1tGellerman effective supervision series.
- 490 1#1aLouie Armstrong ;1v6.
800 1#1aArmstrong, Louis,1d1900-1971.14pr1tLouie Armstrong (Universal City Studios) ;1v6.
- 800 1#1aNegt, Oskar1tSchriften.1vBd. 21w(DE-101b)967682460

810 Series Added Entry-Corporate Name

(R)

First Indicator

Type of corporate name entry element
 0 Inverted name
 1 Jurisdiction name
 2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)	‡r Key for music (NR)
‡b Subordinate unit (R)	‡s Version (NR)
‡c Location of meeting (NR)	‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡d Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)	‡u Affiliation (NR)
‡e Relator term (R)	‡v Volume/sequential designation (NR)
‡f Date of a work (NR)	‡w Bibliographic record control number (R)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)	‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR)
‡h Medium (NR)	‡0 Authority record control number (R)
‡k Form subheading (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡l Language of a work (NR)	‡4 Relator code (R)
‡m Medium of performance for music (R)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Author/title series added entry in which the author portion is a corporate name.

An 810 field is usually justified by a series statement (field 490) or a general note (field 500) relating to the series. For reproductions, it may be justified by a series statement in subfield ‡f of field 533 (Reproduction Note).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 810 field are given in the *X10 Corporate Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Undefined**

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

■ EXAMPLES

490 1#‡aCIIIL linguistic atlas series ;‡v1

810 2#‡aCentral Institute of Indian Languages.‡tCIIIL linguistic atlas series ;‡v1.

810

- 490 1#~~1~~aPublications de la Cour européenne des droits de l'homme. Série A, Arrêts et décisions;~~1~~aPublications of the European Court of Human Rights. Series A, Judgments and decisions ;~~1~~vvol. 48
- 810 2#~~1~~aEuropean Court of Human Rights.~~1~~tPublications de la Cour européenne des droits de l'homme.~~1~~nSérie A,~~1~~pArrêts et décisions ;~~1~~vvol. 48.
- 500 ##~~1~~aVols. for 1950-55 issued as American Academy in Rome. Memoirs.
- 810 2#~~1~~aAmerican Academy in Rome.~~1~~tMemoirs.
- 110 1#~~1~~aUnited States.~~1~~bArmy Map Service.
- 490 1#~~1~~aSeries Z201. Special Africa series,~~1~~vno. 12
- 810 1#~~1~~aUnited States.~~1~~bArmy Map Service.~~1~~tA.M.S.,~~1~~vZ201.
- 810 1#~~1~~aUnited States.~~1~~bArmy Map Service.~~1~~tSpecial Africa series,~~1~~vno. 12.
- 810 2#~~1~~aJohn Bartholomew and Son.~~1~~tBartholomew world travel series ;~~1~~v10.

811 Series Added Entry-Meeting Name

(R)

First Indicator

Type of meeting name entry element
 0 Inverted name
 1 Jurisdiction name
 2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator

Undefined
 # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)	‡s Version (NR)
‡c Location of meeting (NR)	‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡d Date of meeting (NR)	‡u Affiliation (NR)
‡e Subordinate unit (R)	‡v Volume/sequential designation (NR)
‡f Date of a work (NR)	‡w Bibliographic record control number (R)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)	‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR)
‡h Medium (NR)	‡0 Authority record control number (R)
‡j Relator term (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡k Form subheading (R)	‡4 Relator code (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)
‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Author/title series added entry in which the author portion is a meeting name or conference name.

An 811 field is usually justified by a series statement (field 490) or a general note (field 500) relating to the series. For reproductions, it may be justified by a series statement in subfield ‡f of field 533 (Reproduction Note). Series added entries for meetings entered subordinately to a corporate body are recorded in field 810.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 811 field, are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Undefined**

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

■ EXAMPLES

490 1#‡aNutrition and food science ;‡vv. 1

811 2#‡aInternational Congress of Nutrition‡n(11th :‡d1978 :‡cRio de Janeiro, Brazil).‡tNutrition and food science ;‡vv. 1.

811

- 490 1#~~1~~a Delaware symposia on language studies ;~~1~~v4
- 811 2#~~1~~a Delaware Symposium on Language Studies.~~1~~tt Delaware symposia on language studies ;~~1~~v4.
- 811 2#~~1~~a International Congress of Romance Linguistics and Philology~~1~~n (17th :~~1~~d 1983 :~~1~~c Aix-en-Provence, France).~~1~~tt Actes du XVIIème Congrès international de linguistique et philologie romanes ;~~1~~v vol. no. 5.

830 Series Added Entry-Uniform Title

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Nonfiling characters
0 No nonfiling characters
1-9 Number of nonfiling characters

Subfield Codes

‡a Uniform title (NR)	‡r Key for music (NR)
‡d Date of treaty signing (R)	‡s Version (NR)
‡f Date of a work (NR)	‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)	‡v Volume/sequential designation (NR)
‡h Medium (NR)	‡w Bibliographic record control number (R)
‡k Form subheading (R)	‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR)
‡l Language of a work (NR)	‡0 Authority record control number (R)
‡m Medium of performance for music (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡n Number of part/section of a work (R)	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡o Arranged statement for music (NR)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Series added entry consisting of a series title alone.

An 830 field is usually justified by a series statement (field 490) or a general note (field 500) relating to the series. For reproductions, it may be justified by a series statement in subfield ‡f of field 533 (Reproduction Note).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 830 field are given in the *X30 Uniform Titles-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ INDICATORS**Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters**

Number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., Le, An) at the beginning of a uniform title field that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

0 - No nonfiling characters

No initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a uniform title field that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters. An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the uniform title field. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

830 #0‡aWonders of man series.
[Full title is *The Wonders of man series.*]

830

1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters

Non-zero value indicates that a title begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. Any diacritical mark, space or mark of punctuation associated with the article and any space or mark of punctuation preceding the first filing character after the article is included in the count of nonfiling characters. Any diacritic, however, associated with the first filing character is not included in the count of nonfiling characters.

Common cataloging practice is to omit initial articles which are disregarded in sorting and filing processes for uniform title fields, thus, second indicator values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in field 830.

■ EXAMPLES

- 490 1#~~1~~aSport : bulletin of the Physical Education and Sports Department of the International Union of Students ;~~1~~v. 10
830 #0~~1~~aSport (International Union of Students. Physical Education and Sports Dept.) ;~~1~~v. 10.
- 490 1#~~1~~aMonograph / University Extension, UCLA, Department of Continuing Education in Health Sciences, UCLA School of Medicine and UCLA School of Public Health
830 #0~~1~~aMonograph (University of California, Los Angeles. Dept. of Continuing Education in Health Sciences)
- 490 1#~~1~~aMusica da camera ;~~1~~v72
830 #0~~1~~aMusica da camera (Oxford University Press) ;~~1~~v72.
- 490 1#~~1~~aBasic nursing skills ;~~1~~vtape 14
830 #0~~1~~aBasic nursing skills (Robert J. Brady Company) ;~~1~~vtape 14.
- 533 ##~~1~~aMicrofiche.~~1~~bGlen Rock, N.J. :~~1~~cMicrofilming Corp. of America,~~1~~d1975.~~1~~e66 microfiches~~1~~f(The Gerritsen collection of women's history).
830 #0~~1~~aGerritsen collection of women's history.
- 490 1#~~1~~aThe Teenage years
830 #0~~1~~aTeenage years.~~1~~h[Videorecording]
- 490 1#~~1~~aBibliographies of modern authors,~~1~~x0749-470X ;~~1~~vno. 27
830 #0~~1~~aBibliographies of modern authors (San Bernardino, Calif.) ;~~1~~vno. 27.
- 830 #0~~1~~31980:~~1~~aDHEW publication,~~1~~x0090-0206.
830 #0~~1~~31982-~~1~~aDHHS publication,~~1~~x0276-4733.
- 830 #0~~1~~3<May 1986->~~1~~aTourism research series.
- 830 #0~~1~~3v. 1-8~~1~~aCollection Byzantine,~~1~~x0223-3738.
830 #0~~1~~3v. 9~~1~~aCollection des universités de France,~~1~~x0184-7155.
- |830 #0~~1~~aDigital dictionaries of South Asia.~~1~~5ICU
- |830 #0~~1~~aCornell University Library historical math monographs.~~1~~5COO

Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*.

MARC 21 FORMAT FOR BIBLIOGRAPHIC DATA FORMAT CHANGE LIST

Update No. 10 (October 2009) and Update No. 11 (February 2010)

This page documents the changes contained in the tenth and eleventh updates to the 1999 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*. Update No. 10 (October 2009) and Update No. 11 (February 2010) include changes resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during 2009 and January 2010.

UPDATE NO. 10 CHANGES

■ *New content designators:*

Codes

- Code d - Computer disc, type unspecified** *in* Electronic Resource 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code k - Computer card** *in* Electronic Resource 007/01 (Specific material designation)

- Code h - Microfilm slip** *in* Microform 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code j - Microfilm roll** *in* Microform 007/01 (Specific material designation)

- Code o - Film roll** *in* Motion Picture 007/01 (Specific material designation)

- Code f - Filmstrip, type unspecified** *in* Projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)

- Code a - Activity card** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code k - Poster** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code p - Postcard** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code q - Icon** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code r - Radiograph** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code s - Study print** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code v - Photograph, type unspecified** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)

- Code i - Plastic** *in* Globe 007/04 (Physical medium)
- Code l - Vinyl** *in* Globe 007/04 (Physical medium)
- Code n - Vellum** *in* Globe 007/04 (Physical medium)
- Code v - Leather** *in* Globe 007/04 (Physical medium)
- Code w - Parchment** *in* Globe 007/04 (Physical medium)

Appendix G

Code i - Plastic in Map 007/04 (Physical medium)
Code l - Vinyl in Map 007/04 (Physical medium)
Code n - Vellum in Map 007/04 (Physical medium)
Code v - Leather in Map 007/04 (Physical medium)
Code w - Parchment in Map 007/04 (Physical medium)

Code i - Plastic in Non-projected Graphic 007/04 (Primary support material)
and 007/05 (Secondary support material)
Code l - Vinyl in Non-projected Graphic 007/04 (Primary support material)
and 007/05 (Secondary support material)
Code n - Vellum in Non-projected Graphic 007/04 (Primary support material)
and 007/05 (Secondary support material)
Code v - Leather in Non-projected Graphic 007/04 (Primary support material)
and 007/05 (Secondary support material)
Code w - Parchment in Non-projected Graphic 007/04 (Primary support material)
and 007/05 (Secondary support material)

Code bk - Krovak in Maps 008/22-23 (Projection)
Code bl - Cassini-Soldner in Maps 008/22-23 (Projection)
Code fl - Flamenco in Music 008/18-19 (Form of composition)
Code tl - Teatro lirico in Music 008/18-19 (Form of composition)
Code vi - Villancicos in Music 008/18-19 (Form of composition)
Code za - Zarzuelas in Music 008/18-19 (Form of composition)
Code h - Chorus score in Music 008/20 (Format of music)
Code i - Condensed score in Music 008/20 (Format of music)
Code j - Performer-conductor part in Music 008/20 (Format of music)

Indicators

080 1st indicator (Type of edition):

- No information provided
0 - Full
1 - Abridged

Subfield codes

‡i **Relationship information (R)** in 700 (Added Entry-Personal Name)
‡i **Relationship information (R)** in 710 (Added Entry-Corporate Name)
‡i **Relationship information (R)** in 711 (Added Entry-Meeting Name)
‡i **Relationship information (R)** in 730 (Added Entry-Uniform Title)
‡u **Uniform Resource Identifier (R)** in 510 (Citation/References Note)
‡2 **Source (NR)** in 257 (Country of Producing Entity)
‡3 **Materials specified (NR)** in 534 (Original Version Note)
‡i **Relationship code (R)** in Linking Entry fields 760-787

Fields

336 Content Type (R)
337 Media Type (R)
338 Carrier Type (R)
588 Source of Description Note (R)

■ *Changes in content designator names:*

Subfields

‡a - **Country of producing entity for archival films** *changed to* Country of producing entity
in 257 (Country of Producing Entity)
‡g - **Relationship information** *changed to* Related parts in Linking Entry fields 760-787
‡i - **Display text** *changed to* Relationship information in Linking Entry fields 760-787

Fields

257 Country of Producing Entity for Archival Films *changed to* Country of Producing Entity
787 Nonspecific Relationship Entry *changed to* Other Relationship Entry

■ *Changes in repeatability:*

Fields

257 Country of Producing Entity *from* NR to R

Subfields

‡a Country of producing entity *in* field 257: *from* NR to R

‡i Relationship information *in* fields 760-787 (Linked Entry Fields): *from* NR to R

‡x Series statement *in* 490 (Series statement): *from* NR to R

UPDATE NO. 11 CHANGES

■ *New content designators:*

Character Positions

008/23 (006/06) - Form of item *in* Computer Files

Codes

Code o - Online *in* Continuing Resources 008/22 (Form of original item)

Code q - Direct electronic *in* Continuing Resources 008/22 (Form of original item)

Code o - Online *in* Books 008/23 (Form of item)

Code q - Direct electronic *in* Books 008/23 (Form of item)

Code o - Online *in* Computer Files 008/23 (Form of item)

Code q - Direct electronic *in* Computer Files 008/23 (Form of item)

Code o - Online *in* Music 008/23 (Form of item)

Code q - Direct electronic *in* Music 008/23 (Form of item)

Code o - Online *in* Continuing Resources 008/23 (Form of item)

Code q - Direct electronic *in* Continuing Resources 008/23 (Form of item)

Code o - Online *in* Mixed Materials 008/23 (Form of item)

Code q - Direct electronic *in* Mixed Materials 008/23 (Form of item)

Code o - Online *in* Maps 008/29 (Form of item)

Code q - Direct electronic *in* Maps 008/29 (Form of item)

Code o - Online *in* Visual Materials 008/29 (Form of item)

Code q - Direct electronic *in* Visual Materials 008/29 (Form of item)

Subfield codes

‡d **Date of event (R)** *in* 518 (Date/Time and Place of an Event Note)

‡o **Other event information (R)** *in* 518 (Date/Time and Place of an Event Note)

‡p **Place of event (R)** *in* 033 (Date/Time and Place of an Event)

‡p **Place of an event (R)** *in* 518 (Date/Time and Place of an Event Note)

‡0 **Record control number (R)** *in* 033 (Date/Time and Place of an Event)

‡0 **Record control number (R)** *in* 518 (Date/Time and Place of an Event Note)

‡2 **Source of term (R)** *in* 033 (Date/Time and Place of an Event)

‡2 **Source of term (R)** *in* 518 (Date/Time and Place of an Event Note)

‡3 **Materials specified (NR)** *in* 034 (Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data)

‡5 **Institution to which field applies (R)** *in* 800 (Series Added Entry-Personal Name)

‡5 **Institution to which field applies (R)** *in* 810 (Series Added Entry-Corporate Name)

‡5 **Institution to which field applies (R)** *in* 811 (Series Added Entry-Meeting Name)

‡5 **Institution to which field applies (R)** *in* 830 (Series Added Entry-Uniform Title)

Fields

380 Form of Work (R)

381 Other Distinguishing Characteristics of Work or Expression (R)

Appendix G

- 382 Medium of Performance (R)
- 383 Numeric Designation of Musical Work (R)
- 384 Key (NR)

■ *Changes in repeatability:*

Subfields

‡e Description conventions *in* field 040 (Cataloging Source): *from* NR to R

**Updates No. 10 & 11 (October 2009/February 2010) - MARC 21 Format
for Classification Data**

The following page(s) is/ are included in Updates 10 & 11 (October 2009/February 2010) of the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*.

[blank page]

MARC 21

Format for **Classification Data**

Updates No. 10 & 11
October 2009/February 2010

FILING INSTRUCTIONS

This update contains loose-leaf pages to be interfiled in the text of the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*. Some pages are new, representing newly-defined data elements in the format. However, most pages replace existing pages in the base text.

A listing of the substantive changes covered by this update is contained in Appendix E. Changes in the text are marked by a line (|) in the left margin. This mark is used to indicate places where deletions have occurred as well as additions and modifications to the text. This update title page should be filed behind the title page for the base text. Appendix E may be filed in any appropriate place of the text.

Prepared by
Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress

In cooperation with
Standards, Library and Archives Canada
Bibliographic Development, British Library

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
CATALOGING DISTRIBUTION SERVICE / WASHINGTON

LIBRARY AND ARCHIVES CANADA
OTTAWA

Available in the U.S.A. and other countries from:
Cataloging Distribution Service,
Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20541-4912 U.S.A.

Available in Canada from:
Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada
Ottawa, ON K1A 0S9 Canada

Copyright (c) 2010 by the Library of Congress except within the USA.
Copyright (c) Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (2005)
as represented by Library and Archives Canada.

This publication may be reproduced without permission provided the source is fully acknowledged.

Updates No. 10 and 11 (October 2009/February 2010) are interfiled with the base text of October 2000 as modified by:

Update No. 9 (October 2008)
Update No. 8 (October 2007)
Update No. 7 (October 2006)
Update No. 6 (October 2005)
Update No. 5 (October 2004)
Update No. 4 (October 2003)
Update No. 3 (October 2002)
Update No. 2 (October 2001)
Update No. 1 (October 2000).

Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*.

MARC 21 FORMAT FOR CLASSIFICATION DATA FORMAT CHANGE LIST

Update No. 10 (October 2009) and Update No. 11 (February 2010)

There are no changes to *the MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* for Update No. 10, October 2009, and Update No. 11, February 2010, resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during 2009 and January 2010.

Appendix E

[blank page]

**Updates No. 10 & 11 (October 2009/February 2010) - MARC 21 Format
for Community Information**

The following page(s) is/ are included in Updates 10 & 11 (October 2009/February 2010) of the *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*.

[blank page]

MARC 21

Format for

Community Information

Updates No. 10 & 11
October 2009/February 2010

FILING INSTRUCTIONS

This update contains loose-leaf pages to be interfiled in the text of the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*. Some pages are new, representing newly-defined data elements in the format. However, most pages replace existing pages in the base text.

A listing of the substantive changes covered by this update is contained in Appendix F. Changes in the text are marked by a line (|) in the left margin. This mark is used to indicate places where deletions have occurred as well as additions and modifications to the text. This update title page should be filed behind the title page for the base text. Appendix F may be filed in any appropriate place of the text.

Prepared by
Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress

In cooperation with
Standards, Library and Archives Canada
Bibliographic Development, British Library

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
CATALOGING DISTRIBUTION SERVICE / WASHINGTON

LIBRARY AND ARCHIVES CANADA
OTTAWA

Available in the U.S.A. and other countries from:
Cataloging Distribution Service,
Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20541-4912 U.S.A.

Available in Canada from:
Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada
Ottawa, ON K1A 0S9 Canada

Copyright (c) 2010 by the Library of Congress except within the USA.
Copyright (c) Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (2005)
as represented by Library and Archives Canada.

This publication may be reproduced without permission provided the source is fully acknowledged.

Updates No. 10 and 11 (October 2009/February 2010) are interfiled with the base text of October 2000 as modified by:

Update No. 9 (October 2008)
Update No. 8 (October 2007)
Update No. 7 (October 2006)
Update No. 6 (October 2005)
Update No. 5 (October 2004)
Update No. 4 (October 2003)
Update No. 3 (October 2002)
Update No. 2 (October 2001)
Update No. 1 (October 2000).

Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*.

MARC 21 FORMAT FOR COMMUNITY INFORMATION FORMAT CHANGE LIST

Update No. 10 (October 2009) and Update No. 11 (February 2010)

There are no changes to *the MARC 21 Format for Community Information* for Update No. 10, October 2009, and Update No. 11, February 2010, resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during 2009 and January 2010.

Appendix F

[blank page]

**Updates No. 10 & 11 (October 2009/February 2010) - MARC 21 Format
for Holdings Data**

The following page(s) is/ are included in Updates 10 & 11 (October 2009/February 2010) of the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*.

[blank page]

MARC 21

Format for **Holdings Data**

Updates No. 10 & 11
October 2009/February 2010

FILING INSTRUCTIONS

This update contains loose-leaf pages to be interfiled in the text of the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*. Some pages are new, representing newly-defined data elements in the format. However, most pages replace existing pages in the base text.

A listing of the substantive changes covered by this update is contained in Appendix F. Changes in the text are marked by a line (|) in the left margin. This mark is used to indicate places where deletions have occurred as well as additions and modifications to the text. This update title page should be filed behind the title page for the base text. Appendix F may be filed in any appropriate place of the text.

Prepared by
Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress

In cooperation with
Standards, Library and Archives Canada
Bibliographic Development, British Library

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
CATALOGING DISTRIBUTION SERVICE / WASHINGTON

LIBRARY AND ARCHIVES CANADA
OTTAWA

Available in the U.S.A. and other countries from:
Cataloging Distribution Service,
Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20541-4912 U.S.A.

Available in Canada from:
Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada
Ottawa, ON K1A 0S9 Canada

Copyright (c) 2010 by the Library of Congress except within the USA.
Copyright (c) Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (2005)
as represented by Library and Archives Canada.

This publication may be reproduced without permission provided the source is fully acknowledged.

Updates No. 10 and 11 (October 2009/February 2010) are interfiled with the base text of October 2000 as modified by:

Update No. 9 (October 2008)
Update No. 8 (October 2007)
Update No. 7 (October 2006)
Update No. 6 (October 2005)
Update No. 5 (October 2004)
Update No. 4 (October 2003)
Update No. 3 (October 2002)
Update No. 2 (October 2001)
Update No. 1 (October 2000).

MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data

SUMMARY STATEMENT OF CONTENT DESIGNATORS

LEADER**DIRECTORY****VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS***00X Control Fields-General Information*

001	Control Number
003	Control Number Identifier
004	Control Number for Related Bibliographic Record
005	Date and Time of Latest Transaction
007	Physical Description Fixed Field
008	Fixed-Length Data Elements

VARIABLE DATA FIELDS*Numbers and Codes*

010	Library of Congress Control Number
014	Linkage Number
016	National Bibliographic Agency Control Number
017	Copyright or Legal Deposit Number
020	International Standard Book Number
022	International Standard Serial Number
024	Other Standard Identifier
027	Standard Technical Report Number
030	CODEN Designation
035	System Control Number
040	Record Source
066	Character Sets Present

Notes

337	Content Type
338	Carrier Type
506	Restrictions on Access Note
538	System Details Note
541	Immediate Source of Acquisition Note
561	Ownership and Custodial History
562	Copy and Version Identification Note
563	Binding Information
583	Action Note
841	Holdings Coded Data Values
842	Textual Physical Form Designator
843	Reproduction Note
844	Name of Unit
845	Terms Governing Use and Reproduction Note

Location and Access

852	Location
856	Electronic Location and Access

Holdings Data

853	Captions and Pattern-Basic Bibliographic Unit
854	Captions and Pattern-Supplementary Material
855	Captions and Pattern-Indexes

Summary

863	Enumeration and Chronology-Basic Bibliographic Unit
864	Enumeration and Chronology-Supplementary Material
865	Enumeration and Chronology-Indexes
866	Textual Holdings-Basic Bibliographic Unit
867	Textual Holdings-Supplementary Material
868	Textual Holdings-Indexes
876	Item Information-Basic Bibliographic Unit
877	Item Information-Supplementary Material
878	Item Information-Indexes

Other Variable Fields

880	Alternate Graphic Representation
-----	----------------------------------

008 Fixed-Length Data Elements-General Information (NR)
--

Indicators and Subfield Codes

No indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

00-05	Date entered on file <i>[See position description for specifications]</i>	p	Previous
06	Receipt or acquisition status	14	Number of units
0	Unknown	#	No information provided
1	Other receipt or acquisition status	1-9	Number of units
2	Received and complete or ceased	15	Unit type
3	On order	m	Month(s)
4	Currently received	w	Week(s)
5	Not currently received	y	Year(s)
07	Method of acquisition	e	Edition(s)
c	Cooperative or consortial purchase	i	Issue(s)
d	Deposit	s	Supplement(s)
e	Exchange	16	Completeness
f	Free	0	Other
g	Gift	1	Complete
l	Legal deposit	2	Incomplete
m	Membership	3	Scattered
n	Non-library purchase	4	Not applicable
p	Purchase	17-19	Number of copies reported
u	Unknown	20	Lending policy
z	Other method of acquisition	a	Will lend
08-11	Expected acquisition end date	b	Will not lend
<yymm>	Date of cancellation or last expected part	c	Will lend hard copy only
uuuu	Intent to cancel; effective date not known	l	Limited lending policy
####	No intent to cancel or not applicable	u	Unknown
12	General retention policy	21	Reproduction policy
0	Unknown	a	Will reproduce
1	Other general retention policy	b	Will not reproduce
2	Retained except as replaced by updates	u	Unknown
3	Sample issue retained	22-24	Language
4	Retained until replaced by microform	###	Blanks
5	Retained until replaced by cumulation, replacement volume, or revision	und	Undetermined
6	Retained for a limited period	25	Separate or composite copy report
7	Not retained	0	Separate copy report
8	Permanently retained	1	Composite copy report
13-15	Specific retention policy	26-31	Date of report
###	No specific retention policy		<i>[See position description for specifications]</i>
13	Policy type		
l	Latest		

008

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Thirty-two character positions (00-31) that contain data elements that provide coded information about the record. The data elements are positionally defined. Each defined character position must contain either a defined code or a fill character (|). The fill character is used when no attempt is made to supply a defined code for a specific character position.

Some of the codes relate to coded values in Z39.71. Others are potentially useful for retrieval and data management purposes.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

00-05 - Date entered on file

Computer-generated six-character numeric string that specifies the date the holdings report was first entered into machine-readable form. Date is given in the pattern *yymmdd* (*yy* for the year, *mm* for the month, and *dd* for the day).

If only the year and month are provided, the date is left justified and each unused position contains a zero.

Date entered on file in 008/00-05 is never changed. The date in 008/26-31 (Date of report) is changed each time the holdings information is updated. The date in field 005 (Date and Time of Latest Transaction) changes each time a transaction is made to a separate holdings record.

008/00-05 890818
[The record was entered into the system on August 18, 1989.]

008/00-05 890800
[The record was entered into the system on August 1989.]

06 - Receipt or acquisition status

Whether newly published parts of a multipart (Leader/06, code v) or serial item (Leader/06, code y) are being received.

0 - Unknown

Receipt or acquisition status is unknown.

1 - Other receipt or acquisition status

Receipt or acquisition status for which none of the other defined codes is appropriate.

2 - Received and complete or ceased

All parts of a multipart or serial item have been published or that the publication is no longer issued (has ceased publication). Used for single-part items (Leader/06, Type of record, code x) and for completed multipart or serial items.

3 - On order

Order has been placed for the current and/or continuing parts of an item, but nothing has been received. This definition excludes parts received under retrospective acquisition efforts. This code is also used with single-part items.

4 - Currently received

Parts of a serial item or updates to multipart items are routinely received.

5 - Not currently received

Reporting organization has holdings of the multipart or serial item but neither currently receives nor intends to acquire the item. Used for multipart items and items for which updates are no longer being received.

07 - Method of acquisition

How the reporting organization acquires the bibliographic item.

c - Cooperative or consortial purchase

Acquired through a cooperative purchase and the library has expended its own funds.

d - Deposit

Acquired through a deposit program. This code can be used as a generic code for any form of deposit program. Code l may be used if there is a need to separately identify legal deposits

e - Exchange

Acquired through an exchange program.

f - Free

Acquired without cost.

g - Gift

Acquired as a gift.

l - Legal deposit

Acquired through a legal deposit program established by law. If a distinction between types of deposit programs is not necessary, code d can be used as a generic code for any form of deposit program.

m - Membership

Acquired as a part of an organizational membership.

n - Non-library purchase

Acquired on behalf of the library by an external agency and the library has not expended its own funds.

p - Purchase

Acquired through purchase.

u - Unknown

Method of acquisition is unknown.

z - Other method of acquisition

Method of acquisition for which none of the other defined codes is appropriate.

08-11 - Expected acquisition end date

Four characters indicate an intent to cancel, the effective date of a cancellation, or the date of the last expected part of a multipart or serial item (Leader/06, Type of record, code y) that is received on a

008

continuing basis by the reporting organization. A date is recorded in the pattern *yymm* (2 for the year and 2 for the month).

<yymm> - Date of cancellation or last expected part

Effective date of either the cancellation of a multipart or serial item or the actual date of the last expected part. The volume or issue designation for the last expected part may be recorded in subfield ‡z (Public note) of field 852 (Location).

uuuu - Intent to cancel; effective date not known

Reporting organization intends to cancel its receipt of the multipart or serial item but that the effective date of the cancellation is unknown.

- No intent to cancel or not applicable

Either the reporting organization does not intend to cancel its receipt of the multipart or serial item or that the information is not applicable to the item (the title has ceased, been superseded or the title is not a serial).

12 - General retention policy

Reporting organization's general retention policy for the bibliographic item.

Organization's retention policy for specific parts or editions or for a limited time is contained in field 008/13-15 (Specific retention policy).

0 - Unknown

1 - Other general retention policy

General retention policy is one for which none of the other defined codes is appropriate.

2 - Retained except as replaced by updates

All parts of the item are retained until they are replaced by updates.

3 - Sample issue retained

Only a sample issue of the item is retained.

4 - Retained until replaced by microform

All parts of the item are retained until they are replaced by microform.

5 - Retained until replaced by cumulation, replacement volume, or revision

All parts of the item are retained until they are replaced by a cumulation, replacement volume, or revision.

6 - Retained for a limited period

Parts of an item are retained for a period of time or only parts or editions of the item are retained. Specific time or parts may be recorded in 008/13-15 (Specific retention policy).

Field 008/16 (Completeness) contains code 0 (Other).

7 - Not retained

No part of the item is retained.

8 - Permanently retained

All parts of the item are retained. Used for nonserial items that are normally permanently retained.

13-15 - Specific retention policy

Specific parts of the bibliographic item that are retained for a limited time by the reporting organization, when field 008/12 (General retention policy) contains code 6 (Retained for a limited period).

- No specific retention policy

Blank (#) is used in each 008/13-15 character position when no specific retention policy is recorded.

008/12 8
 [code indicating permanently retained]
008/13-15 ###

13 - Policy type

Type of specific retention policy.

l - Latest

Latest, including the current, time or part unit is retained.

008/12 6
 [code indicating limited retention period]
008/13-15 l6m
 [Latest 6 months of the item are retained.]

008/12 6
008/13-15 l2i
 [Latest 2 issues of the item are retained.]

p - Previous

Previous, not including the current, time or part unit is retained.

008/12 6
 [code indicating limited retention period]
008/13-15 p1e
 [Previous edition is retained.]

14 - Number of units

Number of time or part units used to specify the specific retention policy.

- No information provided**1-9 - Number of units**

One-character number (1-9) that specifies the number of time units or parts that are retained. If the number of time units or parts exceeds 9, this information may be contained in subfield Ꞥx (Nonpublic note) or Ꞥz (Public note) of an 852 (Location) or 863-868 Holdings Data field. When Policy type is Latest (code l), the number includes the current time or part unit. When Policy type is Previous (code p), the number does not include the current time or part unit.

008

15 - Unit type

Describes either the period of retention or the part that is retained.

m - Month(s)

w - Week(s)

y - Year(s)

e - Edition(s)

i - Issue(s)

s - Supplement(s)

008/12 6

008/13-15 11s

[Latest supplement is retained.]

16 - Completeness

Estimation of the general extent of the holdings for a multipart (Leader/06, Type of record, code v) or serial item (Leader/06, Type of record, code y).

Percentages associated with values 1, 2, and 3 are for general guidance and are not prescriptive. They may be determined locally.

0 - Other

Either parts of the item are retained for a limited period (008/12, General retention policy, code 6) or no estimate of the completeness of the holdings is made.

1 - Complete

Organization holds about 95-100% of the parts of the item.

2 - Incomplete

Organization holdings are incomplete (about 50-94% held).

3 - Scattered

Organization holds only scattered parts of the item (less than 50%).

4 - Not applicable

Holdings statement is for a single-part item (Leader/06, Type of record, code x).

17-19 - Number of copies reported

Three numeric characters indicate the number of copies represented in either a separate copy report (008/25, Separate or composite copy report, code 0) or a composite copy report (008/25, code 1). The number is right justified and each unused position contains a zero.

008/17-19 001
[one copy reported]

008/17-19 002
[two copies reported]

852 ##1a<location identifier>1bMain1ccenter shelves1t1

852 ##1a<location identifier>1bMain1cmezzanine stacks1t2

20 - Lending policy

Reporting organization's external lending policy for the bibliographic item.

More specific information about the lending policy may be contained in field 845 (Terms Governing Use and Reproduction Note).

a - Will lend

Organization will lend the bibliographic item in accordance with any restriction in its general lending policy.

b - Will not lend

Organization will not lend the bibliographic item.

c - Will lend hard copy only

Organization will lend only a hard copy of the bibliographic item.

l - Limited lending policy

Organization maintains a limited lending policy of the bibliographic item. More specific information about the lending policy may be contained in field 845 (Terms Governing Use and Reproduction Note).

u - Unknown

Lending policy of the organization is not known.

21 - Reproduction policy

Reporting organization's reproduction policy for the bibliographic item. More specific information about the reproduction policy may be contained in field 845 (Terms Governing Use and Reproduction Note).

a - Will reproduce

Organization will make a reproduction of the bibliographic item in accordance with any restrictions in its general reproduction policy.

b - Will not reproduce

Organization will not make a reproduction of the bibliographic item.

u - Unknown

Reproduction policy of the reporting organization is not known.

22-24 - Language

Three-character MARC code that indicates the language of coded data contained in the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology fields that require a language table to generate chronological terms or

008

ordinal numbers for the codes in a display. Code from: *MARC Code List for Languages*. There are two special codes:

- Blanks

Holdings statement contains no coded chronological data or ordinal numbers.

und - Undetermined

Language of the coded chronological data or ordinal numbers in the holdings statement cannot be determined.

008/22-24 fre
853 20†81†av.†bptie†u4†vr†cno†u13†vr†dfasc.†u2†vr†i(year)†j(month)†k(day)†p2†ww†x01
863 41†81.1†a1†b1†c1†d1†i1980†j01†k4
 [Display text: v. 1: ptie 1: no 1: fasc.1 (1980:janv.4)]

25 - Separate or composite copy report

Whether the holdings information represents a separate copy or a composite copy report.

Separate copy report contains holdings information for one copy of a bibliographic item. If more copies are held by the organization, a separate holdings report is made for each copy. **Composite copy report** consolidates into a single holdings report information about two or more copies of the same bibliographic item that are held at a single location or at one or more sublocations within the organization. The number of copies reported is contained in 008/17-19 (Number of copies reported).

0 - Separate copy report

Holdings report is for one copy of the bibliographic item.

Two separate holdings records:

Record 1:

008/16 2
 [incomplete]
008/17-19 001
 [one copy reported]
008/25 0
 [separate copy]
852 ##†a<location identifier>†bChemistry Library†t1
853 00†81†av.†tc.
863 30†81.1†a1-4
863 30†81.2†a7-10
 [Holdings consist of copy 1, v. 1-4 and 7-10.]

Record 2:

008/16 2
 [incomplete]

008/17-19 001
 [one copy reported]

008/25 0
 [separate copy]

852 ##~~1~~a<location identifier>~~1~~bMain Library~~1~~t2

853 00~~1~~81~~1~~av.~~1~~tc.

863 30~~1~~81.1~~1~~a5-10
 [Holdings consist of copy 2, v. 5-10.]

1 - Composite copy report

Holdings statement is a consolidation of information about more than one copy of the same bibliographic item.

008/16 1
 [complete]

008/17-19 002
 [two copies reported]

008/25 1
 [composite report]

852 ##~~1~~a<location identifier>~~1~~bChemistry Library~~1~~bMain Library

866 31~~1~~80~~1~~av. 1-10~~1~~zc.1 has v. 5-6 lacking; c. 2 has only v. 5-10
 [Holdings consist of two copies in two sublocations.]

26-31 - Date of report

Six numeric characters indicate the currency of the holdings information. The date is recorded in the pattern *yymmdd* (*yy* for the year, *mm* for the month, and *dd* for the day). A date that consists of only year and month information is left justified and each unused position contains a zero. An unknown date is represented by six zeros.

Date on which the holdings report is first entered into machine-readable form is contained in field 008/00-05 (Date entered on file). This date never changes. In a separate holdings record, the date in field 005 (Date and Time of Latest Transaction) changes each time any transaction is made to the record, while Date of Report indicates only changes to the holdings information.

008/26-31 880819
 [The holdings report was updated on August 19, 1988.]

INPUT CONVENTIONS

System-Generated Data Elements - 008/00-05 (Date entered on file) and /26-31 (Date of report) are usually system generated. The generation of other 008 data elements depends upon the capabilities of an individual system.

Capitalization - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

008

Embedded Holdings Information - When holdings information is embedded in a related MARC bibliographic record, the coded information in field 008/00-31 may be contained in subfield ‡b (Fixed-length data elements) of field 841 (Holdings Coded Data Values), which is also embedded in the bibliographic record.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

008/07 *Method of acquisition*

- c *Cooperative or consortial purchase [NEW, 2002]*
- l *Legal deposit [NEW, 2009]*
- m *Membership [NEW, 2002]*
- n *Non-library purchase [NEW, 2002]*

008/11 *Intent to cancel date [RENAMED, 2002]*

008/12 *General retention policy*

- # *Permanently retained [OBSOLETE]*

Code # was used in holdings records that met the requirements of *Serial Holdings Statements at the Summary Level* (ANSI Z39.42). Code 8 (Permanently retained) is defined for use in summary-level MARC holdings statements that follow *Serial Holdings Statements* (ANSI Z39.44) which replaced Z39.42.

008/20 *Lending policy*

- c *Will lend hard copy only [NEW, 2002]*
- l *Limited lending policy [NEW, 2002]*

008/40 *Fill character usage [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]*

3XX, 5XX, 84X Note Fields-General Information

- 337 Media Type (R)
- 338 Carrier Type (R)
- 506 Restrictions on Access Note (R)
- 538 System Details Note (R)
- 541 Immediate Source of Acquisition Note (R)
- 561 Ownership and Custodial History (R)
- 562 Copy and Version Identification Note (R)
- 563 Binding Information (R)
- 583 Action Note (R)
- 841 Holdings Coded Data Values (NR)
- 842 Textual Physical Form Designator (NR)
- 843 Reproduction Note (R)
- 844 Name of Unit (NR)
- 845 Terms Governing Use and Reproduction Note (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information relating to the preservation, use, form etc. of the bibliographic item to which the holdings statement applies.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

337 Media Type [NEW, 2009]

338 Carrier Type [NEW, 2009]

506 Restrictions on Access Note [NEW, 2006]

538 System Details Note [NEW, 2003]

563 Binding Information [NEW, 2002]

3XX, 5XX, 84X

[blank page]

337 Media Type

(R)

First IndicatorUndefined
Undefined**Second Indicator**Undefined
Undefined**Subfield Codes**

‡a Media type term (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡b Media type code (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡2 Source (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Media type reflects the general type of intermediation device required to view, play, run, etc., the content of a resource. Used as an alternative to or in addition to the coded expression of Media type in field 007/00 (Category of material). Field 337 information enables indication of more specific media types and media types from various lists.

Multiple media types from the same source vocabulary or code list may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Media type term) and subfield ‡b (Media type code). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Media type term**

Term for the category of media used to convey the content of the resource.

337 ##‡aaudio‡2marcmedia

337 ##‡avideo‡b‡2marcmedia

‡b - Media type code

Code for the category of media used to convey the content of the resource.

337 ##‡bs‡2marcmedia

337 ##‡bn‡2marcmedia‡3liner notes

‡2 - Source

MARC code that identifies the source of the term or code used to record the media type information.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

337 ##‡bv‡2marcmedia

337

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

337 ##‡aunmediated‡2marcmedia‡3liner notes

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

338 Carrier Type

(R)

First Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Second Indicator

Undefined
Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Carrier type term (R)	‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡b Carrier type code (R)	‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡2 Source (NR)	‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Carrier type reflects the format of the storage medium and housing of a carrier in combination with the media type (which indicates the intermediation device required to view, play, run, etc., the content of a resource). Used as an alternative to or in addition to the coded expression of carrier type in field 007/01 (Specific material designation). Field 338 information enables indication of more specific carrier types and carrier types from various lists.

Multiple media types from the same source vocabulary or code list may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield ‡a (Carrier type term) and subfield ‡b (Carrier type code). Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Carrier type term**

Term for the category of carrier used to convey the content of the resource.

338 ##‡aaudio disc‡2marccarrier

338 ##‡avideodisc‡bvd‡2marccarrier

‡b - Carrier type code

Code for the category of carrier used to convey the content of the resource.

338 ##‡bsd‡2marccarrier

338 ##‡bvd‡2marccarrier

‡2 - Source

MARC code that identifies the source of the term or code used to record the carrier type information.

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

338 ##‡bnb‡2marccarrier‡3liner notes

338

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

338 ##‡asheet‡2marccarrier‡3liner notes

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*.

MARC 21 FORMAT FOR HOLDINGS DATA FORMAT CHANGE LIST

Update No. 10 (October 2009) and Update No. 11 (February 2010)

This page documents the changes contained in the tenth updates to the 1999 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*. Update No. 10 (October 2009) includes changes resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during 2009.

There are no changes to the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data* for Update No. 11 (February 2010) resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during January 2010.

UPDATE NO. 10 CHANGES

■ *New content designators:*

Codes

- Code d - Computer disc, type unspecified** *in* Electronic Resource 007/01
(Specific material designation)
- Code e - Computer disc cartridge, type unspecified** *in* Electronic Resource 007/01
(Specific material designation)
- Code k - Computer card** *in* Electronic Resource 007/01 (Specific material designation)

- Code h - Microfilm slip** *in* Microform 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code j - Microfilm roll** *in* Microform 007/01 (Specific material designation)

- Code o - Film roll** *in* Motion Picture 007/01 (Specific material designation)

- Code f - Filmstrip, type unspecified** *in* Projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)

- Code a - Activity card** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code k - Poster** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code p - Postcard** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code q - Icon** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code r - Radiograph** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code s - Study print** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)
- Code v - Photograph, type unspecified** *in* Non-projected Graphic 007/01 (Specific material designation)

- Code i - Plastic** *in* Globe 007/04 (Physical medium)
- Code l - Vinyl** *in* Globe 007/04 (Physical medium)
- Code n - Vellum** *in* Globe 007/04 (Physical medium)
- Code v - Leather** *in* Globe 007/04 (Physical medium)
- Code w - Parchment** *in* Globe 007/04 (Physical medium)

Appendix F

Code i - Plastic in Map 007/04 (Physical medium)
Code l - Vinyl in Map 007/04 (Physical medium)
Code n - Vellum in Map 007/04 (Physical medium)
Code v - Leather in Map 007/04 (Physical medium)
Code w - Parchment in Map 007/04 (Physical medium)

Code i - Plastic in Non-projected Graphic 007/04 (Primary support material)
and 007/05 (Secondary support material)
Code l - Vinyl in Non-projected Graphic 007/04 (Primary support material)
and 007/05 (Secondary support material)
Code n - Vellum in Non-projected Graphic 007/04 (Primary support material)
and 007/05 (Secondary support material)
Code v - Leather in Non-projected Graphic 007/04 (Primary support material)
and 007/05 (Secondary support material)
Code w - Parchment in Non-projected Graphic 007/04 (Primary support material)
and 007/05 (Secondary support material)

Code l - Legal deposit in 008/07 (Method of acquisition)

Fields

337 Media Type (R)
338 Carrier Type (R)

UPDATE NO. 11 CHANGES

There are no changes to the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data* for Update No. 11, February 2010, resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during January 2010.